

UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION  
Washington, D.C. 20549

Amendment No. 1 to  
FORM S-1  
REGISTRATION STATEMENT  
UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933

**B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II**

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

**Delaware**

(State or other jurisdiction of  
incorporation or organization)

**6770**

(Primary Standard Industrial  
Classification Code Number)

**84-4290188**

(I.R.S. Employer  
Identification Number)

**299 Park Avenue**

**21<sup>st</sup> Floor**

**New York, New York 10171**

**(212) 457-3300**

(Address, Including Zip Code, and Telephone Number, Including Area Code, of Registrant's Principal Executive Offices)

**Daniel Shribman**

**B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II**

**299 Park Avenue**

**21<sup>st</sup> Floor**

**New York, New York 10171**

**(212) 457-3300**

(Name, Address, Including Zip Code, and Telephone Number, Including Area Code, of Agent For Service)

*Copies to:*

**Joel L. Rubinstein**  
**Daniel E. Nussen**  
**Winston & Strawn LLP**  
**200 Park Avenue**  
**New York, New York 10166**  
**(212) 294-6700**

**Douglas S. Ellenoff**  
**Stuart Neuhauser**  
**Ellenoff Grossman & Schole LLP**  
**1345 Avenue of the Americas**  
**New York, NY 10105**  
**(212) 370-1300**

**Approximate date of commencement of proposed sale to the public:** As soon as practicable after the effective date of this registration statement.

If any of the securities being registered on this Form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933 check the following box.

If this Form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, please check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(d) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, a smaller reporting company, or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company" and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act. (Check one):

Large accelerated filer   
Non-accelerated filer

Accelerated filer   
Smaller reporting company   
Emerging growth company

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 7(a)(2)(B) of the Securities Act.

**CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE**

<b>TITLE OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITY BEING REGISTERED</b>	<b>AMOUNT BEING REGISTERED</b>	<b>PROPOSED MAXIMUM OFFERING PRICE PER SECURITY (1)</b>	<b>PROPOSED MAXIMUM AGGREGATE OFFERING PRICE (1)</b>	<b>AMOUNT OF REGISTRATION FEE</b>
Units, each consisting of one share of Class A common stock, \$0.0001 par value, and one-half of one redeemable warrant <sup>(2)</sup>	23,000,000 Units	\$ 10.00	\$ 230,000,000	\$ 29,854.00
Shares of Class A common stock included as part of the units <sup>(3)</sup>	23,000,000 Shares	—	—	— <sup>(4)</sup>
Redeemable warrants included as part of the units <sup>(3)</sup>	11,500,000 Warrants	—	—	— <sup>(4)</sup>
Total			<u>\$ 230,000,000</u>	<u>\$ 29,854.00<sup>(5)</sup></u>

(1) Estimated solely for the purpose of calculating the registration fee.

(2) Includes 3,000,000 units, consisting of 3,000,000 shares of Class A common stock and 1,500,000 redeemable warrants, which may be issued upon exercise of a 45-day option granted to the underwriters to cover over-allotments, if any.

(3) Pursuant to Rule 416, there are also being registered an indeterminable number of additional securities as may be issued to prevent dilution resulting from stock splits, stock dividends or similar transactions.

(4) No fee pursuant to Rule 457(g).

(5) Previously paid.

**The Registrant hereby amends this Registration Statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the registrant shall file a further amendment which specifically states that this Registration Statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with Section 8(a) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or until the Registration Statement shall become effective on such date as the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission, acting pursuant to said Section 8(a), may determine.**

## EXPLANATORY NOTE

This Amendment No. 1 (the "Amendment") to the Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-237812) (the "Registration Statement") of B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II is being filed solely for the purpose of filing certain exhibits to the Registration Statement and updating Item 16 of Part II of the Registration Statement. Accordingly, the Amendment consists solely of the facing page, this explanatory note, Item 16 of Part II of the Registration Statement, the index to exhibits, the signatures and the filed exhibits and is not intended to amend or delete any part of the Registration Statement except as specifically noted herein.

---

**PART II**  
**INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED IN PROSPECTUS**

**Item 13. Other Expenses of Issuance and Distribution.**

The estimated expenses payable by us in connection with the offering described in this registration statement (other than the underwriting discount and commissions) will be as follows:

SEC expenses	\$ 18,659
FINRA expenses	22,063
Accounting fees and expenses	50,000
Printing and engraving expenses	45,000
Travel and road show expenses	25,000
Directors & officers liability insurance premiums <sup>(1)</sup>	100,000
Legal fees and expenses	250,000
NYSE listing and filing fees	85,000
Miscellaneous	154,278
Total	<u>\$ 750,000</u>

- (1) This amount represents the approximate amount of annual director and officer liability insurance premiums the registrant anticipates paying following the completion of its initial public offering and until it completes an initial business combination.

**Item 14. Indemnification of Directors and officers.**

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation will provide that all of our directors, officers, employees and agents shall be entitled to be indemnified by us to the fullest extent permitted by Section 145 of the Delaware General Corporation Law (“DGCL”). Section 145 of the Delaware General Corporation Law concerning indemnification of officers, directors, employees and agents is set forth below.

Section 145. Indemnification of officers, directors, employees and agents; insurance.

- (a) A corporation shall have power to indemnify any person who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any threatened, pending or completed action, suit or proceeding, whether civil, criminal, administrative or investigative (other than an action by or in the right of the corporation) by reason of the fact that the person is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise, against expenses (including attorneys’ fees), judgments, fines and amounts paid in settlement actually and reasonably incurred by the person in connection with such action, suit or proceeding if the person acted in good faith and in a manner the person reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation, and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe the person’s conduct was unlawful. The termination of any action, suit or proceeding by judgment, order, settlement, conviction, or upon a plea of nolo contendere or its equivalent, shall not, of itself, create a presumption that the person did not act in good faith and in a manner which the person reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation, and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had reasonable cause to believe that the person’s conduct was unlawful.

- (b) A corporation shall have power to indemnify any person who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any threatened, pending or completed action or suit by or in the right of the corporation to procure a judgment in its favor by reason of the fact that the person is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise against expenses (including attorneys' fees) actually and reasonably incurred by the person in connection with the defense or settlement of such action or suit if the person acted in good faith and in a manner the person reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation and except that no indemnification shall be made in respect of any claim, issue or matter as to which such person shall have been adjudged to

be liable to the corporation unless and only to the extent that the Court of Chancery or the court in which such action or suit was brought shall determine upon application that, despite the adjudication of liability but in view of all the circumstances of the case, such person is fairly and reasonably entitled to indemnity for such expenses which the Court of Chancery or such other court shall deem proper.

- (c) To the extent that a present or former director or officer of a corporation has been successful on the merits or otherwise in defense of any action, suit or proceeding referred to in subsections (a) and (b) of this section, or in defense of any claim, issue or matter therein, such person shall be indemnified against expenses (including attorneys' fees) actually and reasonably incurred by such person in connection therewith.
- (d) Any indemnification under subsections (a) and (b) of this section (unless ordered by a court) shall be made by the corporation only as authorized in the specific case upon a determination that indemnification of the present or former director, officer, employee or agent is proper in the circumstances because the person has met the applicable standard of conduct set forth in subsections (a) and (b) of this section. Such determination shall be made, with respect to a person who is a director or officer at the time of such determination, (1) by a majority vote of the directors who are not parties to such action, suit or proceeding, even though less than a quorum, or (2) by a committee of such directors designated by majority vote of such directors, even though less than a quorum, or (3) if there are no such directors, or if such directors so direct, by independent legal counsel in a written opinion, or (4) by the stockholders.
- (e) Expenses (including attorneys' fees) incurred by an officer or director in defending any civil, criminal, administrative or investigative action, suit or proceeding may be paid by the corporation in advance of the final disposition of such action, suit or proceeding upon receipt of an undertaking by or on behalf of such director or officer to repay such amount if it shall ultimately be determined that such person is not entitled to be indemnified by the corporation as authorized in this section. Such expenses (including attorneys' fees) incurred by former officers and directors or other employees and agents may be so paid upon such terms and conditions, if any, as the corporation deems appropriate.
- (f) The indemnification and advancement of expenses provided by, or granted pursuant to, the other subsections of this section shall not be deemed exclusive of any other rights to which those seeking indemnification or advancement of expenses may be entitled under any bylaw, agreement, vote of stockholders or disinterested directors or otherwise, both as to action in such person's official capacity and as to action in another capacity while holding such office. A right to indemnification or to advancement of expenses arising under a provision of the certificate of incorporation or a bylaw shall not be eliminated or impaired by an amendment to such provision after the occurrence of the act or omission that is the subject of the civil, criminal, administrative or investigative action, suit or proceeding for which indemnification or advancement of expenses is sought, unless the provision in effect at the time of such act or omission explicitly authorizes such elimination or impairment after such action or omission has occurred.

- (g) A corporation shall have power to purchase and maintain insurance on behalf of any person who is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise against any liability asserted against such person and incurred by such person in any such capacity, or arising out of such person's status as such, whether or not the corporation would have the power to indemnify such person against such liability under this section.
- (h) For purposes of this section, references to "the corporation" shall include, in addition to the resulting corporation, any constituent corporation (including any constituent of a constituent) absorbed in a consolidation or merger which, if its separate existence had continued, would have had power and authority to indemnify its directors, officers, and employees or agents, so that any person who is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of such constituent corporation, or is or was serving at the request of such constituent corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise, shall stand in the same position under this section with respect to the resulting or surviving corporation as such person would have with respect to such constituent corporation if its separate existence had continued.
- (i) For purposes of this section, references to "other enterprises" shall include employee benefit plans; references to "fines" shall include any excise taxes assessed on a person with respect to any employee benefit plan; and references to "serving at the request of the corporation" shall include any service as a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation which imposes duties on, or involves services by, such director, officer, employee or agent with respect to an employee benefit plan, its participants or beneficiaries; and a person who acted in good faith and in a manner such person reasonably believed to be in the interest of the participants and beneficiaries of an employee benefit plan shall be deemed to have acted in a manner "not opposed to the best interests of the corporation" as referred to in this section.
- (j) The indemnification and advancement of expenses provided by, or granted pursuant to, this section shall, unless otherwise provided when authorized or ratified, continue as to a person who has ceased to be a director, officer, employee or agent and shall inure to the benefit of the heirs, executors and administrators of such a person.
- (k) The Court of Chancery is hereby vested with exclusive jurisdiction to hear and determine all actions for advancement of expenses or indemnification brought under this section or under any by law, agreement, vote of stockholders or disinterested directors, or otherwise. The Court of Chancery may summarily determine a corporation's obligation to advance expenses (including attorneys' fees).

Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act may be permitted to our directors, officers, and controlling persons pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, we have been advised that, in the opinion of the SEC, such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person in a successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, we will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to the court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

In accordance with Section 102(b)(7) of the DGCL, our amended and restated certificate of incorporation, will provide that no director shall be personally liable to us or any of our stockholders for monetary damages resulting from breaches of their fiduciary duty as directors, except to the extent such limitation on or exemption from liability is not permitted under the DGCL. The effect of this provision of our amended and restated certificate of incorporation is to eliminate our rights and those of our stockholders (through stockholders' derivative suits on our behalf) to recover monetary damages against a director for breach of the fiduciary duty of care as a director, including breaches resulting from negligent or grossly negligent behavior, except, as restricted by Section 102(b)(7) of the DGCL. However, this provision does not limit or eliminate our rights or the rights of any stockholder to seek non-monetary relief, such as an injunction or rescission, in the event of a breach of a director's duty of care.

If the DGCL is amended to authorize corporate action further eliminating or limiting the liability of directors, then, in accordance with our amended and restated certificate of incorporation, the liability of our directors to us or our stockholders will be eliminated or limited to the fullest extent authorized by the DGCL, as so amended. Any repeal or amendment of provisions of our amended and restated certificate of incorporation limiting or eliminating the liability of directors, whether by our stockholders or by changes in law, or the adoption of any other provisions inconsistent therewith, will (unless otherwise required by law) be prospective only, except to the extent such amendment or change in law permits us to further limit or eliminate the liability of directors on a retroactive basis.

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation will also provide that we will, to the fullest extent authorized or permitted by applicable law, indemnify our current and former officers and directors, as well as those persons who, while directors or officers of our corporation, are or were serving as directors, officers, employees or agents of another entity, trust or other enterprise, including service with respect to an employee benefit plan, in connection with any threatened, pending or completed proceeding, whether civil, criminal, administrative or investigative, against all expense, liability and loss (including, without limitation, attorney's fees, judgments, fines, ERISA excise taxes and penalties and amounts paid in settlement) reasonably incurred or suffered by any such person in connection with any such proceeding.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, a person eligible for indemnification pursuant to our amended and restated certificate of incorporation will be indemnified by us in connection with a proceeding initiated by such person only if such proceeding was authorized by our board of directors, except for proceedings to enforce rights to indemnification.

The right to indemnification which will be conferred by our amended and restated certificate of incorporation is a contract right that includes the right to be paid by us the expenses incurred in defending or otherwise participating in any proceeding referenced above in advance of its final disposition, provided, however, that if the DGCL requires, an advancement of expenses incurred by our officer or director (solely in the capacity as an officer or director of our corporation) will be made only upon delivery to us of an undertaking, by or on behalf of such officer or director, to repay all amounts so advanced if it is ultimately determined that such person is not entitled to be indemnified for such expenses under our amended and restated certificate of incorporation or otherwise.

The rights to indemnification and advancement of expenses will not be deemed exclusive of any other rights which any person covered by our amended and restated certificate of incorporation may have or hereafter acquire under law, our amended and restated certificate of incorporation, our bylaws, an agreement, vote of stockholders or disinterested directors, or otherwise.

Any repeal or amendment of provisions of our amended and restated certificate of incorporation affecting indemnification rights, whether by our stockholders or by changes in law, or the adoption of any other provisions inconsistent therewith, will (unless otherwise required by law) be prospective only, except to the extent such amendment or change in law permits us to provide broader indemnification rights on a retroactive basis, and will not in any way diminish or adversely affect any right or protection existing at the time of such repeal or amendment or adoption of such inconsistent provision with respect to any act or omission occurring prior to such repeal or amendment or adoption of such inconsistent provision. Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation will also permit us, to the extent and in the manner authorized or permitted by law, to indemnify and to advance expenses to persons other than those specifically covered by our amended and restated certificate of incorporation.

Our bylaws, which we intend to adopt immediately prior to the closing of this offering, include the provisions relating to advancement of expenses and indemnification rights consistent with those which will be set forth in our amended and restated certificate of incorporation. In addition, our bylaws provide for a right of indemnity to bring a suit in the event a claim for indemnification or advancement of expenses is not paid in full by us within a specified period of time. Our bylaws also permit us to purchase and maintain insurance, at our expense, to protect us and/or any director, officer, employee or agent of our corporation or another entity, trust or other enterprise against any expense, liability or loss, whether or not we would have the power to indemnify such person against such expense, liability or loss under the DGCL.

Any repeal or amendment of provisions of our bylaws affecting indemnification rights, whether by our board of directors, stockholders or by changes in applicable law, or the adoption of any other provisions inconsistent therewith, will (unless otherwise required by law) be prospective only, except to the extent such amendment or change in law permits us to provide broader indemnification rights on a retroactive basis, and will not in any way diminish or adversely affect any right or protection existing thereunder with respect to any act or omission occurring prior to such repeal or amendment or adoption of such inconsistent provision.

We will enter into indemnification agreements with each of our officers and directors a form of which is to be filed as an exhibit to this Registration Statement. These agreements will require us to indemnify these individuals to the fullest extent permitted under Delaware law against liabilities that may arise by reason of their service to us, and to advance expenses incurred as a result of any proceeding against them as to which they could be indemnified.

Pursuant to the Underwriting Agreement to be filed as Exhibit 1.1 to this Registration Statement, we have agreed to indemnify the underwriters and the underwriters have agreed to indemnify us against certain civil liabilities that may be incurred in connection with this offering, including certain liabilities under the Securities Act.

**Item 15. Recent Sales of Unregistered Securities.**

In connection with our initial formation in June 2019, a wholly-owned subsidiary of B. Riley Financial (which is the parent of our sponsor) was issued all of our outstanding equity. All founder shares were contributed to our sponsor in January 2020, resulting in our sponsor directly and B. Riley Financial indirectly owning all outstanding founder shares. On February 3, 2020, we conducted a 1:575 stock split and reclassification of our common stock such that our sponsor directly and B. Riley Financial indirectly continued to own all 5,750,000 outstanding founder shares.

The number of founder shares outstanding was determined based on the expectation that the founder shares would represent 20% of the outstanding shares of common stock upon completion of this offering excluding the private placement shares underlying the private placement units. On April 21, 2020, 20,000 founder shares were transferred to each of Patrick Bartels, Jamie Kempner, Timothy Presutti and Robert Suss, our independent director nominees, at their par value.

In addition, our sponsor has agreed to purchase an aggregate of 575,000 private placement units (or 635,000 private placement units if the over-allotment option is exercised in full) at a price of \$10.00 per unit, for an aggregate purchase price of \$5,750,000, or \$6,350,000 if the over-allotment option is exercised in full). This purchase will take place on a private placement basis simultaneously with the completion of our initial public offering. This issuance will be made pursuant to the exemption from registration contained in Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act.

Prior to this offering, an affiliate of our sponsor entered into a forward purchase agreement with us which provides for the purchase by it (or its designees) of an aggregate of 2,500,000 units for an aggregate purchase price of \$25,000,000 in a private placement to close concurrently with the closing of our initial business combination. The obligations under the forward purchase agreement do not depend on whether any Class A common stock is redeemed by our public stockholders.

No underwriting discounts or commissions were paid with respect to such sales.



**Item 16. Exhibits and Financial Statement Schedules.**

<b>EXHIBIT</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>
1.1	<a href="#">Form of Underwriting Agreement</a>
1.2	<a href="#">Form of Business Combination Marketing Agreement between the Registrant and B. Riley FBR, Inc.</a>
3.1	<a href="#">Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation.</a>
3.2	<a href="#">Form of Second Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation</a>
3.3	<a href="#">By Laws</a>
4.1	<a href="#">Specimen Unit Certificate</a>
4.2	<a href="#">Specimen Class A Common Stock Certificate</a>
4.3	<a href="#">Specimen Warrant Certificate</a>
4.4	<a href="#">Form of Warrant Agreement between Continental Stock Transfer &amp; Trust Company, LLC and the Registrant</a>
5.1	<a href="#">Opinion of Winston &amp; Strawn LLP</a>
10.1	<a href="#">Form of Letter Agreement among the Registrant and our officers, directors and B. Riley Principal Sponsor Co. II, LLC</a>
10.2	<a href="#">Promissory Note, dated February 4, 2020, issued to Sponsor</a>
10.3	<a href="#">Form of Investment Management Trust Agreement between Continental Stock Transfer &amp; Trust Company, LLC and the Registrant</a>
10.4	<a href="#">Form of Registration Rights Agreement between the Registrant and certain security holders</a>
10.5	<a href="#">Private Placement Units Purchase Agreement between the Registrant and B. Riley Principal Sponsor Co. II, LLC</a>
10.6	<a href="#">Form of Indemnity Agreement</a>
10.7	<a href="#">Form of Administrative Support Agreement by and between the Registrant and B. Riley Corporate Services, Inc.</a>
10.8	<a href="#">Form of Forward Purchase Agreement</a>
14	<a href="#">Form of Code of Business Conduct and Ethics</a>
23.1	<a href="#">Consent of Marcum LLP*</a>
23.2	<a href="#">Consent of Winston &amp; Strawn LLP (included in Exhibit 5.1)</a>
24	<a href="#">Power of Attorney*</a>
99.1	<a href="#">Form of Audit Committee Charter</a>
99.2	<a href="#">Form of Compensation Committee Charter</a>
99.3	<a href="#">Form of Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee Charter</a>
99.4	<a href="#">Consent of Patrick J. Bartels Jr.*</a>
99.5	<a href="#">Consent of Jamie Kempner*</a>
99.6	<a href="#">Consent of Timothy Presutti*</a>
99.7	<a href="#">Consent of Robert Suss*</a>

---

\* Previously filed.

## Item 17. Undertakings.

- (a) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes to provide to the underwriters at the closing specified in the underwriting agreements, certificates in such denominations and registered in such names as required by the underwriters to permit prompt delivery to each purchaser.
- (b) Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act of 1933 may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of the registrant pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, the registrant has been advised that in the opinion of the Securities and Exchange Commission such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the registrant of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of the registrant in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the registrant will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.
- (c) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes that:
  - (1) For purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, the information omitted from the form of prospectus filed as part of this registration statement in reliance upon Rule 430A and contained in a form of prospectus filed by the registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(1) or (4) or 497(h) under the Securities Act shall be deemed to be part of this registration statement as of the time it was declared effective.
  - (2) For the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each post-effective amendment that contains a form of prospectus shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.
  - (3) For the purpose of determining liability under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser, if the registrant is subject to Rule 430C, each prospectus filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) as part of a registration statement relating to an offering, other than registration statements relying on Rule 430B or other than prospectuses filed in reliance on Rule 430A, shall be deemed to be part of and included in the registration statement as of the date it is first used after effectiveness. Provided, however, that no statement made in a registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement or made in a document incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference into the registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement will, as to a purchaser with a time of contract of sale prior to such first use, supersede or modify any statement that was made in the registration statement or prospectus that was part of the registration statement or made in any such document immediately prior to such date of first use.
  - (4) For the purpose of determining liability of a registrant under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser in the initial distribution of the securities, the undersigned registrant undertakes that in a primary offering of securities of an undersigned registrant pursuant to this registration statement, regardless of the underwriting method used to sell the securities to the purchaser, if the securities are offered or sold to such purchaser by means of any of the following communications, the undersigned registrant will be a seller to the purchaser and will be considered to offer or sell such securities to such purchaser:
    - (i) Any preliminary prospectus or prospectus of the undersigned registrant relating to the offering required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424;
    - (ii) Any free writing prospectus relating to the offering prepared by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant or used or referred to by an undersigned registrant;
    - (iii) The portion of any other free writing prospectus relating to the offering containing material information about the undersigned registrant or its securities provided by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant; and
    - (iv) Any other communication that is an offer in the offering made by the undersigned registrant to the purchaser.

**SIGNATURES**

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the registrant has duly caused this Registration Statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the City of New York, State of New York, on the 28th day of April, 2020.

**B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II**

By: /s/ Daniel Shribman  
Daniel Shribman  
Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, this Registration Statement has been signed below by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<b>NAME</b>	<b>POSITION</b>	<b>DATE</b>
<u>/s/ Daniel Shribman</u> Daniel Shribman	Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer and Director (principal executive and financial and accounting officer)	April 28, 2020
<u>/s/ Bryant Riley</u> Bryant Riley	Chairman	April 28, 2020
<u>/s/ Kenneth Young</u> Kenneth Young	Director	April 28, 2020

B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II  
UNDERWRITING AGREEMENTNew York, New York  
[\_\_\_\_], 2020

B. Riley FBR, Inc.  
299 Park Avenue  
New York, NY 10171

*As Representative of the several Underwriters  
named on Schedule A hereto*

Ladies and Gentlemen:

The undersigned, B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II, a Delaware corporation (the “ **Company** ”), hereby confirms its agreement with B. Riley FBR, Inc. (the “ **Representative** ”) and with the other underwriters named on Schedule A hereto (if any), for which the Representative is acting as representative (the Representative and such other underwriters being collectively referred to herein as the “ **Underwriters** ” or, each underwriter individually, an “ **Underwriter** ”), as follows. To the extent there is only one Underwriter, the term Underwriters shall mean the Underwriter.

1. Purchase and Sale of Securities.

1.1 Firm Securities.

1.1.1 Purchase of Firm Units. On the basis of the representations and warranties contained herein, but subject to the terms and conditions herein set forth, the Company agrees to issue and sell to the several Underwriters, severally and not jointly, an aggregate of 20,000,000 units (“ **Firm Units** ”) of the Company, at a purchase price (net of discounts and commissions) of \$9.80 per Firm Unit. The Underwriters, severally and not jointly, agree to purchase from the Company the number of Firm Units set forth opposite their respective names on Schedule A hereto at a purchase price (net of discounts and commissions) of \$9.80 per Firm Unit. The Firm Units are to be offered initially to the public (“ **Offering** ”) at the offering price of \$10.00 per Firm Unit. Each Firm Unit consists of one share of Class A common stock, \$0.0001 par value, of the Company (“ **Common Stock** ”), and one-half of one redeemable warrant (the “ **Warrants** ”). The Common Stock and the Warrants included in the Firm Units will trade separately on the fifty second (52<sup>nd</sup>) day following the date hereof unless the Representative determines to allow earlier separate trading. Notwithstanding the immediately preceding sentence, in no event will the shares of Common Stock and the Warrants included in the Firm Units trade separately prior to the Business Day (as defined below) after (i) the Company has filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “ **Commission** ”) a Current Report on Form 8-K (the “ **Initial 8-K** ”) that includes an audited balance sheet reflecting the Company’s receipt of the proceeds of the Offering and the Unit Private Placement (as defined below) and another Current Report on Form 8-K or an amendment to the Initial 8-K to update financial information with respect to any proceeds the Company has then received from the exercise of the Over-allotment Option (as defined below) if the receipt of such proceeds is not reflected in the Initial 8-K, and (ii) the Company has filed with the Commission a Current Report on Form 8-K and issued a press release announcing when such separate trading will begin. Each whole Warrant entitles its holder to purchase one share of Common Stock for \$11.50 per share, subject to adjustment, commencing on the later of one year from the Closing Date (as defined below) and 30 days after the consummation by the Company of a merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or similar business combination with one or more businesses (the “ **Business Combination** ”) and expiring on the five year anniversary of the consummation by the Company of its initial Business Combination, or earlier upon redemption of the Warrants or liquidation of the Company; provided, however, that pursuant to the Warrant Agreement (as defined below), a Warrant may not be exercised for a fractional share and only whole Warrants are exercisable.

---

1.1.2 Payment and Delivery. Delivery and payment for the Firm Units shall be made at 10:00 a.m., New York City time, on the second (2<sup>nd</sup>) Business Day following the commencement of trading of the Units, or at such earlier time as shall be agreed upon by the Representative and the Company, at the offices of Ellenoff Grossman & Schole LLP, counsel to the Underwriters (“**EG&S**”), or at such other place as shall be agreed upon by the Representative and the Company. The hour and date of delivery and payment for the Firm Units is called the “**Closing Date**.” Payment for the Firm Units shall be made on the Closing Date by wire transfer in Federal (same day) funds, payable as follows: the \$194,250,000 proceeds received by the Company for the Firm Units, shall be deposited in the trust account established by the Company for the benefit of the Public Stockholders (as defined below), as described in the Registration Statement (“**Trust Account**”) pursuant to the terms of an Investment Management Trust Agreement (the “**Trust Agreement**”) between the Company and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company (“**CST**”), as trustee (in such capacity, the “**Trustee**”). Such payment shall be made upon delivery to the Representative of certificates (in form and substance satisfactory to the Representative) representing the Firm Units (or through the facilities of the Depository Trust Company (“**DTC**”)) for the account of the Underwriters. In addition to the Underwriters’ payments with respect to the Firm Units, additional payments shall be made in accordance with this Agreement on or prior to the Closing Date by wire transfer in Federal (same day) funds, as follows: \$5,750,000 of the proceeds received by the Company from the Unit Private Placement. The Firm Units shall be registered in such name or names and in such authorized denominations as the Representative may request in writing at least two (2) full Business Days prior to the Closing Date. If delivery is not made through the facilities of DTC, the Company will permit the Representative to examine and package the Firm Units for delivery, at least one (1) full Business Day prior to the Closing Date. The Company shall not be obligated to sell or deliver any of the Firm Units except upon tender of payment by the Representative for all the Firm Units. As used herein, the term “**Public Stockholders**” means the holders of shares of Common Stock sold as part of the Units in the Offering or acquired in the aftermarket, including the Sponsor (as defined below) to the extent it acquires such shares of Common Stock in the aftermarket (and solely with respect to such shares of Common Stock). “**Business Day**” shall mean any day other than Saturday, Sunday or other day on which commercial banks in The City of New York are authorized or required by law to remain closed; provided, however, for clarification, commercial banks shall not be deemed to be authorized or required by law to remain closed due to “stay at home”, “shelter-in-place”, “non-essential employee” or any other similar orders or restrictions or the closure of any physical branch locations at the direction of any governmental authority so long as the electronic funds transfer systems (including for wire transfers) of commercial banks in The City of New York are generally are open for use by customers on such day.

## 1.2 Over-Allotment Option.

1.2.1 Option Units. The Representative is hereby granted an option (the “**Over-allotment Option**”) to purchase up to an additional 3,000,000 units (the “**Option Units**”), at a purchase price (net of discounts and commissions) of \$9.80 per Option Unit, for the purposes of covering any over-allotments in connection with the distribution and sale of the Firm Units, the proceeds of which will be deposited in the Trust Account. Such Option Units shall be identical in all respects to the Firm Units. Such Option Units shall be purchased for each account of the several Underwriters in the same proportion as the number of Firm Units, set forth opposite such Underwriter’s name on Schedule A hereto, bears to the total number of Firm Units (subject to adjustment by the Representative to eliminate fractions). The Firm Units and the Option Units are hereinafter collectively referred to as the “**Units**,” and the Units, the shares of Common Stock and the Warrants included in the Units and the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of such Warrants (the “**Warrant Shares**”) are hereinafter referred to collectively as the “**Public Securities**.” No Option Units shall be sold or delivered unless the Firm Units previously have been, or simultaneously are, sold and delivered. The right to purchase the Option Units, or any portion thereof, may be exercised from time to time and to the extent not previously exercised may be surrendered and terminated at any time upon notice by the Representative to the Company.

1.2.2 Exercise of Option. The Over-allotment Option granted pursuant to Section 1.2.1 hereof may be exercised by the Representative as to all (at any time) or any part (from time to time) of the Option Units within 45 days after the effective date (“**Effective Date**”) of the Registration Statement (as defined below). The Underwriters will not be under any obligation to purchase any Option Units prior to the exercise of the Over-allotment Option. The Over-allotment Option granted hereby may be exercised by the giving of oral notice to the Company by the Representative, which must be confirmed in accordance with Section 10.1 herein setting forth the number of Option Units to be purchased and the date and time for delivery of and payment for the Option Units (the “**Option Closing Date**”), which will not be later than five (5) full Business Days after the date of the notice or such other time and in such other manner as shall be agreed upon by the Company and the Representative, at the offices of EG&S or at such other place (including remotely by facsimile or other electronic transmission) as shall be agreed upon by the Company and the Representative. If such delivery and payment for the Option Units does not occur on the Closing Date, the Option Closing Date will be as set forth in the notice. Upon exercise of the Over-allotment Option, the Company will become obligated to convey to the Underwriters, and, subject to the terms and conditions set forth herein, the Underwriters will become obligated to purchase, the number of Option Units specified in such notice.

1.2.3 Payment and Delivery. Payment for the Option Units shall be made on the Option Closing Date by wire transfer in Federal (same day) funds, payable as follows: the \$9.80 per Option Unit received by the Company for each Option Unit shall be deposited in the Trust Account pursuant to the Trust Agreement. In addition to the Underwriters' payments with respect to the Option Units, additional payments shall be made in accordance with this Agreement on or prior to the Closing Date by wire transfer in Federal (same day) funds, as follows: up to \$600,000 of the proceeds received by the Company from the Unit Private Placement. Such payment shall be made upon delivery to the Representative of certificates (in form and substance satisfactory to the Representative) representing the Option Units (or through the facilities of DTC) for the account of the Representative. The Option Units shall be registered in such name or names and in such authorized denominations as the Representative requests in writing not less than two (2) full Business Days prior to the Closing Date or the Option Closing Date, as the case may be, and will be made available to the Representative for inspection, checking and packaging at the aforesaid office of the Company's transfer agent or correspondent not less than one (1) full Business Day prior to such Closing Date. The Company shall not be obligated to sell or deliver the Option Units except upon tender of payment by the Underwriters for applicable Option Units.

### 1.3 Private Placements.

1.3.1 On June 3, 2019, the Company issued to B. Riley Principal Investments, LLC ("BRPI"), a wholly owned subsidiary of B. Riley Financial, Inc. ("B. Riley Financial"), the parent of B. Riley Principal Sponsor Co. II, LLC (the "Sponsor"), 10,000 shares of common stock of the Company. In January 2020, BRPI contributed such shares to the Sponsor. On February 3, 2020, the Company effectuated a recapitalization of the Company, which included a 1-for-575 stock split resulting in an aggregate of 5,750,000 shares of the Company's Class B common stock, par value \$0.0001 (the "Founder Shares"), outstanding and held by the Sponsor (up to 750,000 of which are subject to forfeiture to the extent the Over-allotment Option is not exercised in full). On April 21, 2020, 20,000 Founder Shares were transferred to each of Patrick Bartels, Jamie Kempner, Timothy Presutti and Robert Suss (collectively with the Sponsor, the "Initial Stockholders"), the Company's independent director nominees, at par value. Except as described in the Registration Statement, none of the Founder Shares may be sold, assigned or transferred by the Initial Stockholders or until the earlier of: (i) one year following the consummation of the Business Combination; and (ii) subsequent to the consummation of a Business Combination, (x) when the closing price of the Common Stock exceeds \$12.00 per share (as adjusted for stock splits, stock dividends, reorganizations, recapitalizations and the like) for any 20 trading days within a 30-trading day period commencing 150 days after the consummation of the Business Combination; or (y) the date on which the Company consummates a transaction which results in all of the Company's stockholders having the right to exchange their shares for cash, securities or other property. The Initial Stockholders shall have no right to any liquidation distributions with respect to any portion of the Founder Shares in the event the Company fails to consummate a Business Combination. The Initial Stockholders shall not have redemption rights with respect to the Founder Shares. In the event that the Over-allotment Option is not exercised in full, the Sponsor will be required to forfeit such number of Founder Shares such that the Founder Shares will comprise 20% of the issued and outstanding shares of the Company after giving effect to the Offering and exercise, if any, of the Over-allotment Option (not including the Placement Shares (as defined below)).

1.3.2 Simultaneously with the Closing Date, pursuant to the Private Placement Units Purchase Agreement (as defined below), the Sponsor will purchase from the Company 575,000 units (or 635,000 units to the extent the Over-allotment Option is exercised in full) that are identical to the Firm Units, subject to certain limited exceptions described in the Prospectus (as defined below) (the “ **Placement Units** ”), at a purchase price of \$10.00 per Placement Unit in a private placement intended to be exempt from registration under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “ **Act** ”), pursuant to Section 4(a)(2) of the Act. The private placement of the Placement Units is referred to herein as the “ **Unit Private Placement** .” The Placement Units, the shares of Common Stock included in the Placement Units (the “ **Placement Shares** ”), the warrants included in the Placement Units (the “ **Placement Warrants** ”) and the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Placement Warrants (the “ **Placement Warrant Shares** ”) are hereinafter referred to collectively as the “ **Placement Securities** .” No underwriting discounts, commissions or placement fees have been or will be payable in connection with the Placement Securities sold in the Unit Private Placement. The Placement Warrants are identical to the Warrants except that (i) the Placement Warrants will be non-redeemable by the Company and (ii) the Placement Warrants may be exercised on a cashless basis so long as they are held by the initial purchasers or their permitted transferees. In addition, the Placement Warrants may not be exercised after five years from the effective date of the Registration Statement if held by the Sponsor or its designees or affiliates. None of the Placement Securities may be sold, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or transferred or be the subject of any hedging, short sale, derivative, put, or call transaction by the Sponsor or its permitted transferees in compliance with FINRA Rule 5110(g)(1) and further until thirty (30) days after consummation of the Company’s initial Business Combination. The proceeds from the sale of the Placement Units shall be deposited into the Trust Account in accordance with the terms of the Trust Agreement on the Closing date and option Closing Date (if any) as provided for in the Private Placement Units Purchase Agreement.

1.3.3 Pursuant to the Forward Purchase Contract (as defined below), B. Riley Principal Investments, LLC, an affiliate of the Sponsor, will purchase from the Company 2,500,000 units that are identical to the Placement Units, subject to certain limited exceptions described in the Prospectus (the “ **Forward Purchase Units** ”), for an aggregate purchase price of \$25,000,000, in a private placement transaction, intended to be exempt from registration under Section 4(a)(2) of the Act, to close simultaneously with the closing of the initial Business Combination. The shares of Common Stock included in the Forward Purchase Units (the “ **Forward Purchase Shares** ”), the Forward Purchase Units, the warrants included in the Forward Placement Units (the “ **Forward Purchase Warrants** ”) and the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Forward Purchase Warrants are hereinafter referred to collectively as the “ **Forward Purchase Securities** .” The private placement of the Forward Purchase Securities is referred to herein as the “ **Forward Private Placement** .” No underwriting discounts, commissions or placement fees have been or will be payable in connection with the Forward Purchase Securities or the Forward Private Placement. The Public Securities, the Placement Securities, the Forward Purchase Securities and the Founder Shares are hereinafter referred to collectively as the “ **Securities** .”

#### 1.4 Working Capital; Interest on Trust.

1.4.1 Working Capital . Upon consummation of the Offering, initially \$1,000,000 of the Offering proceeds will be released to the Company and held outside of the Trust Account to fund the working capital requirements of the Company.

1.4.2 Interest Income . Prior to the Company’s consummation of a Business Combination or the Company’s liquidation, interest earned on the Trust Account may be released to the Company from the Trust Account in accordance with the terms of the Trust Agreement to pay any taxes incurred by the Company, all as more fully described in the Prospectus.

1.5 Qualified Independent Underwriter . The Company hereby confirms its engagement of Chardan Capital Markets, LLC (“ **Chardan** ”) and Chardan hereby confirms its agreement with the Company to render services as a “qualified independent underwriter” within the meaning of Rule 5121 of the Rules of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority (“ **FINRA** ”) with respect to the Offering. Chardan, solely in its capacity as the “qualified independent underwriter” with respect to the Offering, and not otherwise, is referred to herein as the “ **QIU** .”

2. Representations and Warranties of the Company. The Company represents and warrants to the Underwriters as follows:

2.1 Filing of Registration Statement.

2.1.1 Pursuant to the Act. The Company has filed with the Commission a registration statement and an amendment or amendments thereto, on Form S-1 (File No. 333-237812), including any related preliminary prospectus (“ **Preliminary Prospectus** ”), including any prospectus that is included in the Registration Statement immediately prior to the effectiveness of the Registration Statement), for the registration of the Units and the shares of Common Stock and the Warrants included in the Units (collectively, the “ **Registered Securities** ”) under the Act, which registration statement and amendment or amendments have been prepared by the Company in conformity with the requirements of the Act, and the rules and regulations (the “ **Regulations** ”) of the Commission under the Act. The conditions for use of Form S-1 to register the Offering under the Act, as set forth in the General Instructions to such Form, have been satisfied. Except as the context may otherwise require, such registration statement, as amended, on file with the Commission at the time the registration statement becomes effective (including the prospectus, financial statements, schedules, exhibits and all other documents filed as a part thereof or incorporated therein and all information deemed to be a part thereof as of such time pursuant to Rule 430A of the Regulations), is hereinafter called the “ **Registration Statement** ,” and the form of the final prospectus dated the Effective Date included in the Registration Statement (or, if applicable, the form of final prospectus containing information permitted to be omitted at the time of effectiveness by Rule 430A of the Regulations, filed by the Company with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424 of the Regulations) relating to offers and sales of Units, and the shares of Class A Common Stock and Warrants underlying the Units, in connection with the Offering, is hereinafter called the “ **IPO Prospectus** .” “ **Market Making Prospectus** ” means the final prospectus included in the Registration Statement (or, if applicable, the form of final prospectus containing information permitted to be omitted at the time of effectiveness by Rule 430A of the Regulations, filed by the Company with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424 of the Regulations) relating to offers and sales of Units, and the shares of Class A Common Stock and Warrants underlying the Units, in connection with market making transactions as filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) of the Securities Act. “ **Prospectus** ” means collectively, the IPO Prospectus and the Market Making Prospectus. For purposes of this Agreement, “ **Time of Sale** ,” as used in the Act, means 4:30 p.m. New York City time, on the date of this Agreement. Prior to the Time of Sale, the Company prepared a Preliminary Prospectus, which was included in the Registration Statement filed on April 23, 2020, for distribution by the Underwriters (such Preliminary Prospectus used most recently prior to the Time of Sale, the “ **Sale Preliminary Prospectus** ”). If the Company has filed, or is required pursuant to the terms hereof to file, a Registration Statement pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Act registering additional securities of any type or an amendment to a Registration Statement (a “ **Rule 462(b) Registration Statement** ”), then, unless otherwise specified, any reference herein to the term “Registration Statement” shall be deemed to include such Rule 462(b) Registration Statement. Other than a Rule 462(b) Registration Statement, which, if filed, becomes effective upon filing, and the Exchange Act Registration Statement (as defined below), no other document with respect to the Registration Statement has heretofore been filed with the Commission. All of the Registered Securities have been registered for public sale under the Act pursuant to the Registration Statement or, if any Rule 462(b) Registration Statement is filed, will be duly registered for public sale under the Act with the filing of such Rule 462(b) Registration Statement. The Registration Statement has been declared effective by the Commission on the date hereof. If, subsequent to the date of this Agreement, the Company or the Representative has determined that at the Time of Sale, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus includes an untrue statement of a material fact or omitted a statement of material fact necessary to make the statements therein, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading and the Company and the Representative have agreed to provide an opportunity to purchasers of the Units to terminate their old purchase contracts and enter into new purchase contracts, then the Sale Preliminary Prospectus will be deemed to include any additional information provided to purchasers at the time of entry into the first such new purchase contract.

2.1.2 Pursuant to the Exchange Act. The Company has filed with the Commission a Registration Statement on Form 8-A (File Number 001-[\_\_\_\_]) (the “ **Exchange Act Registration Statement** ”) providing for the registration under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “ **Exchange Act** ”), of the Units, the Common Stock and the Warrants. The registration of the Units, the Common Stock and the Warrants under the Exchange Act became effective on the date hereof and the Units, the Common Stock and the Warrants have been registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Exchange Act.

2.1.3 No Stop Orders, Etc. Neither the Commission nor, to the Company’s knowledge, assuming reasonable inquiry, any federal, state or other regulatory authority has issued any order or threatened to issue any order preventing or suspending the use of the Registration Statement, any Preliminary Prospectus, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus or Prospectus or any part thereof, or has instituted or, to the Company’s knowledge, assuming reasonable inquiry, threatened to institute any proceedings with respect to such an order.



## 2.2 Disclosures in Registration Statement

2.2.1 10b-5 Representation. At the time of effectiveness of the Registration Statement (or at the time of any post-effective amendment to the Registration Statement) and at all times subsequent thereto up to the Closing Date and the Option Closing Date, if any, the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus do and will contain all material statements that are required to be stated therein in accordance with the Act and the Regulations, and did or will, in all material respects, conform to the requirements of the Act and the Regulations. At all times during the Market Making Period (as defined below), the Registration Statement and the Market Making Prospectus do and will contain all material statements that are required to be stated therein in accordance with the Act and the Regulations, and did or will, in all material respects, conform to the requirements of the Act and the Regulations. The Registration Statement, as of the effective date, did not, and the amendments and supplements thereto, as of their respective dates, will not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact required to be stated therein, or necessary to make the statements therein, not misleading. The IPO Prospectus, as of its date and the Closing Date or the Option Closing Date, as the case may be, did not, and the amendments and supplements thereto, as of their respective dates, will not, include any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. The Market Making Prospectus, as of its date, did not, and during the Market Making Period, will not, and the amendments and supplements thereto, as of their respective dates, will not, include any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. The Sale Preliminary Prospectus, as of the Time of Sale (or such subsequent Time of Sale pursuant to Section 2.1.1), did not include any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. When any Preliminary Prospectus or the Sale Preliminary Prospectus was first filed with the Commission (whether filed as part of the Registration Statement for the registration of the Registered Securities or any amendment thereto or pursuant to Rule 424(a) of the Regulations) and when any amendment thereof or supplement thereto was first filed with the Commission, such Preliminary Prospectus or the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and any amendments thereof and supplements thereto complied or will have been corrected in the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus to comply in all material respects with the applicable provisions of the Act and the Regulations and did not and will not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact required to be stated therein or necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. The representation and warranty made in this Section 2.2.1 does not apply to statements made or statements omitted in reliance upon and in conformity with written information furnished to the Company with respect to the Underwriters by the Underwriters expressly for use in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus or the Prospectus or any amendment thereof or supplement thereto. The parties acknowledge and agree that such information provided by or on behalf of the Underwriters consists solely of the names of the Underwriters, the information with respect to short positions contained in the thirteenth and fourteenth paragraphs of the section entitled “Underwriting (Conflicts of Interest)” and the identity of counsel to the Underwriters contained in the section entitled “Legal Matters” (such information, collectively, the “**Underwriters’ Information**”).

2.2.2 Disclosure of Agreements. The agreements and documents described in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus conform to the descriptions thereof contained therein and there are no agreements or other documents required to be described in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus or the Prospectus or to be filed with the Commission as exhibits to the Registration Statement, that have not been so described or filed. Each agreement or other instrument (however characterized or described) to which the Company is a party or by which its property or business is or may be bound or affected and (i) that is referred to in the Registration Statement, Sale Preliminary Prospectus or the Prospectus or attached as an exhibit thereto, or (ii) that is material to the Company’s business, has been duly authorized and validly executed by the Company, is in full force and effect and is enforceable against the Company and, to the Company’s knowledge, assuming reasonable inquiry, the other parties thereto, in accordance with its terms, except (x) as such enforceability may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or similar laws affecting creditors’ rights generally, (y) as enforceability of any indemnification or contribution provision may be limited under the foreign, federal and state securities laws, and (z) that the remedy of specific performance and injunctive and other forms of equitable relief may be subject to the equitable defenses and to the discretion of the court before which any proceeding therefor may be brought, and no such agreement or instrument has been assigned by the Company, and neither the Company nor, to the Company’s knowledge, assuming reasonable inquiry, any other party is in breach or default thereunder and, to the Company’s knowledge, assuming reasonable inquiry, no event has occurred that, with the lapse of time or the giving of notice, or both, would constitute a breach or default thereunder. To the Company’s knowledge, assuming reasonable inquiry, the performance by the Company of the material provisions of such agreements or instruments will not result in a violation of any existing applicable law, rule, regulation, judgment, order or decree of any governmental agency or court, domestic or foreign, having jurisdiction over the Company or any of its assets or businesses, including, without limitation, those relating to environmental laws and regulations.

2.2.3 Prior Securities Transactions. No securities of the Company have been sold by the Company or by or on behalf of, or for the benefit of, any person or persons controlling, controlled by, or under common control with the Company since the date of the Company's formation, except as disclosed in the Registration Statement.

2.2.4 Regulations. The disclosures in the Registration Statement and the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and Prospectus concerning the effects of federal, foreign, state and local regulation on the Company's business as currently contemplated are correct in all material respects and do not omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances in which they were made, not misleading.

### 2.3 Changes After Dates in Registration Statement.

2.3.1 No Material Adverse Change. Since the respective dates as of which information is given in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus, except as otherwise specifically stated therein, (i) there has been no material adverse change in the condition, financial or otherwise, or business prospects of the Company, (ii) there have been no material transactions entered into by the Company, other than as contemplated pursuant to this Agreement, (iii) no member of the Company's board of directors (the "**Board of Directors**") or management has resigned from any position with the Company and (iv) no event or occurrence has taken place which materially impairs, or would likely materially impair, with the passage of time, the ability of the members of the Board of Directors or management to act in their capacities with the Company as described in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus.

2.3.2 Recent Securities Transactions. Subsequent to the respective dates as of which information is given in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus, and except as may otherwise be indicated or contemplated herein or therein, the Company has not (i) issued any securities or incurred any liability or obligation, direct or contingent, for borrowed money; or (ii) declared or paid any dividend or made any other distribution on or in respect to its share capital.

2.4 Independent Accountants. To the Company's knowledge, assuming reasonable inquiry, Marcum LLP ("**Marcum**"), whose report is filed with the Commission as part of the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus and included in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus, are independent registered public accountants as required by the Act, the Regulations and the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (the "**PCAOB**"), including the rules and regulations promulgated by such entity. To the Company's knowledge, assuming reasonable inquiry, Marcum is currently registered with the PCAOB. Marcum has not, during the periods covered by the financial statements included in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus, provided to the Company any non-audit services, as such term is used in Section 10A(g) of the Exchange Act.

### 2.5 Financial Statements; Statistical Data.

2.5.1 Financial Statements. The financial statements, including the notes thereto and supporting schedules (if any) included in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus fairly present the financial position, the results of operations and the cash flows of the Company at the dates and for the periods to which they apply; such financial statements have been prepared in conformity with United States generally accepted accounting principles ("**GAAP**"), consistently applied throughout the periods involved; and the supporting schedules (if any) included in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus present fairly the information required to be stated therein in conformity with the Regulations. No other financial statements or supporting schedules are required to be included or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus or the Prospectus. The Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus disclose all material off-balance sheet transactions, arrangements, obligations (including contingent obligations), and other relationships of the Company with unconsolidated entities or other persons that may have a material current or future effect on the Company's financial condition, changes in financial condition, results of operations, liquidity, capital expenditures, capital resources, or significant components of revenues or expenses. There are no pro forma or as adjusted financial statements that are required to be included in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus in accordance with Regulation S-X or Form S-1 that have not been included as required.

2.5.2 Statistical Data. The statistical, industry-related and market-related data included in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and/or the Prospectus are based on or derived from sources that the Company reasonably and in good faith believes are reliable and accurate, and such data materially agree with the sources from which they are derived.

2.6 Authorized Capital; Options. The Company had at the date or dates indicated in each of the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus, as the case may be, duly authorized, issued and outstanding capitalization as set forth in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus, and the Prospectus. Based on the assumptions stated in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus, and the Prospectus, the Company will have on the Closing Date the adjusted stock capitalization set forth therein. Except as set forth in, or contemplated by the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus, on the Effective Date and on the Closing Date, there will be no options, warrants, or other rights to purchase or otherwise acquire any authorized but unissued shares of Common Stock or any security convertible into shares of Common Stock, or any contracts or commitments to issue or sell shares of Common Stock or any such options, warrants, rights or convertible securities.

## 2.7 Valid Issuance of Securities.

2.7.1 Outstanding Securities. All issued and outstanding securities of the Company issued prior to the date of this Agreement have been duly authorized and validly issued and are fully paid and non-assessable; the holders thereof have no rights of rescission with respect thereto, and are not subject to personal liability by reason of being such holders; and none of such securities was issued in violation of the preemptive rights of any holders of any security of the Company or similar contractual rights granted by the Company. The authorized and outstanding securities of the Company conform in all material respects to all statements relating thereto contained in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus. All offers and sales and any transfers of the outstanding securities of the Company were at all relevant times either registered under the Act and the applicable state securities or Blue Sky laws or, based in part on the representations and warranties of the purchasers of such securities, exempt from such registration requirements.

2.7.2 Securities Sold Pursuant to this Agreement. The shares of Common Stock included in the Public Units have been duly authorized and reserved for issuance and when issued and paid for in accordance with this Agreement, will be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable. The holders of the Public Securities are not and will not be subject to personal liability by reason of being such holders; the Public Securities are not and will not be subject to the preemptive rights of any holders of any security of the Company or similar contractual rights granted by the Company; and all corporate action required to be taken for the authorization, issuance and sale of the Public Securities has been duly and validly taken. The form of certificates for the Public Securities conform to the corporate law of the jurisdiction of the Company's incorporation. The Public Securities conform in all material respects to the descriptions thereof contained in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus, as the case may be. When paid for and issued, the Public Units and the Warrants included in the Public Units will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company to issue the number and type of securities of the Company called for thereby in accordance with the terms thereof and such Public Units and Warrants are enforceable against the Company in accordance with their respective terms, except: (i) as such enforceability may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or similar laws affecting creditors' rights generally; (ii) as enforceability of any indemnification or contribution provision may be limited under foreign, federal and state securities laws; and (iii) that the remedy of specific performance and injunctive and other forms of equitable relief may be subject to the equitable defenses and to the discretion of the court before which any proceeding therefor may be brought. The Warrant Shares have been reserved for issuance and upon the exercise of the applicable Warrants and upon payment of the consideration therefor, and when issued in accordance with the terms thereof, such Warrant Shares will be duly and validly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable.

**2.7.3 Placement Securities.** The Placement Shares have been duly authorized and reserved for issuance and when issued and paid for in accordance with the Private Placement Unit Purchase Agreement, will be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable. The holders of the Placement Securities are not and will not be subject to personal liability by reason of being such holders; the Placement Securities are not and will not be subject to the preemptive rights of any holders of any security of the Company or similar contractual rights granted by the Company; and all corporate action required to be taken for the authorization, issuance and sale of the Placement Securities has been duly and validly taken. The Placement Securities conform in all material respects to the descriptions thereof contained in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus, as the case may be. When paid for and issued, the Placement Units and the Placement Warrants included in the Placement Units will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company to issue the number and type of securities of the Company called for thereby in accordance with the terms thereof, and such Placement Units and Warrants are enforceable against the Company in accordance with their respective terms, except: (i) as such enforceability may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or similar laws affecting creditors' rights generally; (ii) as enforceability of any indemnification or contribution provision may be limited under foreign, federal and state securities laws; and (iii) that the remedy of specific performance and injunctive and other forms of equitable relief may be subject to the equitable defenses and to the discretion of the court before which any proceeding therefor may be brought. The Placement Warrant Shares have been reserved for issuance and upon the exercise of the applicable Placement Warrants and upon payment of the consideration therefor, and when issued in accordance with the terms thereof, such Placement Warrant Shares will be duly and validly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable.

**2.7.4 Forward Purchase Securities.** The Forward Purchase Shares and the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Forward Purchase Warrants have been duly authorized and reserved for issuance and when issued and paid for in accordance with the Forward Purchase Contract and the Warrant Agreement, will be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable. The holders of the Forward Purchase Securities are not and will not be subject to personal liability by reason of being such holders; the Forward Purchase Securities are not and will not be subject to the preemptive rights of any holders of any security of the Company or similar contractual rights granted by the Company; and all corporate action required to be taken for the authorization, issuance and sale of the Forward Purchase Securities has been duly and validly taken. The Forward Purchase Securities conform in all material respects to the descriptions thereof contained in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus, as the case may be. When paid for and issued, the Forward Purchase Units and the Forward Purchase Warrants will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company to issue the number and type of securities of the Company called for thereby in accordance with the terms thereof, and such Forward Purchase Units and Forward Purchase Warrants are enforceable against the Company in accordance with their respective terms, except: (i) as such enforceability may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or similar laws affecting creditors' rights generally; (ii) as enforceability of any indemnification or contribution provision may be limited under foreign, federal and state securities laws; and (iii) that the remedy of specific performance and injunctive and other forms of equitable relief may be subject to the equitable defenses and to the discretion of the court before which any proceeding therefor may be brought. The shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Forward Purchase Warrants have been reserved for issuance and upon the exercise of the applicable Forward Purchase Warrants and upon payment of the consideration therefor, and when issued in accordance with the terms thereof, such shares of Common Stock will be duly and validly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable.

**2.7.5 No Integration.** Neither the Company nor any of its affiliates has, prior to the date hereof, made any offer or sale of any securities which are required to be or may be "integrated" pursuant to the Act or the Regulations with the offer and sale of the Registered Securities pursuant to the Registration Statement.

**2.8 Registration Rights of Third Parties.** Except as set forth in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus, no holders of any securities of the Company or any rights exercisable for or convertible or exchangeable into securities of the Company have the right to require the Company to register any such securities of the Company under the Act or to include any such securities in a registration statement to be filed by the Company.

2.9 Validity and Binding Effect of Agreements. This Agreement, the Warrant Agreement, the Trust Agreement, the Registration Rights Agreement (as defined below), the Private Placement Units Purchase Agreement, the Forward Purchase Contract, the Services Agreement (as defined below) and the business combination marketing agreement, between the Company and B. Riley FBR, Inc. (the “**Business Combination Marketing Agreement**”), have been duly and validly authorized by the Company and, when executed and delivered, will constitute the valid and binding agreements of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their respective terms, except: (i) as such enforceability may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or similar laws affecting creditors’ rights generally, (ii) as enforceability of any indemnification or contribution provision may be limited under the foreign, federal and state securities laws, and (iii) that the remedy of specific performance and injunctive and other forms of equitable relief may be subject to the equitable defenses and to the discretion of the court before which any proceeding therefor may be brought.

2.10 No Conflicts, Etc. The execution, delivery, and performance by the Company of this Agreement, the Warrant Agreement, the Trust Agreement, the Registration Rights Agreement, the Private Placement Units Purchase Agreement, the Forward Purchase Contract, the Services Agreement and the Business Combination Marketing Agreement, the consummation by the Company of the transactions herein and therein contemplated and the compliance by the Company with the terms hereof and thereof do not and will not, with or without the giving of notice or the lapse of time or both: (i) result in a breach or violation of, or conflict with any of the terms and provisions of, or constitute a default under, or result in the creation, modification, termination or imposition of any lien, charge or encumbrance upon any property or assets of the Company pursuant to the terms of any agreement, obligation, condition, covenant or instrument to which the Company is a party or bound or to which its property is subject except pursuant to the Trust Agreement; (ii) result in any violation of the provisions of the Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws of the Company, each as may be amended, amended and restated or otherwise modified (collectively, the “**Charter Documents**”); or (iii) violate any existing applicable statute, law, rule, regulation, judgment, order or decree of any governmental agency or court, domestic or foreign, having jurisdiction over the Company or any of its properties, assets or business constituted as of the date hereof.

2.11 No Defaults; Violations. No default or violation exists in the due performance and observance of any term, covenant or condition of any license, contract, indenture, mortgage, deed of trust, note, loan or credit agreement, or any other agreement or instrument evidencing an obligation for borrowed money, or any other agreement or instrument to which the Company is a party or by which the Company may be bound or to which any of the properties or assets of the Company is subject. The Company is not in violation of any term or provision of its Charter Documents or in violation of any franchise, license, permit, applicable law, rule, regulation, judgment or decree of any governmental agency or court, domestic or foreign, having jurisdiction over the Company or any of its properties or businesses.

#### 2.12 Corporate Power; Licenses; Consents.

2.12.1 Conduct of Business. The Company has all requisite corporate power and authority, and has all necessary authorizations, approvals, orders, licenses, certificates and permits of and from all governmental regulatory officials and bodies that it needs as of the date hereof to conduct its business for the purposes as described in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus. The disclosures in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus concerning the effects of foreign, federal, state and local regulation on the Offering and the Company’s business purpose as currently contemplated are correct in all material respects and do not omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary in order to make the statements therein, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. Since its formation, the Company has conducted no business and has incurred no liabilities other than in connection with its formation, maintenance of existence and in furtherance of the Offering.

2.12.2 Transactions Contemplated Herein. The Company has all requisite corporate power and authority to enter into this Agreement, the Warrant Agreement, the Trust Agreement, the Registration Rights Agreement, the Private Placement Units Purchase Agreement, the Forward Purchase Contract, the Services Agreement and the Business Combination Marketing Agreement and to carry out the provisions and conditions hereof and thereof, and all consents, authorizations, approvals and orders required in connection herewith and therewith have been obtained. No consent, authorization or order of, and no filing with, any court, government agency or other body, foreign or domestic, is required for the valid issuance, sale and delivery, of the Securities and the consummation of the transactions and agreements contemplated by this Agreement, the Warrant Agreement, the Trust Agreement, the Registration Rights Agreement, the Private Placement Units Purchase Agreement, the Forward Purchase Contract, the Services Agreement and the Business Combination Marketing Agreement and as contemplated by the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus, except with respect to applicable foreign, federal and state securities laws, the rules of the New York Stock Exchange (the “**NYSE**”) and the rules and regulations promulgated by FINRA.

2.13 D&O and FINRA Questionnaires. To the Company's knowledge, assuming reasonable inquiry, all information contained in the questionnaires (" **Questionnaires** ") completed by each of the Company's officers, directors and stockholders (" **Insiders** ") and provided to the Representative and its counsel and the biographies of the Insiders contained in the Registration Statement, Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus (to the extent a biography is included) is true and correct and the Company has not become aware of any information which would cause the information disclosed in the Questionnaires completed by each Insider to become inaccurate, incorrect or incomplete.

2.14 Litigation; Governmental Proceedings. There is no action, suit, proceeding, inquiry, arbitration, investigation, litigation or governmental proceeding pending, or to the Company's knowledge, assuming reasonable inquiry, threatened against or involving the Company or, to the Company's knowledge, assuming reasonable inquiry, any Insider or any stockholder or member of an Insider that has not been disclosed, or that is required to be disclosed, in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus, the Prospectus or the Questionnaires.

2.15 Good Standing. The Company has been duly organized and is validly existing as a corporation and is in good standing under the laws of the jurisdiction of incorporation. The Company is duly qualified to do business and is in good standing as a foreign corporation in each jurisdiction in which its ownership or lease of property or the conduct of business requires such qualification, except where the failure to qualify would not have a material adverse effect on the condition (financial or otherwise), earnings, assets, prospects, business, operations or properties of the Company, whether or not arising from transactions in the ordinary course of business (a " **Material Adverse Effect** ").

2.16 No Contemplation of a Business Combination. The Company has not selected any specific Business Combination target (each a " **Target Business** ") and it has not, nor has anyone on its behalf, initiated any substantive discussions, directly or indirectly, with any Target Business.

#### 2.17 Taxes.

2.17.1 There are no transfer taxes or other similar fees or charges under U.S. federal law or the laws of any U.S. state or any political subdivision of the United States, required to be paid in connection with the execution and delivery of this Agreement or the issuance or sale by the Company of the Public Securities.

2.17.2 The Company has filed all U.S. federal, state and local tax returns required to be filed with taxing authorities prior to the date hereof in a timely manner or has duly obtained extensions of time for the filing thereof. The Company has paid all taxes shown as due on such returns that were filed and has paid all taxes imposed on it and any other assessment, fine or penalty levied against it, to the extent that any of the foregoing is due and payable. The Company has made appropriate provisions in the applicable financial statements referred to in Section 2.5.1 above in respect of all federal, state, local and foreign income and franchise taxes for all current or prior periods as to which the tax liability of the Company has not been finally determined.

#### 2.18 Foreign Corrupt Practices Act; Anti-Money Laundering; Patriot Act.

2.18.1 Foreign Corrupt Practices Act. Neither the Company nor, to the Company's knowledge, assuming reasonable inquiry, any of the Insiders or any other person acting on behalf of the Company has, directly or indirectly, given or agreed to give any money, gift or similar benefit (other than legal price concessions to customers in the ordinary course of business) to any customer, supplier, employee or agent of a customer or supplier, or official or employee of any governmental agency or instrumentality of any government (domestic or foreign) or any political party or candidate for office (domestic or foreign) or other person who was, is, or may be in a position to help or hinder the business of the Company (or assist it in connection with any actual or proposed transaction) that (i) might subject the Company to any damage or penalty in any civil, criminal or governmental litigation or proceeding, (ii) if not given in the past, might have had a Material Adverse Effect, or (iii) if not continued in the future, might adversely affect the assets, business or operations of the Company. The Company has taken reasonable steps to ensure that its accounting controls and procedures are sufficient to cause the Company to comply in all material respects with the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, as amended.

2.18.2 Currency and Foreign Transactions Reporting Act. The operations of the Company are and have been conducted at all times in compliance with (i) applicable financial recordkeeping and reporting requirements of the Currency and Foreign Transaction Reporting Act of 1970, as amended, including the Money Laundering Control Act of 1986, as amended, the rules and regulations thereunder and any related or similar money laundering statutes, rules, regulations or guidelines, issued, administered or enforced by any Federal governmental agency (collectively, the “**Money Laundering Laws**”) and no action, suit or proceeding by or before any court or governmental agency, authority or body or any arbitrator involving the Company with respect to the Money Laundering Laws is pending or, to the Company’s knowledge, assuming reasonable inquiry, threatened, and (ii) the requirements of the U.S. Treasury Department Office of Foreign Asset Control.

2.18.3 PATRIOT Act. Neither the Company nor to the Company’s knowledge, assuming reasonable inquiry, any Insider has violated the Bank Secrecy Act of 1970, as amended, or Uniting and Strengthening of America by Providing Appropriate Tools Required to Intercept and Obstruct Terrorism (USA PATRIOT ACT) Act of 2001, and/or the rules and regulations promulgated under any such law, or any successor law.

2.19 Officers’ Certificate. Any certificate signed by any duly authorized officer, officers, director or directors of the Company in connection with the Offering and delivered to the Representative or to EG&S shall be deemed a representation and warranty by the Company to the Underwriters as to the matters covered thereby.

## 2.20 Agreements With Insiders and M&A Advisor.

2.20.1 Insider Letter. The Company has caused to be duly executed a legally binding and enforceable agreement (except (i) as such enforceability may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or similar laws affecting creditors’ rights generally, (ii) as enforceability of any indemnification, contribution or non-compete provision may be limited under foreign, federal and state securities laws, and (iii) that the remedy of specific performance and injunctive and other forms of equitable relief may be subject to the equitable defenses and to the discretion of the court before which any proceeding therefor may be brought), a form of which is filed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement (the “**Insider Letter**”), pursuant to which each of the Insiders of the Company agree to certain matters. The Insider Letter shall not be amended, modified or otherwise changed without the prior written consent of the Representative.

2.20.2 Private Placement Units Purchase Agreement. The Sponsor has executed and delivered a private placement units purchase agreement, the form of which is filed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement (the “**Private Placement Units Purchase Agreement**”), pursuant to which the Sponsor will, among other things, on the Closing Date, consummate the purchase of and deliver the purchase price for the Placement Units purchased in the Unit Private Placement. Pursuant to the Private Placement Units Purchase Agreement, (i) the Sponsor has waived any and all rights and claims it may have to any proceeds, and any interest thereon, held in the Trust Account in respect of the Placement Securities, and (ii) the proceeds from the sale of the Placement Units will be deposited by the Company in the Trust Account in accordance with the terms of the Trust Agreement on the Closing Date.

2.20.3 Forward Purchase Contract. The Sponsor has executed and delivered a forward purchase contract (the “**Forward Purchase Contract**”), the form of which is filed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement, pursuant to which the Sponsor will, among other things, simultaneously with the closing of the initial Business Combination, consummate the purchase of and deliver the purchase price for the Forward Purchase Securities purchased in the Forward Private Placement. Pursuant to the Forward Purchase Contract, the Sponsor has waived any and all rights and claims it may have to any proceeds, and any interest thereon, held in the Trust Account in respect of the Forward Purchase Securities.

2.20.4 Registration Rights Agreement. The Company, the Sponsor and certain other security holders of the Company have entered into a Registration Rights Agreement (“ **Registration Rights Agreement** ”) substantially in the form filed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement, whereby such parties will be entitled to certain registration rights with respect to the securities they hold or may hold, as set forth in such Registration Rights Agreement and described more fully in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus.

2.20.5 Working Capital Loans. The Sponsor has made loans to the Company in the aggregate amount of up to \$300,000 (the “ **Insider Loans** ”) pursuant to a promissory note substantially in the form filed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement. The Insider Loans do not bear any interest and are repayable by the Company on the earlier of December 31, 2020 and the consummation of the Offering.

2.20.6 Administrative Services. The Company and B. Riley Corporate Services, Inc. have entered into an agreement (the “ **Services Agreement** ”), substantially in the form annexed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement, pursuant to which B. Riley Corporate Services, Inc. will make available to the Company general and administrative services including office space, utilities and secretarial support for the Company’s use for \$10,000 per month payable until the earlier of the consummation by the Company of a Business Combination or the liquidation of the Trust Account, on the terms and subject to the conditions set forth in the Services Agreement.

2.21 Warrant Agreement. The Company has entered into a warrant agreement with respect to the Warrants underlying the Units, the Placement Units and the Forward Purchase Units with CST substantially in the form filed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement (“ **Warrant Agreement** ”).

2.22 No Existing Non-Competition Agreements. No Insider is subject to any non-competition agreement or non-solicitation agreement with any employer or prior employer which could materially affect his ability to be an employee, officer and/or director of the Company, except as disclosed in the Registration Statement.

2.23 Investment Company Act. The Company is not required, and upon the issuance and sale of (i) the Public Securities, the Placement Securities and the Founder Shares as herein contemplated and the application of the net proceeds therefrom, or (ii) the Securities as herein contemplated and the application of the net proceeds therefrom, in each case, as described in the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and IPO Prospectus will not be required, to register as an “investment company” under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (“ **Investment Company Act** ”).

2.24 Investment Management Trust Agreement. The Company has entered into the Trust Agreement with respect to certain proceeds of the Offering and the Unit Private Placement substantially in the form filed as an exhibit to the Registration Statement.

2.25 Subsidiaries. The Company does not own an interest in any corporation, partnership, limited liability company, joint venture, trust or other business entity.

2.26 Related Party Transactions. No relationship, direct or indirect, exists between or among the Company, on the one hand, and any Insider, on the other hand, which is required by the Act, the Exchange Act or the Regulations to be described in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus which is not so described as required. There are no outstanding loans, advances (except normal advances for business expenses in the ordinary course of business) or guarantees of indebtedness by the Company to or for the benefit of any of the officers or directors of the Company or any of their respective family members. The Company has not extended or maintained credit, arranged for the extension of credit, or renewed an extension of credit, in the form of a personal loan to or for any director or officer of the Company.

2.27 No Influence. The Company has not offered, or caused the Underwriters to offer, the Units to any person or entity with the intention of unlawfully influencing: (a) a customer or supplier of the Company or any affiliate of the Company to alter the customer’s or supplier’s level or type of business with the Company or such affiliate or (b) a journalist or publication to write or publish favorable information about the Company or any such affiliate.

2.28 Sarbanes-Oxley. The Company is, or on the Closing Date will be, in material compliance with the provisions of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, as amended, and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder (the “ **Sarbanes-Oxley Act** ”) and related or similar rules or regulations promulgated by any governmental or self-regulatory entity or agency, that are applicable to it as of the date hereof.



2.29 Distribution of Offering Material by the Company. The Company has not distributed and will not distribute, prior to the latest of the Closing Date, the completion of the distribution of the Units and the end of the Market Making Period, any offering material in connection with the offering and sale of the Units other than the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus, in each case as supplemented and amended.

2.30 The NYSE. The Public Securities have been authorized for listing, subject to official notice of issuance and evidence of satisfactory distribution, on the NYSE, and the Company knows of no reason or set of facts that is likely to adversely affect such authorization.

2.31 Board of Directors. As of the Effective Date, the Board of Directors of the Company will be comprised of the persons set forth under the heading of the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus captioned “Management.” As of the Effective Date, the qualifications of the persons serving as board members and the overall composition of the board will comply with Sarbanes-Oxley Act and the rules of the NYSE that are, in each case, applicable to the Company. As of the Effective Date, the Company will have an Audit Committee that satisfies the applicable requirements under Sarbanes-Oxley Act and the rules of the NYSE.

2.32 Emerging Growth Company. From its formation through the date hereof, the Company has been and is an “emerging growth company,” as defined in Section 2(a) of the Act (an “**Emerging Growth Company**”).

2.33 No Disqualification Events. Neither the Company, nor any of its predecessors or any affiliated issuer, nor any director, executive officer, or other officer of the Company participating in the Offering, nor any beneficial owner of 20% or more of the Company’s outstanding voting equity securities, calculated on the basis of voting power, nor any promoter (as that term is defined in Rule 405 under the Act) connected with the Company in any capacity at the time of sale (each, a “**Company Covered Person**” and, together, “**Company Covered Persons**”) is subject to any of the “**Bad Actor**” disqualifications described in Rule 506(d)(1)(i) to (viii) under the Act (a “**Disqualification Event**”), except for a Disqualification Event covered by Rule 506(d)(2) or (d)(3). The Company has exercised reasonable care to determine whether any Company Covered Person is subject to a Disqualification Event. The Company has complied, to the extent applicable, with its disclosure obligations under Rule 506(e), and has furnished to the Representative a copy of any disclosures provided thereunder.

2.34 Free-Writing Prospectus and Testing-the-Waters. The Company has not made any offer relating to the Public Securities that would constitute an issuer free writing prospectus, as defined in Rule 433 under the Act, or that would otherwise constitute a “free writing prospectus” as defined in Rule 405. The Company (a) has not engaged in any Testing-the-Waters Communication other than Testing-the-Waters Communications with the consent of the Representative with entities that are qualified institutional buyers within the meaning of Rule 144A under the Act or institutions that are accredited investors within the meaning of Rule 501 under the Act and (b) has not authorized anyone to engage in Testing-the-Waters Communications other than its officers and the Representative and individuals engaged by the Representative. The Company has not distributed any Written Testing-the-Waters Communications other than those listed on *Schedule B* hereto. “**Testing-the-Waters Communication**” means any oral or written communication with potential investors undertaken in reliance on Section 5(d) of the Act.

3. Covenants of the Company. The Company covenants and agrees as follows:

3.1 Amendments to Registration Statement. The Company will deliver to the Representative, prior to filing, any amendment or supplement to the Registration Statement, any Preliminary Prospectus or the Prospectus proposed to be filed after the Effective Date and the Company shall not file any such amendment or supplement to which the Representative shall reasonably object in writing.

### 3.2 Federal Securities Laws.

3.2.1 Compliance. During the time when a Prospectus is required to be delivered under the Act and during the Market Making Period, the Company will use its commercially reasonable efforts to comply with all requirements imposed upon it by the Act, the Regulations and the Exchange Act and by the regulations under the Exchange Act, as from time to time in force, so far as necessary to permit the continuance of sales of or dealings in the Registered Securities in accordance with the provisions hereof and the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus. If at any time when the IPO Prospectus relating to the Registered Securities is required to be delivered under the Act, any event shall have occurred as a result of which, in the opinion of counsel for the Company or counsel for the Representative, the IPO Prospectus, as then amended or supplemented, includes an untrue statement of a material fact or omits to state any material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading, or if it is necessary at any time to amend or supplement the IPO Prospectus to comply with the Act, the Company will notify the Representative promptly and prepare and file with the Commission, subject to Section 3.1 hereof, an appropriate amendment or supplement in accordance with Section 10 of the Act. If during the period beginning on the date hereof and expiring on the close of trading on the later of (i) 30 days from the date hereof and (ii) the date on which the Company notifies the Representative in writing that it no longer intends to keep current the Market Making Prospectus (the “**Market Making Period**”), any event shall have occurred as a result of which, in the opinion of counsel for the Company or counsel for the Representative, the Market Making Prospectus, as then amended or supplemented, includes an untrue statement of a material fact or omits to state any material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading, or if it is necessary at any time to amend or supplement the Market Making Prospectus to comply with the Act, the Company will notify the Representative promptly and prepare and file with the Commission, subject to Section 3.1 hereof, an appropriate amendment or supplement in accordance with Section 10 of the Act.

3.2.2 Filing of Final Prospectus. The Company will file the IPO Prospectus (in form and substance satisfactory to the Representative) and the Market Making Prospectus (in form and substance satisfactory to the Representative) with the Commission pursuant to the requirements of Rule 424 of the Regulations.

3.2.3 Exchange Act Registration. The Company will use its best efforts to maintain the registration of the Public Securities under the provisions of the Exchange Act (except in connection with a going-private transaction) for a period of five years from the Effective Date, or until the Company is required to be liquidated or is acquired, if earlier, or, in the case of the Warrants, until the Warrants expire and are no longer exercisable or have been exercised or redeemed in full. The Company will not deregister the Public Securities under the Exchange Act without the prior written consent of the Representative.

3.2.4 Exchange Act Filings. From the Effective Date until the earlier of the Company’s initial Business Combination, and its liquidation and dissolution, the Company shall timely file with the Commission via the Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis and Retrieval System (“**EDGAR**”) such statements and reports as are required to be filed by a company registered under Section 12(b) of the Exchange Act.

3.2.5 Sarbanes-Oxley Compliance. As soon as it is legally required to do so, the Company shall take all actions necessary to obtain and thereafter maintain material compliance with each applicable provision of Sarbanes-Oxley Act and related or similar rules and regulations promulgated by any other governmental or self-regulatory entity or agency with jurisdiction over the Company.

3.3 Free-Writing Prospectus. The Company agrees that it will not make any offer relating to the Public Securities that would constitute an issuer free writing prospectus, as defined in Rule 433 under the Act, or that would otherwise constitute a “free writing prospectus” as defined in Rule 405.

3.4 Delivery to Underwriters of Prospectuses. The Company will deliver to the Underwriters, without charge and from time to time during the period when the IPO Prospectus is required to be delivered under the Act or the Exchange Act, such number of copies of each Preliminary Prospectus and the IPO Prospectus as the Underwriters may reasonably request and, as soon as the Registration Statement or any amendment or supplement thereto becomes effective, deliver to the Underwriters, upon their request, two copies of a manually executed Registration Statement, including exhibits, and all post-effective amendments thereto and copies of all exhibits filed therewith or incorporated therein by reference and all manually executed consents of certified experts. The Company will deliver to the Representative, without charge and from time to time during the Market Making Period, such number of copies of the Market Making Prospectus as the Representative may reasonably request.

3.5 Effectiveness and Events Requiring Notice to the Representative. The Company will use its best efforts to cause the Registration Statement to remain effective and will notify the Representative promptly and confirm the notice in writing (electronic mail being sufficient): (i) of the effectiveness of the Registration Statement and any amendment thereto; (ii) of the issuance by the Commission of any stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement or any post-effective amendment thereto or preventing or suspending the use of any Preliminary Prospectus or the Prospectus or of the initiation, or the threatening, of any proceeding for that purpose; (iii) of the issuance by any foreign or state securities commission of any proceedings for the suspension of the qualification of the Public Securities for offering or sale in any jurisdiction or of the initiation, or the threatening, of any proceeding for that purpose; (iv) the filing of any amendment or supplement to the Registration Statement or Prospectus; (v) of the receipt of any comments or request for any additional information from the Commission; and (vi) of the happening of any event during the period in which a Prospectus is required by the Securities Act to be delivered in connection with sales of the Units (but in any event at any time through and including the Closing Date) that, in the reasonable judgment of the Company, makes any statement of a material fact made in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus untrue or that requires the making of any changes in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus in order to make the statements therein, and in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. If the Commission or any foreign or state securities commission shall enter a stop order or suspend such qualification at any time, the Company will make every reasonable effort to obtain promptly the lifting of such order.

### 3.6 Affiliated Transactions.

3.6.1 Business Combinations. The Company will not consummate a Business Combination with any entity that is affiliated with any Insider unless the Company obtains an opinion from an independent investment banking firm that is a member of FINRA, or from an independent accounting firm, in each case that is reasonably acceptable to the Representative, that the Business Combination is fair to the Company's stockholders from a financial point of view. Except as disclosed in the Prospectus, no Insider or any affiliate of an Insider shall receive any fees of any type in connection with any Business Combination.

3.6.2 Compensation to Insiders. Except as disclosed in the Prospectus, the Company shall not pay any of the Insiders or any of their affiliates any fees or compensation from the Company, for services rendered to the Company prior to, or in connection with, the consummation of a Business Combination.

3.7 Reports to the Representative. For a period of five years from the Effective Date or until such earlier time upon which the Company is required to be liquidated, the Company will furnish to the Representative and its counsel copies of such financial statements and other periodic and special reports as the Company from time to time furnishes generally to holders of any class of its securities, and promptly furnish to the Representative (i) a copy of each periodic report the Company shall be required to file with the Commission, (ii) a copy of every press release and every news item and article with respect to the Company or its affairs that was released by the Company, (iii) a copy of each Current Report on Form 8-K or Schedules 13D, 13G, 14D-1 or 13E-4 received or prepared by the Company, (iv) upon the request of the Representative, two (2) copies of each registration statement filed by the Company with the Commission under the Act, and (v) such additional documents and information with respect to the Company and the affairs of any future subsidiaries of the Company as the Representative may from time to time reasonably request; provided that the Representative shall sign, if requested by the Company, a Regulation FD compliant confidentiality agreement which is reasonably acceptable to the Representative and its counsel in connection with the Representative's receipt of such information. Documents publicly filed or furnished with the Commission pursuant to its EDGAR system shall be deemed to have been delivered to the Representative pursuant to this Section.

3.8 Transfer Agent. For a period of five years following the Effective Date or until such earlier time upon which the Company is required to be liquidated, the Company shall retain a transfer agent and warrant agent acceptable to the Representative. CST is acceptable to the Representative.

3.9 Payment of Expenses. The Company hereby agrees to pay on each of the Closing Date and the Option Closing Date, if any, to the extent not paid at or prior to the Closing Date, all Company expenses incidental to the performance of the obligations of the Company under this Agreement, including but not limited to (i) the Company's legal and accounting fees and disbursements, (ii) the preparation, printing, filing, mailing and delivery (including the payment of postage with respect to such mailing) of the Registration Statement, the Preliminary Sale Prospectus and the Prospectus, including any pre or post effective amendments or supplements thereto, and the printing and mailing of this Agreement and related documents, including the cost of all copies thereof and any amendments thereof or supplements thereto supplied to the Underwriters in quantities as may be required by the Underwriters, (iii) fees incurred in connection with conducting background checks of the Company's management team, up to \$25,000 in the aggregate, (iv) the preparation, printing, engraving, issuance and delivery of the Securities, including any transfer or other taxes payable thereon, (v) filing fees incurred in clearing the Offering with FINRA and the reasonable fees of counsel of the Underwriters (such counsel fees not to exceed \$25,000) in connection therewith, (vi) fees, costs and expenses incurred in listing the Securities on the NYSE or such other stock exchanges as the Company and the Representative together determine, (vii) all fees and disbursements of the Trustee, transfer agent and warrant agent, (viii) all of the Company's expenses associated with "due diligence" and "road show" meetings arranged by the Representative and any presentations made available by way of a net roadshow, including, without limitation, trips for the Company's management to meet with prospective investors, all travel, food and lodging expenses associated with such trips incurred by the Company or such management; (ix) the preparation, binding and delivery of bound transaction "bibles," in quantities and form and style reasonably satisfactory to the Representative and Lucite cube mementos in such quantities as the Representative and the Company may mutually agree; and (x) all other costs and expenses customarily borne by an issuer incidental to the performance of its obligations hereunder which are not otherwise specifically provided for in this Section 3.9. If the Offering is consummated, the Representative may deduct from the net proceeds of the Offering payable to the Company on the Closing Date the expenses set forth above (which shall not exceed \$100,000 and be mutually agreed upon between the Company and the Representative prior to Closing) to be paid by the Company to the Representative and others. If the Offering is not consummated for any reason (other than a breach by the Representative of any of its obligations hereunder), then the Company shall reimburse the Representative in full for its out-of-pocket accountable expenses actually incurred through such date not to exceed \$100,000, including, without limitation, reasonable fees and disbursements of counsel to the Representative.

3.10 Application of Net Proceeds. The Company will apply the net proceeds from the Offering and the Unit Private Placement received by it in a manner consistent with the application described under the caption "Use of Proceeds" in the IPO Prospectus.

3.11 Delivery of Earnings Statements to Security Holders. The Company will make generally available to its security holders as soon as practicable, but not later than the first day of the fifteenth full calendar month following the Effective Date, an earnings statement (which need not be certified by independent public or independent certified public accountants unless required by the Act or the Regulations, but which shall satisfy the provisions of Rule 158(a) under Section 11(a) of the Act) covering a period of at least twelve consecutive months beginning after the Effective Date.

### 3.12 Notice to FINRA.

3.12.1 Notice to FINRA. For a period of 90 days after the date of the IPO Prospectus, in the event any person or entity (regardless of any FINRA affiliation or association) is engaged, in writing, to assist the Company in its search for a Target Business or to provide any other services in connection therewith (other than the Business Combination Marketing Agreement), the Company will provide the following to FINRA and the Representative prior to the consummation of the Business Combination: (i) complete details of all services and copies of agreements governing such services; and (ii) justification as to why the person or entity providing the merger and acquisition services should not be considered an "underwriter and related person" with respect to the Offering, as such term is defined in Rule 5110 of the FINRA Manual. The Company also agrees that, if required by law, proper disclosure of such arrangement or potential arrangement will be made in the tender offer documents or proxy statement which the Company will file with the Commission in connection with the Business Combination.

3.12.2 FINRA. The Company shall advise the Representative (who shall make an appropriate filing with FINRA) if it is aware that any 5% or greater stockholder of the Company (other than the Sponsor) becomes an affiliate or associated person of a FINRA member participating in the distribution of the Public Securities.

3.12.3 Broker/Dealer. In the event the Company intends to register as a broker/dealer, merge with or acquire a registered broker/dealer, or otherwise become a member of FINRA, it shall promptly notify FINRA.

3.13 Stabilization. Neither the Company nor any of its employees, directors or stockholders has taken and the Company will not take, and has directed its employees, directors or stockholders not to take, directly or indirectly, any action without the consent of the Representative that is designed to or that has constituted or that might reasonably be expected to cause or result in, under the Exchange Act, or otherwise, stabilization or manipulation of the price of any security of the Company to facilitate the sale or resale of the Units.

3.14 Existing Lock-Up Agreement. The Company will enforce all existing agreements between the Company and any of its security holders that prohibit the sale, transfer, assignment, pledge or hypothecation of any securities of the Company in connection with the Offering. In addition, the Company will direct the Company's transfer agent to place stop transfer restrictions upon any such securities of the Company that are bound by such existing "lock-up" agreements for the duration of the periods contemplated in such agreements.

3.15 Internal Controls. The Company will maintain a system of internal accounting controls sufficient to provide reasonable assurances that: (i) transactions are executed in accordance with management's general or specific authorization, (ii) transactions are recorded as necessary in order to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with GAAP and to maintain accountability for assets, (iii) access to assets is permitted only in accordance with management's general or specific authorization, and (iv) the recorded accountability for assets is compared with existing assets at reasonable intervals and appropriate action is taken with respect to any differences.

3.16 Accountants. Until the earlier of five years from the Effective Date and such earlier time upon which the Company is required to be liquidated, the Company shall retain Marcum or another independent registered public accounting firm reasonably acceptable to the Representative.

3.17 Form 8-K. The Company shall, on or prior to the date hereof, retain its independent registered public accounting firm to audit the balance sheet of the Company as of the Closing Date (" **Audited Balance Sheet** ") reflecting the receipt by the Company of the proceeds of the Offering and the Unit Private Placement. Within four business days after the Closing Date, the Company shall file the Initial 8-K with the Commission, which Initial 8-K shall contain the Company's Audited Balance Sheet. Promptly after the Option Closing Date, if the Over-allotment Option closes after the Closing Date, the Company shall file with the Commission a Current Report on Form 8-K or an amendment to the Initial 8-K to provide updated financial information to reflect its receipt of proceeds from such option.

3.18 Corporate Proceedings. All corporate proceedings and other legal matters necessary to carry out the provisions of this Agreement and the transactions contemplated hereby shall have been done to the reasonable satisfaction of the Representative.

3.19 Investment Company. The Company shall cause the proceeds of the Offering to be held in the Trust Account to be invested only as provided for in the Trust Agreement and disclosed in the Prospectus. The Company will otherwise conduct its business in a manner so that it will not become subject to the Investment Company Act. Furthermore, once the Company consummates a Business Combination, it shall be engaged in a business other than that of investing, reinvesting, owning, holding or trading securities.

3.20 Amendments to Certificate of Incorporation. The Company covenants and agrees that prior to its initial Business Combination it will not seek to amend or modify its Certificate of Incorporation, except as set forth in the Certificate of Incorporation.

3.21 Press Releases. The Company agrees that it will not issue press releases or engage in any other publicity, without the Representative's prior written consent (not to be unreasonably withheld), for a period of twenty-five (25) days after the Closing Date. Notwithstanding the foregoing, in no event shall the Company be prohibited from issuing any press releases or engaging in any other publicity required by law, except that including the name of any Underwriter therein shall require the prior written consent of such Underwriter.

3.22 Insurance. The Company will maintain directors' and officers' insurance (including, without limitation, insurance covering the Company, its directors and officers for liabilities or losses arising in connection with the Offering, including, without limitation, liabilities or losses arising under the Act, the Exchange Act, the Regulations and any applicable foreign securities laws).

3.23 Electronic Prospectus. The Company shall cause to be prepared and delivered to the Underwriters, at the Company's expense, promptly, but in no event later than two (2) Business Days from the effective date of this Agreement, an Electronic Prospectus to be used by the Underwriters in connection with the Offering. The Company shall cause to be prepared and delivered to the Representative, if the Representative requests on the date of this Agreement, at the Company's expense, promptly, but in no event later than two (2) Business Days from the effective date of this Agreement, an Electronic Prospectus to be used by the Representative in connection with market making transactions. As used herein, the term "**Electronic Prospectus**" means a form of prospectus, and any amendment or supplement thereto, that meets each of the following conditions: (i) it shall be encoded in an electronic format, satisfactory to the Representative, that may be transmitted electronically by the Underwriters to offerees and purchasers of the Units for at least the period during which a prospectus relating to the Units is required to be delivered under the Act; (ii) it shall disclose the same information as the paper prospectus and prospectus filed pursuant to EDGAR, except to the extent that graphic and image material cannot be disseminated electronically, in which case such graphic and image material shall be replaced in the electronic prospectus with a fair and accurate narrative description or tabular representation of such material, as appropriate; and (iii) it shall be in or convertible into a paper format or an electronic format, satisfactory to the Representative, that will allow recipients thereof to store and have continuously ready access to the prospectus at any future time, without charge to such recipients (other than any fee charged for subscription to the Internet as a whole and for on-line time).

3.24 Unit Private Placement. No later than one (1) Business Day prior to the date of effectiveness of the Registration Statement, the Company shall have deposited \$5,750,000, which will represent the proceeds from the Unit Private Placement in the Trust Account and shall provide the Representative with evidence of the same. The Unit Private Placement shall be effective as of the Closing Date. On or prior to each Option Closing Date, the Company shall deposit the proceeds from the Unit Private Placement related to the Option Units to be issued upon such Option Closing Date in the Trust Account and shall provide the Representative with evidence of the same (such Unit Private Placement made by the Sponsor shall be effective as of such Option Closing Date).

3.25 Future Financings. The Company agrees that neither it, nor any successor or subsidiary of the Company, will consummate any public or private equity or debt financing prior to the consummation of a Business Combination, unless all investors in such financing expressly waive, in writing, any rights in or claims against the Trust Account.

3.26 Amendments to Agreements. The Company shall not amend, modify or otherwise change the Warrant Agreement, the Trust Agreement, the Registration Rights Agreement, Private Placement Units Purchase Agreement, the Forward Purchase Contract, the Insider Letter, the Services Agreement or the Business Combination Marketing Agreement without the prior written consent of the Representative, which will not be unreasonably withheld. The Trust Agreement shall provide that the trustee is required to obtain a joint written instruction signed by both the Company and the Representative with respect to the transfer of the funds held in the Trust Account from the Trust Account, prior to commencing any liquidation of the assets of the Trust Account in connection with the consummation of any Business Combination, and such provision of the Trust Agreement shall not be permitted to be amended without the prior written consent of the Representative.

3.27 The NYSE. Until the consummation of a Business Combination, the Company will use its commercially reasonable efforts to maintain the listing of the Public Securities on the NYSE or a national securities exchange acceptable to the Representative.

3.28 Reservation of Shares. The Company will reserve and keep available that maximum number of its authorized but unissued securities which are issuable upon (1) exercise of the Warrants included in the Units, the Placement Units and the Forward Purchase Units outstanding from time to time and (2) the closing of the Forward Private Placement.

3.29 Notice of Disqualification Events. The Company will notify the Representative in writing, prior to the Closing Date, of (i) any Disqualification Event relating to any Company Covered Person and (ii) any event that would, with the passage of time, become a Disqualification Event relating to any Company Covered Person.

3.30 Disqualification of S-1. Until the earlier of seven years from the date hereof and the Warrants have either expired and are no longer exercisable or have all been exercised, the Company will not take any action or actions that prevent or disqualify the Company's use of Form S-1 or S-3 (or other appropriate form) for the registration of the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants under the Act.

4. Conditions of Underwriters' Obligations. The obligations of the Underwriters to purchase and pay for the Units, as provided herein, shall be subject to the continuing accuracy of the representations and warranties of the Company as of the date hereof and as of each of the Closing Date and the Option Closing Date, if any, to the accuracy of the statements of officers of the Company made pursuant to the provisions hereof and to the performance by the Company of its obligations hereunder and to the following conditions:

#### 4.1 Regulatory Matters.

4.1.1 Effectiveness of Registration Statement. The Registration Statement shall have become effective not later than 4:00 p.m., New York time, on the date of this Agreement or such later date and time as shall be consented to in writing by the Representative, and, at each of the Closing Date and the Option Closing Date, no stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement shall have been issued and no proceedings for the purpose shall have been instituted or shall be pending or contemplated by the Commission and any request on the part of the Commission for additional information shall have been complied with to the reasonable satisfaction of the Representative.

4.1.2 FINRA Clearance. By the Effective Date, the Underwriters shall have received clearance from FINRA as to the amount of compensation allowable or payable to the Underwriters as described in the Registration Statement.

4.1.3 No Blue Sky Stop Orders. No order suspending the sale of the Units in any jurisdiction designated by the Underwriters pursuant to Section 3.5 hereof shall have been issued on either of the Closing Date or the Option Closing Date, and no proceedings for that purpose shall have been instituted or, to the Company's knowledge, shall be contemplated.

4.1.4 No Commission Stop Order. At the Closing Date and each Option Closing Date, the Commission has not issued any order or threatened to issue any order preventing or suspending the use of any Preliminary Prospectus, the Prospectus or any part thereof, and has not instituted or, to the Company's knowledge, assuming reasonable inquiry, threatened to institute any proceedings with respect to such an order.

4.1.5 The NYSE. The Public Securities shall have been approved for listing on the NYSE, subject to official notice of issuance and evidence of satisfactory distribution, satisfactory evidence of which shall have been provided to the Representative.

#### 4.2 Company Counsel Matters.

4.2.1 Closing Date and Option Closing Date Opinions of Counsel. On the Closing Date and the Option Closing Date, if any, the Representative shall have received the favorable opinion and negative assurance statement of Winston & Strawn LLP, dated the Closing Date or the Option Closing Date, as the case may be, addressed to the Representative as representative for the several Underwriters and in form and substance satisfactory to the Representative.

4.2.2 Reliance. In rendering such opinion, such counsel may rely as to matters of fact, to the extent they deem proper, on certificates or other written statements of officers of the Company and officers of departments of various jurisdictions having custody of documents respecting the corporate existence or good standing of the Company, provided that copies of any such statements or certificates shall be delivered to the Representative's counsel if requested. The opinion of counsel for the Company shall include a statement to the effect that it may be relied upon by counsel for the Underwriters in its opinion delivered to the Underwriters.

4.3 Comfort Letter. At the time this Agreement is executed, and at the Closing Date and Option Closing Date, if any, the Representative shall have received a letter, addressed to the Representative as representative for the several Underwriters and in form and substance satisfactory in all respects (including the non-material nature of the changes or decreases, if any, referred to in clause (iii) below) to the Representative from Marcum dated, respectively, as of the date of this Agreement and as of the Closing Date and Option Closing Date, if any:

(i) Confirming that they are independent accountants with respect to the Company within the meaning of the Act and the applicable Regulations and that they have not, during the periods covered by the financial statements included in the Registration Statement, Preliminary Prospectus, Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus, provided to the Company any non-audit services, as such term is used in Section 10A(g) of the Exchange Act;

(ii) Stating that in their opinion the financial statements of the Company included in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the published Regulations thereunder;

(iii) Stating that, on the basis of their review, which included a reading of the latest available unaudited interim financial statements of the Company (with an indication of the date of the latest available unaudited interim financial statements), a reading of the latest available minutes of the stockholders and Board of Directors and the various committees of the Board of Directors, consultations with officers and other employees of the Company responsible for financial and accounting matters and other specified procedures and inquiries, nothing has come to their attention that would lead them to believe that (a) the unaudited financial statements of the Company included in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus do not comply as to form in all material respects with the applicable accounting requirements of the Act and the Regulations or are not fairly presented in conformity with GAAP applied on a basis substantially consistent with that of the audited financial statements of the Company included in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus, or (b) at a date not later than five days prior to the Effective Date, Closing Date or Option Closing Date, as the case may be, there was any change in the capital stock or long-term debt of the Company, or any decrease in the stockholders' equity of the Company as compared with amounts shown in the February 14, 2020 balance sheet included in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus, other than as set forth in or contemplated by the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus or, if there was any decrease, setting forth the amount of such decrease, and (c) during the period from February 14, 2020 to a specified date not later than five days prior to the Effective Date, Closing Date or Option Closing Date, as the case may be, there was any decrease in revenues, net earnings or net earnings per share of common stock of the Company, in each case as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding year and as compared with the corresponding period in the preceding quarter, other than as set forth in or contemplated by the Registration Statement the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus, or, if there was any such decrease, setting forth the amount of such decrease;

(iv) Setting forth, at a date not later than five days prior to the Effective Date, the amount of liabilities of the Company (including a break-down of commercial papers and notes payable to banks);

(v) Stating that they have compared specific dollar amounts, numbers of shares, percentages of revenues and earnings, statements and other financial information pertaining to the Company set forth in the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus in each case to the extent that such amounts, numbers, percentages, statements and information may be derived from the general accounting records, including work sheets, of the Company and excluding any questions requiring an interpretation by legal counsel, with the results obtained from the application of specified readings, inquiries and other appropriate procedures (which procedures do not constitute an examination in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards) set forth in the letter and found them to be in agreement;



(vi) Stating that they have not, since the Company's incorporation, brought to the attention of the Company's management any reportable condition related to internal structure, design or operation as defined in the Statement on Auditing Standards No. 60 "Communication of Internal Control Structure Related Matters Noted in an Audit," in the Company's internal controls; and

(vii) Statements as to such other matters incident to the transaction contemplated hereby as the Representative may reasonably request, including:

(1) that Marcum is registered with the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board;

(2) that Marcum has sufficient assets and insurance to pay for any liability incurred by it relating to providing the letter;

and

(3) that Marcum is not insolvent.

#### 4.4 Officers' Certificates.

4.4.1 Officers' Certificate. At each of the Closing Date and the Option Closing Date, if any, the Representative shall have received a certificate of the Company signed by the Chairman of the Board or the Chief Executive Officer and the Secretary or Assistant Secretary of the Company (in their capacities as such), dated the Closing Date or the Option Closing Date, as the case may be, respectively, to the effect that the Company has performed all covenants and complied with all conditions required by this Agreement to be performed or complied with by the Company prior to and as of the Closing Date, or the Option Closing Date, as the case may be, and that the conditions set forth in Section 3.30 hereof have been satisfied as of such date and that, as of Closing Date and the Option Closing Date, as the case may be, the representations and warranties of the Company set forth in Section 2 hereof are true and correct. In addition, the Representative will have received such other and further certificates of officers of the Company (in their capacities as such) as the Representative may reasonably request.

4.4.2 Secretary's Certificate. At each of the Closing Date and the Option Closing Date, if any, the Representative shall have received a certificate of the Company signed by the Secretary or Assistant Secretary of the Company, dated the Closing Date or the Option Date, as the case may be, respectively, certifying (i) that the Charter Documents are true and complete, have not been modified and are in full force and effect, (ii) that the resolutions of the Company's Board of Directors relating to the public offering contemplated by this Agreement are in full force and effect and have not been modified, (iii) as to the accuracy and completeness of all correspondence between the Company or its counsel and the Commission, (iv) as to the accuracy and completeness of all correspondence between the Company or its counsel and the NYSE and (v) as to the incumbency of the officers of the Company. The documents referred to in such certificate shall be attached to such certificate.

4.5 No Material Changes. Prior to and on each of the Closing Date and the Option Closing Date, if any, (i) there shall have been no material adverse change or development involving a prospective material adverse change in the condition or prospects or the business activities, financial or otherwise, of the Company from the latest dates as of which such condition is set forth in the Registration Statement and the IPO Prospectus, (ii) no action suit or proceeding, at law or in equity, shall have been pending or threatened against the Company or any Insider before or by any court or federal, foreign or state commission, board or other administrative agency wherein an unfavorable decision, ruling or finding may materially adversely affect the business, operations, or financial condition or income of the Company, except as set forth in the Registration Statement and the IPO Prospectus, (iii) no stop order shall have been issued under the Act and no proceedings therefor shall have been initiated or, to the Company's knowledge, assuming reasonable inquiry, threatened by the Commission, and (iv) the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the IPO Prospectus and any amendments or supplements thereto shall contain all material statements which are required to be stated therein in accordance with the Act and the Regulations and shall conform in all material respects to the requirements of the Act and the Regulations, and neither the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus nor the IPO Prospectus nor any amendment or supplement thereto shall contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading.

4.6 Delivery of Agreements. On the Effective Date, the Company shall have delivered to the Representative executed copies of the Trust Agreement, the Warrant Agreement, the Private Placement Units Purchase Agreement, the Forward Purchase Contract, the Registration Rights Agreement, the Insider Letter, the Services Agreement and the Business Combination Marketing Agreement.

4.7 Unit Private Placement. On the Closing Date and the Option Closing Date, the Private Placement shall have been completed in accordance with the Private Placement Units Purchase Agreement and Section 1.3.2 and Section 3.24 of this Agreement.

## 5. Indemnification.

### 5.1 Indemnification of the Underwriters.

5.1.1 General. Subject to the conditions set forth below, the Company agrees to indemnify and hold harmless each of the Underwriters and their affiliates, and each dealer selected by the Underwriters that participates in the offer and sale of the Public Securities (each a “**Selected Dealer**”) and each of their respective directors, officers, agents, partners, members and employees and each person, if any, who controls within the meaning of Section 15 of the Act or Section 20(a) of the Exchange Act (“**Controlling Person**”) any Underwriter, against any and all loss, liability, claim, damage and expense whatsoever as incurred to which they or any of them may become subject under the Act, the Exchange Act or any other statute or at common law or otherwise or under the laws of foreign countries, arising out of or based upon any untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact contained in (i) the Registration Statement, any Preliminary Prospectus including the Sale Preliminary Prospectus or the Prospectus (as from time to time each may be amended and supplemented, including, but not limited to any information deemed to be a part thereof pursuant to Rule 430A, Rule 430B or Rule 430C); (ii) any materials or information provided to investors by, or with the approval of, the Company in connection with the marketing of the offering of the Securities, including any “road show” or investor presentations made to investors by the Company (whether in person or electronically); (iii) any application or other document or written communication (in this Section 5, collectively called “application”) executed by the Company or based upon written information furnished by the Company in any jurisdiction in order to qualify the Public Securities under the securities laws thereof or filed with the Commission, any foreign or state securities commission or agency, the NYSE, the NYSE American, the Nasdaq Global Select Market, the Nasdaq Global Market, the Nasdaq Capital Market, any other securities exchange or the OTCBB or (iv) any post-effective amendments to the Registration Statement or Prospectus or new Registration Statement or Prospectus filed by the Company with the Commission, any state securities commission or agency, OTCBB, Nasdaq, the NYSE or any other securities exchange, or the omission or alleged omission from the Registration Statement, any Preliminary Prospectus including the Sale Preliminary Prospectus or the Prospectus or subsequent filing by the Company under clause (iv) of a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading, and to reimburse each Underwriter, its affiliates, each Selected Dealer and each of their respective directors, officers, partners, agents, members and employees and each Controlling Person, if any, for any and all expenses (including the fees and disbursements of counsel chosen by the Underwriters) as such expenses are incurred by each Underwriter, its affiliates, such Selected Dealer or each of their respective directors, officers, partners, agents, members and employees or such Controlling Person in connection with investigating, defending, settling, compromising or paying any such loss, claim, damage, liability, expense or action, whether or not any such person is a party to any such claim or action and including any and all reasonable legal and other expenses incurred in giving testimony or furnishing documents in response to a subpoena or otherwise; provided however, that the foregoing agreement shall not apply to any loss, claim, damage, liability or expenses to the extent, but only to the extent, arising out of or based upon (x) any untrue statement or alleged untrue statement or omission or alleged omission made in reliance upon and in conformity with written information furnished to the Company with respect to an Underwriter by or on behalf of such Underwriter expressly for use in the Registration Statement, any Preliminary Prospectus including the Sale Preliminary Prospectus or the Prospectus, or any amendment or supplement thereof, or in any application, as the case may be, or the jurisdictions listed in the section entitled “Notices to Non-United States Investors” in the Registration Statement, any Preliminary Prospectus including the Sale Preliminary Prospectus or the Prospectus, or any amendment or supplement thereof, as the case may be; (y) the use of the Sale Preliminary Prospectus or Prospectus in violation of any stop order or other notice received by the Underwriters indicating the then current Prospectus is not to be used in connection with the sale of any Securities or (z) the Underwriters otherwise failing in their prospectus delivery obligations. The Company agrees promptly to notify the Representative of the commencement of any litigation or proceedings against the Company or any of its officers, directors or Controlling Persons in connection with the issue and sale of the Securities or in connection with the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus or the Prospectus. The indemnity agreement set forth in this Section 5.1 shall be in addition to any liabilities that the Company may otherwise have.

5.1.2 Indemnification of the QIU. Without limitation and in addition to its obligation under the other subsections of this Section 5, the Company agrees to indemnify and hold harmless Chardan, in its capacity as the QIU, its directors, officers, agents, partners, members and employees and each Controlling Person from and against any and all loss, liability, claim, damage and expense, as incurred, arising out of or based upon the QIU's acting as a "qualified independent underwriter" (within the meaning of Rule 5121 of the Rules of FINRA) in connection with the Offering contemplated by this Agreement, and agrees to reimburse each such indemnified person for any legal or other expense reasonably incurred by them in connection with investigating, defending, settling, compromising or paying any such loss, claim, damage, liability, expense or action; *provided, however*, that the Company shall not be liable in any such case to the extent that any such loss, claim, damage, liability or expense results from the gross negligence or willful misconduct of the QIU. Notwithstanding the indemnification set forth in this Section 5.1.2, Chardan will undertake liability under Section 11 of the Exchange Act for acting as a qualified independent underwriter in connection with this Offering in compliance with FINRA Rule 5121(f)(12)(C).

5.2 Indemnification of the Company. Each Underwriter, severally and not jointly, agrees to indemnify and hold harmless the Company, its directors and its officers who signed the Registration Statement and each Controlling Person of the Company, if any, against any and all loss, liability, claim, damage and expense described in the foregoing indemnity from the Company to the Underwriters, as incurred, but only with respect to untrue statements or omissions, or alleged untrue statements or omissions made in the Registration Statement, any Preliminary Prospectus including the Sale Preliminary Prospectus, the Prospectus or any amendment or supplement thereto or in any application, in reliance upon, and in strict conformity with, written information furnished to the Company with respect to, such Underwriter by or on behalf of such Underwriter expressly for use in, the Registration Statement, any Preliminary Prospectus including the Sale Preliminary Prospectus, the Prospectus or any amendment or supplement thereto, or in any such application, and to reimburse the Company or any such director, officer or Controlling Person, if any, for any and all expenses as such expenses are reasonably incurred, in connection with investigating, defending, settling, compromising or paying any such loss, claim, damage, liability, expense or action; provided, however, that the obligation of each Underwriter to indemnify the Company (including any director, officer or Controlling Person thereof), shall be limited to the amount of the commissions actually received by such Underwriter pursuant to this Agreement in connection with the Public Securities underwritten by it. The Company hereby acknowledges that the only information that the Underwriters have furnished to the Company expressly for use in the Registration Statement, the Preliminary Prospectus including the Sale Preliminary Prospectus, the Prospectus or any amendment or supplement thereto, shall consist solely of the Underwriters' Information. The indemnity agreement set forth in this Section 5.2 shall be in addition to any liabilities that the Underwriters may otherwise have.

5.3 Notifications and Other Indemnification Procedures. Promptly after receipt by an indemnified party under this Section 5 of notice of the commencement of any action, such indemnified party will, if a claim in respect thereof is to be made against an indemnifying party under this Section 5, notify the indemnifying party in writing of the commencement thereof, but the failure to so notify the indemnifying party (i) will not relieve it from liability under paragraph 5.1 or 5.2 above unless and to the extent it did not otherwise learn of such action and such failure results in the forfeiture by the indemnifying party of substantial rights and defenses and (ii) will not, in any event, relieve the indemnifying party from any obligations to any indemnified party other than the indemnification obligation provided in paragraph 5.1 or 5.2 above. In case any such action is brought against any indemnified party and such indemnified party seeks or intends to seek indemnity from an indemnifying party, the indemnifying party will be entitled to participate in, and, to the extent that it shall elect, jointly with all other indemnifying parties similarly notified, by written notice delivered to the indemnified party promptly after receiving the aforesaid notice from such indemnified party, to assume the defense thereof with counsel satisfactory to such indemnified party; provided, however, (a) if the defendants in any such action include both the indemnified party and the indemnifying party and the indemnified party shall have reasonably concluded that a conflict may arise between the positions of the indemnifying party and the indemnified party in conducting the defense of any such action or that there may be legal defenses available to it and/or other indemnified parties that are different from or additional to those available to the indemnifying party, or (b) the indemnifying party agrees to such separate representation, then, in each case, the indemnified party or parties shall have the right to select separate counsel to assume such legal defenses and to otherwise participate in the defense of such action on behalf of such indemnified party or parties. Upon receipt of notice from the indemnifying party to such indemnified party of such indemnifying party's election so to assume the defense of such action and approval by the indemnified party of counsel, the indemnifying party will not be liable to such indemnified party under this Section 5 for any legal expenses subsequently incurred by such indemnified party in connection with the defense thereof unless (i) the indemnified party shall have employed separate counsel in accordance with the provision to the preceding sentence reasonably approved by the indemnifying party (or by any Underwriter in the case of Section 5.2), representing the indemnified parties who are parties to such action), (ii) the indemnifying party shall not have employed counsel satisfactory to the indemnified party to represent the indemnified party within a reasonable time after notice of commencement of the action, or (iii) the indemnifying party is not defending such action in good faith, in each of which cases the fees and expenses of counsel (plus local counsel) shall be at the expense of the indemnifying party.

5.4 Settlements. The indemnifying party under this Section 5 shall not be liable for any settlement of any proceeding effected without its written consent, which shall not be withheld, delayed or conditioned unreasonably, but if settled with such consent or if there is a final judgment for the plaintiff, the indemnifying party agrees to indemnify the indemnified party against any loss, claim, damage, liability or expense by reason of such settlement or judgment. Notwithstanding the foregoing sentence, if at any time an indemnified party shall have requested an indemnifying party to reimburse the indemnified party for fees and expenses of counsel as contemplated by Section 5.3 hereof, the indemnifying party agrees that it shall be liable for any settlement of any proceeding effected without its written consent if (i) such settlement is entered into more than 30 days after receipt by such indemnifying party of the aforesaid request and (ii) such indemnifying party shall not have reimbursed the indemnified party in accordance with such request prior to the date of such settlement. No indemnifying party shall, without the prior written consent of the indemnified party, effect any settlement, compromise or consent to the entry of judgment in any pending or threatened action, suit or proceeding in respect of which any indemnified party is or could have been a party and indemnity was or could have been sought hereunder by such indemnified party, unless such settlement, compromise or consent (x) includes an unconditional written release of such indemnified party from all liability on claims that are the subject matter of such action, suit or proceeding and (y) does not include a statement as to or an admission of fault, culpability or a failure to act, by or on behalf of any indemnified party.

## 5.5 Contribution.

5.5.1 Contribution Rights. In order to provide for just and equitable contribution under the Act in any case in which (i) any person entitled to indemnification under this Section 5 makes a claim for indemnification pursuant hereto but it is judicially determined (by the entry of a final judgment or decree by a court of competent jurisdiction and the expiration of time to appeal or the denial of the last right of appeal) that such indemnification may not be enforced in such case notwithstanding the fact that this Section 5 provides for indemnification in such case, or (ii) contribution under the Act, the Exchange Act or otherwise may be required on the part of any such person in circumstances for which indemnification is provided under this Section 5, then, and in each such case, each Underwriter shall contribute to the aggregate losses, liabilities, claims, damages and expenses of the nature contemplated by said indemnity agreement incurred by the Company and each Underwriter, as incurred, in such proportion as is represented by the percentage of the underwriting discount appearing on the cover page of the IPO Prospectus as compared to the offering price per Unit and the Company shall be responsible for the balance; provided, that, no person guilty of a fraudulent misrepresentation (within the meaning of Section 11(f) of the Act) with respect to any action or claim shall be entitled to contribution from any person who was not guilty of fraudulent misrepresentation with respect to such claim or action. If the allocation provided by the immediately preceding sentence is unavailable for any reason, the Company and the Underwriters shall contribute in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect the relative fault of the Company and the Underwriters in connection with the actions or omissions which resulted in such loss, claim, damage, liability or action, as well as any other relevant equitable considerations. The relative fault of the Company and the Underwriters shall be determined by reference to, among other things, whether the untrue or alleged untrue statement of a material fact or the omission or alleged omission to state a material fact relates to information furnished by the Company or the Underwriters and the parties' relative intent, knowledge, access to information and opportunity to correct or prevent such statement or omission. Notwithstanding the provisions of this Section 5.5.1, no Underwriter shall be required to contribute any amount in excess of the amount of the underwriting commissions actually received by such Underwriter pursuant to this Agreement in connection with the Public Securities underwritten by it and distributed to the public. For purposes of this Section, each director, officer, agent, partner, member, employee and Controlling Person of an Underwriter or the Company, as applicable, shall have the same rights to contribution as such Underwriter or the Company, as applicable.

5.5.2 Contribution Procedure. Within fifteen days after receipt by any party to this Agreement (or its representative) of notice of the commencement of any action, suit or proceeding, such party will, if a claim for contribution in respect thereof is to be made against another party (“**Contributing Party**”), notify the Contributing Party of the commencement thereof, but the omission to so notify the Contributing Party will not relieve it from any liability which it may have to any other party other than for contribution hereunder. In case any such action, suit or proceeding is brought against any party, and such party notifies a Contributing Party or its representative of the commencement thereof within the aforesaid fifteen days, the Contributing Party will be entitled to participate therein with the notifying party and any other Contributing Party similarly notified. Any such Contributing Party shall not be liable to any party seeking contribution on account of any settlement of any claim, action or proceeding effected by such party seeking contribution without the written consent of such Contributing Party. The contribution provisions contained in this Section are intended to supersede, to the extent permitted by law, any right to contribution under the Act, the Exchange Act or otherwise available. The Underwriters' obligations to contribute pursuant to this Section 5.5 are several and not joint.

## 6. Default by an Underwriter.

6.1 Default Not Exceeding 10% of Firm Units. If any Underwriter or Underwriters shall default in its or their obligations to purchase the Firm Units and if the number of the Firm Units with respect to which such default relates does not exceed in the aggregate 10% of the number of Firm Units that all Underwriters have agreed to purchase hereunder, then such Firm Units to which the default relates shall be purchased by the non-defaulting Underwriters in proportion to their respective commitments hereunder.

6.2 Default Exceeding 10% of Firm Units. In the event that the default addressed in Section 6.1 above relates to more than 10% of the Firm Units, the Representative may, in its discretion, arrange for it or for another party or parties to purchase such Firm Units to which such default relates on the terms contained herein. If within one (1) Business Day after such default relating to more than 10% of the Firm Units the Representative does not arrange for the purchase of such Firm Units, then the Company shall be entitled to a further period of one (1) Business Day within which to procure another party or parties satisfactory to the Representative to purchase said Firm Units on such terms. In the event that neither the Representative nor the Company arrange for the purchase of the Firm Units to which a default relates as provided in this Section 6, this Agreement may be terminated by the Representative or the Company without liability on the part of the Company (except as provided in Sections 3.9, 5 and 9.3 hereof) or the several Underwriters (except as provided in Section 5 hereof); provided that nothing herein shall relieve a defaulting Underwriter of its liability, if any, to the other several Underwriters and to the Company for damages occasioned by its default hereunder.

6.3 Postponement of Closing Date. In the event that the Firm Units to which the default relates are to be purchased by the non-defaulting Underwriters, or are to be purchased by another party or parties as aforesaid, the Representative or the Company shall have the right to postpone the Closing Date for a reasonable period, but not in any event exceeding five (5) Business Days, in order to effect whatever changes may thereby be made necessary in the Registration Statement and/or the Prospectus, as the case may be, or in any other documents and arrangements, and the Company agrees to file promptly any amendment to, or to supplement, the Registration Statement and/or the Prospectus, as the case may be, that in the reasonable opinion of counsel for the Underwriters may thereby be made necessary. The term “ **Underwriter** ” as used in this Agreement shall include any party substituted under this Section 6 with like effect as if it had originally been a party to this Agreement with respect to such securities.

## 7. Additional Covenants.

7.1 Additional Shares or Options. The Company hereby agrees that until the consummation of a Business Combination, it shall not issue any shares of Common Stock or any options or other securities convertible into shares of Common Stock, or any preferred shares or other securities of the Company which participate in any manner in the Trust Account or which vote as a class with the shares of Common Stock on a proposed Business Combination.

7.2 Trust Account Waiver Acknowledgments. The Company hereby agrees that it will use its commercially reasonable efforts prior to commencing its due diligence investigation of any prospective Target Business or prior to obtaining the services of any vendor to have such Target Business and/or vendor acknowledge in writing whether through a letter of intent, memorandum of understanding or other similar document (and subsequently acknowledges the same in any definitive document replacing any of the foregoing), that (a) it has read the IPO Prospectus and understands that the Company has established the Trust Account, initially in an amount of \$200,000,000 (without giving effect to any exercise of the Over-allotment Option) for the benefit of the Public Stockholders and that, except for a portion of the interest earned on the amounts held in the Trust Account, the Company may disburse monies from the Trust Account only (i) to the Public Stockholders in the event they elect to redeem their IPO Shares (as defined below) in connection with the consummation of a Business Combination, (ii) to the Public Stockholders if the Company fails to consummate a Business Combination within the time period set forth in the Charter Documents, or (iii) to the Company after or concurrently with the consummation of a Business Combination and (b) for and in consideration of the Company (i) agreeing to evaluate such Target Business for purposes of consummating a Business Combination with it or (ii) agreeing to engage the services of the vendor, as the case may be, such Target Business or vendor agrees that it does not have any right, title, interest or claim of any kind in or to any monies in the Trust Account (“**Claim**”) and waives any Claim it may have in the future as a result of, or arising out of, any negotiations, contracts or agreements with the Company and will not seek recourse against the Trust Account for any reason whatsoever. The Company may forego obtaining such waivers after performing an analysis of the alternatives available to the Company and determining that the relevant third party’s engagement would be significantly more beneficial to the Company than any alternative. The term “**IPO Shares**” means the shares of Common Stock contained in the Public Securities.

7.3 Insider Letter. The Company shall not take any action or omit to take any action which would cause a breach of the Insider Letter and will not allow any amendments to, or waivers of, the Insider Letter without the prior written consent of the Representative, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld.

7.4 Charter Documents. The Company shall not take any action or omit to take any action that would cause the Company to be in breach or violation of any of its Charter Documents.

7.5 Acquisition/Liquidation Procedure. The Company agrees that it will comply with its Charter Documents in connection with the consummation of a Business Combination or the failure to consummate a Business Combination within 24 months from the Closing Date. The Company agrees that it will not propose any amendment to any of its Charter Documents that would affect the substance or timing of the Company’s obligations as described in its Charter Documents with respect to the redemption rights of Public Stockholders.

7.6 Rule 419. The Company agrees that it will use its commercially reasonable efforts to prevent the Company from becoming subject to Rule 419 under the Act prior to the consummation of any Business Combination, including but not limited to using its best efforts to prevent any of the Company’s outstanding securities from being deemed to be a “penny stock” as defined in Rule 3a-51-1 under the Exchange Act during such period.

7.7 Tender Offer Documents, Proxy Materials and Other Information. The Company shall provide to the Representative or its counsel (if so instructed by the Representative) with a reasonable number of copies of all tender offer documents or proxy information and all related material filed with the Commission in connection with a Business Combination concurrently with such filing with the Commission. Documents filed with the Commission pursuant to its EDGAR system shall be deemed to have been provided to the Representative pursuant to this Section. In addition, the Company shall furnish any other state in which its initial public offering was registered, such information as may be requested by such state.

7.8 Emerging Growth Company. The Company shall promptly notify the Representative if the Company ceases to be an Emerging Growth Company at any time prior to the completion of the distribution of the Registered Securities within the meaning of the Act or during the Market Making Period.

7.9 Target Net Assets. The Company agrees that the Target Business(es) that it acquires must have an aggregate fair market value equal to at least 80% of the value of the assets held in the Trust Account at the time of signing the definitive agreement for the Business Combination with such Target Business (excluding taxes payable). The fair market value of such business must be determined by the Board of Directors based upon standards generally accepted by the financial community, such as actual and potential sales, earnings, cash flow and book value. If the Board of Directors is not able to independently determine that the Target Business meets such fair market value requirement, the Company will obtain an opinion from an independent investment banking firm or independent accounting firm, reasonably acceptable to the Representative with respect to the satisfaction of such criteria. The Company is not required to obtain an opinion from an investment banking firm as to the fair market value if the Board of Directors independently determines that the Target Business does have sufficient fair market value, provided that the Target Business is not affiliated with an Insider.

8. Representations and Agreements to Survive Delivery. Except as the context otherwise requires, all representations, warranties and agreements contained in this Agreement shall be deemed to be representations, warranties and agreements as of the Closing Date or the Option Closing Date, if any, and such representations, warranties and agreements of the Underwriters and the Company, including the indemnity agreements contained in Section 5 hereof, shall remain operative and in full force and effect regardless of any investigation made by or on behalf of the Underwriters, the Company or any Controlling Person, and shall survive termination of this Agreement or the issuance and delivery of the Public Securities to the Underwriters until the earlier of the expiration of any applicable statute of limitations and the seventh (7th) anniversary of the later of the Closing Date and the Option Closing Date, if any, at which time the representations, warranties and agreements shall terminate and be of no further force and effect.

9. Effective Date of This Agreement and Termination Thereof.

9.1 Effective Date. This Agreement shall become effective on the Effective Date at the time the Registration Statement is declared effective by the Commission.

9.2 Termination. The Representative shall have the right to terminate this Agreement at any time prior to the Closing Date, (i) if any domestic or international event or act or occurrence has materially disrupted, or in the Representative's opinion will in the immediate future materially disrupt, general securities markets in the United States; or (ii) if trading on the NYSE, the NYSE American, the Nasdaq Global Select Market, the Nasdaq Global Market, or the Nasdaq Capital Market or quoted on the OTCBB shall have been suspended, or minimum or maximum prices for trading shall have been fixed, or maximum ranges for prices for securities shall have been fixed, or maximum ranges for prices for securities shall have been required by FINRA or by order of the Commission or any other government authority having jurisdiction, or (iii) if the United States shall have become involved in a new war or an increase in existing major hostilities, or (iv) if a banking moratorium has been declared by a New York State or Federal authority, or (v) if a moratorium on foreign exchange trading has been declared which materially adversely impacts the United States securities market, or (vi) if the Company shall have sustained a material loss by fire, flood, accident, hurricane, earthquake, theft, sabotage or other calamity (including, without limitation, a calamity relating to a public health matter or natural disaster) or malicious act which, whether or not such loss shall have been insured, will, in the Representative's sole opinion, make it inadvisable to proceed with the delivery of the Units, or (vii) if the Company is in material breach of any of its representations, warranties or covenants hereunder, or (viii) if the Representative shall have become aware after the date hereof of such a material adverse change in the conditions of the Company, or such adverse material change in general market conditions, including without limitation as a result of terrorist activities or any other calamity (including, without limitation, a calamity relating to a public health matter or natural disaster) or crisis either within or outside the United States after the date hereof, or an increase in any of the foregoing, as in the Representative's sole judgment would make it impracticable to proceed with the Offering, sale and/or delivery of the Units or to enforce contracts made by the Underwriters for the sale of the Public Securities.



9.3 Expenses. In the event that this Agreement shall not be carried out for any reason whatsoever, within the time specified herein or any extensions thereof pursuant to the terms herein, (i) the obligations of the Company to pay the out of pocket expenses related to the transactions contemplated herein shall be governed by Section 3.9 hereof and (ii) the Company shall reimburse the Representative for any costs and expenses incurred in connection with enforcing any provisions of this Agreement.

9.4 Indemnification. Notwithstanding any contrary provision contained in this Agreement, any election hereunder or any termination of this Agreement, and whether or not this Agreement is otherwise carried out, the provisions of Section 5 shall not be in any way affected by such election or termination or failure to carry out the terms of this Agreement or any part hereof.

10. Miscellaneous.

10.1 Notices. All communications hereunder shall be in writing and shall be mailed, hand delivered or delivered by electronic transmission and confirmed to the parties hereto as follows:

If to the Representative:

B. Riley FBR, Inc.  
499 Park Avenue  
New York, New York 10022  
Attn: General Counsel  
E-mail: [aforman@brileyfin.com](mailto:aforman@brileyfin.com)

Copy (which copy shall not constitute notice) to:

Ellenoff Grossman & Schole LLP  
1345 Avenue of the Americas  
New York, New York 10105  
Attn: Stuart Neuhauser, Esq.  
E-mail: [sneuhauser@egsllp.com](mailto:sneuhauser@egsllp.com)

If to the Company:

B. Riley Principal Merger Corp  
299 Park Avenue, 21<sup>st</sup> Floor  
New York, NY 10171  
Attn: Daniel Shribman  
E-mail: [dshribman@brileyfin.com](mailto:dshribman@brileyfin.com)

Copy (which copy shall not constitute notice) to:

Winston & Strawn LLP  
200 Park Avenue  
New York, New York 10166  
Attn: Joel L. Rubinstein, Esq.  
E-mail: [JRubinstein@winston.com](mailto:JRubinstein@winston.com)

Each party to this Agreement may change such address for notices by sending to the parties to this Agreement written notice of a new address for such purpose. Each such notice or other communication shall be deemed given (i) when delivered personally or by electronic transmission on or before 4:30 p.m., New York City time, on a Business Day or, if such day is not a Business Day, on the next succeeding Business Day, (ii) on the next Business Day after timely delivery to a nationally-recognized overnight courier and (iii) on the Business Day actually received if deposited in the U.S. mail (certified or registered mail, return receipt requested, postage prepaid).

10.2 Headings. The headings contained herein are for the sole purpose of convenience of reference, and shall not in any way limit or affect the meaning or interpretation of any of the terms or provisions of this Agreement.

10.3 Amendment. This Agreement may only be amended by a written instrument executed by each of the parties hereto.

10.4 Entire Agreement. This Agreement (together with the other agreements and documents being delivered pursuant to or in connection with this Agreement) constitute the entire agreement of the parties hereto with respect to the subject matter hereof and thereof, and supersede all prior agreements and understandings of the parties, oral and written, with respect to the subject matter hereof.

10.5 Binding Effect. This Agreement shall inure solely to the benefit of and shall be binding upon the Representative, the Underwriters, the selected dealers engaged by the Underwriters, the Company and the Controlling Persons, directors, agents, partners, members, employees and officers referred to in Section 5 hereof, and their respective successors, legal representatives and assigns, and no other person shall have or be construed to have any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under or in respect of or by virtue of this Agreement or any provisions herein contained. The term "successors and assigns" shall not include a purchaser, in its capacity as such, of securities from the Underwriters.

10.6 Waiver of Immunity. To the extent that the Company may be entitled in any jurisdiction in which judicial proceedings may at any time be commenced hereunder, to claim for itself or its revenues or assets any immunity, including sovereign immunity, from suit, jurisdiction, attachment in aid of execution of a judgment or prior to a judgment, execution of a judgment or any other legal process with respect to its obligations hereunder and to the extent that in any such jurisdiction there may be attributed to the Company such an immunity (whether or not claimed), the Company hereby irrevocably agrees not to claim and irrevocably waives such immunity to the maximum extent permitted by law.

10.7 Submission to Jurisdiction. Each party irrevocably submits to the exclusive jurisdiction of any New York State or United States Federal court sitting in The City of New York, Borough of Manhattan, over any suit, action or proceeding arising out of or relating to this Agreement, the Registration Statement, the Sale Preliminary Prospectus and the Prospectus or the offering of the Securities. Each party irrevocably waives, to the fullest extent permitted by law, any objection that it may now or hereafter have to the laying of venue of any such suit, action or proceeding brought in such a court and any claim that any such suit, action or proceeding brought in such a court has been brought in an inconvenient forum. Any such process or summons to be served upon any party may be served by transmitting a copy thereof by registered or certified mail, return receipt requested, postage prepaid, addressed to it at the address set forth in Section 10.1 hereof. Such mailing shall be deemed personal service and shall be legal and binding upon any party in any action, proceeding or claim. Each party waives, to the fullest extent permitted by law, any other requirements of or objections to personal jurisdiction with respect thereto. Each party agrees that the other party shall be entitled to recover all of its reasonable attorneys' fees and expenses relating to any action or proceeding and/or incurred in connection with the preparation therefor if any of them is the prevailing party in such action or proceeding. EACH PARTY HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY AND ALL RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY IN ANY LEGAL PROCEEDING ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THIS AGREEMENT OR THE TRANSACTIONS CONTEMPLATED HEREBY.

10.8 Governing Law. This Agreement shall be governed by and construed and enforced in accordance with the laws of the State of New York, without regard to the principles of conflicts of laws thereof.

10.9 Execution in Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in one or more counterparts, and by the different parties hereto in separate counterparts, each of which shall be deemed to be an original, but all of which taken together shall constitute one and the same agreement, and shall become effective when one or more counterparts has been signed by each of the parties hereto and delivered to each of the other parties hereto. Delivery of a signed counterpart of this Agreement by facsimile or email/pdf transmission shall constitute valid and sufficient delivery thereof.

10.10 Waiver. The failure of any of the parties hereto to at any time enforce any of the provisions of this Agreement shall not be deemed or construed to be a waiver of any such provision, nor to in any way affect the validity of this Agreement or any provision hereof or the right of any of the parties hereto to thereafter enforce each and every provision of this Agreement. No waiver of any breach, non-compliance or non-fulfillment of any of the provisions of this Agreement shall be effective unless set forth in a written instrument executed by the party or parties against whom or which enforcement of such waiver is sought; and no waiver of any such breach, non-compliance or non-fulfillment shall be construed or deemed to be a waiver of any other or subsequent breach, non-compliance or non-fulfillment.

10.11 No Fiduciary Relationship. The Company acknowledges and agrees that (i) the purchase and sale of the Units pursuant to this Agreement is an arm's-length commercial transaction pursuant to a contractual relationship between the Company and the Underwriters, (ii) in connection therewith and with the process leading to such transaction, each Underwriter is acting solely as a principal and not the agent or fiduciary of the Company, (iii) the Underwriters have not assumed an advisory or fiduciary responsibility in favor of the Company with respect to the offering contemplated hereby or the process leading thereto (irrespective of whether the Underwriters have advised or are currently advising the Company on other matters) or any other obligation to the Company except the obligations expressly set forth in this Agreement, (iv) in no event do the parties intend that the Underwriters act or be responsible as a fiduciary to the Company, its management, stockholders, creditors or any other person in connection with any activity that the Underwriters may undertake or have undertaken in furtherance of the offering of the Company's securities, either before or after the date hereof and (v) the Company has consulted its own legal and financial advisors to the extent it deemed appropriate. The Underwriters hereby expressly disclaim any fiduciary or similar obligations to the Company, either in connection with the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or any matters leading up to such transactions, and the Company hereby confirms its understanding and agreement to that effect. The Company agrees that it will not claim that the Underwriters have rendered advisory services of any nature or respect, or owe a fiduciary or similar duty to the Company, in connection with such transaction or the process leading thereto. The Company and the Underwriters agree that they are each responsible for making their own independent judgment with respect to any such transactions, and that any opinions or views expressed by the Underwriters to the Company regarding such transactions, including but not limited to any opinions or views with respect to the price or market for the Company's securities, do not constitute advice or recommendations to the Company. The Company hereby waives and releases, to the fullest extent permitted by law, any claims that the Company may have against the Underwriters with respect to any breach or alleged breach of any fiduciary or similar duty to the Company in connection with the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or any matters leading up to such transactions.

*[ Remainder of page intentionally left blank ]*

If the foregoing correctly sets forth the understanding between the Underwriters and the Company, please so indicate in the space provided below for that purpose, whereupon this letter shall constitute a binding agreement between us.

Very truly yours,

B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP.

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Accepted on the date first above written.

B. RILEY FBR, INC., as  
Representative of the several Underwriters

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

CHARDAN CAPITAL MARKETS, LLC, as  
Qualified Independent Underwriter

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

---

SCHEDULE A

B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II

20,000,000 Units

<b>Underwriters</b>	<b>Number of Underwritten Securities to be Purchased</b>
B. Riley FBR, Inc.	20,000,000
Chardan Capital Markets, LLC	0
<b>Total</b>	<b>20,000,000</b>

---

**SCHEDULE B**

**WRITTEN TESTING-THE-WATERS COMMUNICATIONS**

Presentation dated April 2020

---

**B. Riley FBR, Inc.**  
**299 Park Avenue, 21<sup>st</sup> Floor**  
**New York, New York 10171**

\_\_\_\_\_, 2020

B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II  
299 Park Avenue, 21<sup>st</sup> Floor  
New York, NY 10171  
Attn: Kenneth Young, Chief Executive Officer

Ladies and Gentlemen:

This is to confirm our agreement whereby B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II, a Delaware corporation (“**Company**”), has requested B. Riley FBR, Inc. (“**B. Riley**” or the “**Advisor**”) to serve as the Company’s advisor in connection with the Company effecting a merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or similar business combination (in each case, a “**Business Combination**”) with one or more businesses (each a “**Target**”) as described in the Company’s Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-[\_\_\_\_]) filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (“**Registration Statement**”) in connection with its initial public offering (“**IPO**”).

1. Services and Fees.

(a) The Advisor will, from time to time, upon the Company’s request and in consultation with the Company:

(i) Assist the Company in preparing presentations for each potential Business Combination;

(ii) Assist the Company in arranging meetings with Company stockholders, including making calls directly to stockholders, to discuss each potential Business Combination and each potential Target’s attributes and providing regular market feedback, including written status reports, from these meetings and participate in direct interaction with stockholders, in all cases to the extent legally permissible;

(iii) Introduce the Company to potential investors to purchase the Company’s securities in connection with each potential Business Combination; and

(iv) Assist the Company with the preparation of any press releases and filings related to each potential Business Combination or Target (the activities described in the foregoing clauses (i)-(iv), the “Services”).

(b) As compensation for the Services, the Company will pay the Advisor a cash fee equal to 3.5% of the gross proceeds received by the Company in the IPO (the “**Fee**”). The Fee shall be due and payable at the closing of the Business Combination (“**Closing**”). If a proposed Business Combination is not consummated for any reason, no Fee shall be due or payable.

(c) The Fee shall be exclusive of any finder’s fees which may become payable to the Advisor pursuant to any other agreement between B. Riley and the Company or the Target.

(d) Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained herein, no portion of the Fee will be paid prior to the date that is 90 days from the effective date of the Registration Statement, unless FINRA determines that such payment would not be deemed underwriters’ compensation in connection with this offering pursuant to FINRA Rule 5110(c)(3)(B)(ii).

---

2. Expenses.

At the Closing, the Company shall reimburse the Advisor for all reasonable and documented costs and expenses incurred by the Advisor (including reasonable fees and disbursements of counsel) in connection with the performance of the Services; provided, however, any costs and/or expenses in excess of \$5,000 in the aggregate shall be subject to the Company's prior written approval, which approval will not be unreasonably withheld. The expenses and costs will be charged at cost without markup.

3. Company Cooperation; Information.

(a) The Company will provide full cooperation to the Advisor as may be necessary for the efficient performance by the Advisor of its obligations hereunder, including, but not limited to, providing to the Advisor and its counsel, on a timely basis, all documents and information regarding the Company and Target that the Advisor may reasonably request or that are otherwise relevant to the Advisor's performance of its obligations hereunder (collectively, the "**Information**"); making the Company's management, auditors, consultants, and advisors available to the Advisor; and, using commercially reasonable efforts to provide the Advisor with reasonable access to the management, auditors, suppliers, customers, consultants and advisors of Target. The Company will promptly notify the Advisor of any change in facts or circumstances or new developments affecting the Company or Target or that might reasonably be considered material to the Advisor's engagement hereunder.

(b) The Advisor agrees to keep strictly confidential all information conveyed by the Company or the Company's Representatives (as defined below) to the Advisor in connection with this Agreement including, for the avoidance of doubt, the identities of any Targets and any Business Combination, in whatever form, whether written, electronic or oral, and to execute a non-disclosure agreement in customary form reasonably acceptable to the Advisor if requested to do so by the Company.

4. Representations, Warranties, and Covenants.

(a) The Company represents, warrants, and covenants to the Advisor that all Information it makes available to the Advisor by or on behalf of the Company in connection with the performance of its obligations hereunder will not, to the Company's knowledge, contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make statements made, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading as of the date thereof and as of the consummation of the Business Combination. The Company acknowledges and agrees that the Advisor will use and rely on the accuracy and completeness of the Information supplied to the Advisor without having the obligation to independently verify the same.

(b) The Advisor represents, warrants and covenants to the Company that it is not prohibited from entering into this Agreement by any other contract, agreement, law or order.

5. Indemnity.

The Company shall indemnify the Advisor and its affiliates and directors, officers, employees, shareholders, representatives, and agents in accordance with the indemnification provisions set forth in Annex I hereto, all of which are incorporated herein by reference. Notwithstanding the foregoing and Annex I, the Advisor hereby acknowledges that the Company has established a trust account (the "**Trust Account**") containing the proceeds of the IPO and from certain private placements occurring simultaneously with the IPO (including interest accrued from time to time thereon) for the benefit of the Company's public stockholders and certain other parties (including the underwriters of the IPO). For and in consideration of the Company entering into this Agreement, and for other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, the Advisor hereby agrees that it does not now and shall not at any time hereafter have any right, title, interest or claim of any kind in or to any assets held in the Trust Account as a result of entering into this Agreement, and shall not make any claim against the Trust Account as a result of entering into this Agreement, regardless of whether such claim arises based on contract, tort, equity or any other theory of legal liability (any and all such claims are collectively referred to hereafter as the "**Released Claims**"). The Advisor hereby irrevocably waives any Released Claims that it may have against the Trust Account now or in the future as a result of, or arising out of, any of the Services provided to the Company hereunder and will not seek recourse against the Trust Account with respect thereto.

---



6. Use of Name and Reports .

Without the Advisor's prior written consent, neither the Company nor any of its affiliates (nor any director, officer, manager, partner, member, employee, or agent thereof) shall quote or refer to (i) the Advisor's name or (ii) any advice rendered by the Advisor to the Company or any communication from the Advisor in connection with performance of the Services, except as required by applicable federal or state law, regulation, or securities exchange rule.

7. Status as Independent Contractor .

The Advisor shall perform the Services as an independent contractor and not as an employee of the Company or affiliate thereof. It is expressly understood and agreed to by the parties that the Advisor shall have no authority to act for, represent, or bind the Company or any affiliate thereof in any manner, except as may be expressly agreed to by the Company in writing. In rendering the Services, the Advisor will be acting solely pursuant to a contractual relationship on an arm's-length basis. This Agreement is not intended to create a fiduciary relationship between the parties and neither the Advisor nor any of the Advisor's officers, directors or personnel will owe any fiduciary duty to the Company or any other person in connection with any of the matters contemplated by this Agreement.

8. Potential Conflicts .

The Company acknowledges that the Advisor is a full-service securities firms engaged in securities trading and brokerage activities and providing investment banking and advisory services from which conflicting interests may arise. In the ordinary course of business, the Advisor and its affiliates may at any time hold long or short positions, and may trade or otherwise effect transactions, for their own account or the accounts of customers, in debt or equity securities of the Company, its affiliates, or other entities that may be involved in the transactions contemplated hereby. Additionally, the Advisor regularly enters into agreements similar to this Agreement with other companies. Nothing in this Agreement shall be construed to limit or restrict the Advisor or any of its affiliates in conducting such business.

9. Entire Agreement .

This Agreement constitutes the entire understanding between the Company and Advisor with respect to the subject matter hereof and supersedes all prior agreements and understandings, oral or written, with respect thereto. This Agreement may not be modified or terminated orally or in any manner other than by an agreement in writing signed by the Company and the Advisor.

10. Notices .

Any notices required or permitted to be given hereunder shall be in writing and shall be deemed given when mailed by certified mail or private courier service, return receipt requested, addressed to each party at its respective addresses set forth above, or such other address as may be given by a party in a notice given pursuant to this Section.

11. Successors and Assigns .

This Agreement may not be assigned by any party without the written consent of the other parties. This Agreement shall be binding upon and shall inure to the benefit of the parties hereto and, except where prohibited, to their successors and assigns.

12. Non-Exclusivity .

Nothing herein shall be deemed to restrict or prohibit the engagement by the Company of other consultants providing the same or similar services or the payment by the Company of fees to such other consultants. The Company's engagement of any other consultant(s) shall not affect the Advisor's right to receive the Fee and reimbursement of expenses pursuant to this Agreement.

---

13. Applicable Law; Venue.

This Agreement shall be construed and enforced in accordance with the laws of the State of New York without giving effect to conflict of laws. In the event of any dispute under this Agreement, then and in such event, each party hereto agrees that the dispute shall be brought and enforced in the courts of the State of New York, County of New York under the accelerated adjudication procedures of the Commercial Division, or the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York, in each event at the discretion of the party initiating the dispute. Each party irrevocably submits to such jurisdiction, which jurisdiction shall be exclusive. Each party hereby waives any objection to such exclusive jurisdiction and that such courts represent an inconvenient forum. Any such process or summons to be served upon a party may be served by transmitting a copy thereof by registered or certified mail, postage prepaid, addressed to such party at the address set forth at the beginning of this Agreement. Such mailing shall be deemed personal service and shall be legal and binding upon the party being served in any action, proceeding or claim. The parties agree that the prevailing party(ies) in any such action shall be entitled to recover from the other party(ies) all of its reasonable attorneys' fees and expenses relating to such action or proceeding and/or incurred in connection with the preparation therefor.

14. Counterparts.

This Agreement may be executed in several original or facsimile counterparts, each one of which shall constitute an original, and together shall constitute but one instrument.

**[Signature Page Follows]**

---

If the foregoing correctly sets forth the understanding between the Advisor and the Company with respect to the foregoing, please so indicate your agreement by signing in the place provided below, at which time this letter shall become a binding contract.

B. RILEY FBR, INC.

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

AGREED AND ACCEPTED BY:

B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

[Signature Page to Business Combination Marketing Agreement]

---

## Indemnification

In connection with the Company's engagement of B. Riley FBR, Inc. (the "**Advisor**") pursuant to that certain letter agreement ("**Agreement**") of which this Annex forms a part, B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II (the "**Company**") hereby agrees, subject to Section 5 of the Agreement, to indemnify and hold harmless the Advisor and its affiliates and their respective directors, officers, shareholders, agents and employees of any of the foregoing (collectively the "**Indemnified Persons**"), from and against any and all claims, actions, suits, proceedings (including those of shareholders), damages, liabilities and expenses incurred by any of them (including the reasonable fees and expenses of counsel), as incurred, (collectively a "**Claim**"), that are related to or arise out of the Agreement and any actions taken or omitted to be taken by any Indemnified Person as contemplated by the Agreement or in accordance with and at the Company's request or with the Company's consent in connection with the Agreement, and the Company shall reimburse any Indemnified Person for all expenses (including the reasonable fees and expenses of counsel) as incurred by such Indemnified Person in connection with investigating, preparing or defending any such claim, action, suit or proceeding, in connection with pending or threatened litigation in which any Indemnified Person is a party. The Company will not, however, be responsible for any Claim that is finally judicially determined to have resulted from the gross negligence or willful misconduct of any person seeking indemnification for such Claim. The Company further agrees that no Indemnified Person shall have any liability to the Company for or in connection with the Company's engagement of the Advisor except for any Claim incurred by the Company as a result of such Indemnified Person's gross negligence or willful misconduct.

The Company further agrees that it will not, without the prior written consent of the Advisor, settle, compromise or consent to the entry of any judgment in any pending or threatened Claim in respect of which indemnification may be sought hereunder (whether or not any Indemnified Person is an actual or potential party to such Claim), unless such settlement, compromise or consent includes an unconditional, irrevocable release of each Indemnified Person from any and all liability arising out of such Claim.

Promptly upon receipt by an Indemnified Person of notice of any complaint or the assertion or institution of any Claim with respect to which indemnification is being sought hereunder, such Indemnified Person shall notify the Company in writing of such complaint or of such assertion or institution but failure to so notify the Company shall not relieve the Company from any obligation it may have hereunder, except and only to the extent such failure results in the forfeiture by the Company of substantial rights and defenses. If the Company so elects or is requested by such Indemnified Person, the Company will assume the defense of such Claim, including the employment of counsel reasonably satisfactory to such Indemnified Person and the payment of the fees and expenses of such counsel. In the event, however, that legal counsel to such Indemnified Person reasonably determines that having common counsel would present such counsel with a conflict of interest or if the defendant in, or target of, any such Claim, includes an Indemnified Person and the Company, and legal counsel to such Indemnified Person reasonably concludes that there may be legal defenses available to it or other Indemnified Persons different from or in addition to those available to the Company, then such Indemnified Person may employ its own separate counsel to represent or defend him, her or it in any such Claim and the Company shall pay the reasonable fees and expenses of such counsel. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, if the Company fails timely or diligently to defend, contest, or otherwise protect against any Claim, the relevant Indemnified Party shall have the right, but not the obligation, to defend, contest, compromise, settle, assert crossclaims, or counterclaims or otherwise protect against the same, and shall be fully indemnified by the Company therefor, including without limitation, for the reasonable fees and expenses of its counsel and all amounts paid as a result of such Claim or the compromise or settlement thereof.

In addition, with respect to any Claim in which the Company assumes the defense, the Indemnified Person shall have the right to participate in such Claim and to retain his, her or its own counsel therefor at his, her or its own expense.

---

The Company agrees that if any indemnity sought by an Indemnified Person hereunder is held by a court to be unavailable for any reason then (whether or not the Advisor is an Indemnified Person), the Company and the Advisor shall contribute to the Claim for which such indemnity is held unavailable in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect the relative benefits to the Company, on the one hand, and the Advisor on the other, in connection with the Advisor's engagement referred to above, subject to the limitation that in no event shall the amount of the Advisor's contribution to such Claim exceed the amount of fees actually received by the Advisor from the Company pursuant to the Advisor's engagement. The Company hereby agrees that the relative benefits to the Company, on the one hand, and the Advisor on the other, with respect to the Advisor's engagement shall be deemed to be in the same proportion as (a) the total value paid or proposed to be paid or received by the Company or its shareholders as the case may be, pursuant to the transaction (whether or not consummated) for which the Advisor is engaged to render services bears to (b) the fee paid or proposed to be paid to the Advisor in connection with such engagement.

The Company's indemnity, reimbursement and contribution obligations under this Agreement (a) shall be in addition to, and shall in no way limit or otherwise adversely affect any rights that any Indemnified Party may have at law or at equity and (b) shall be effective whether or not the Company is at fault in any way.

---

**AMENDED AND RESTATED  
CERTIFICATE OF INCORPORATION  
OF  
B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II**

February 4, 2020

B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II, a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of Delaware (the “*Corporation*”), DOES HEREBY CERTIFY AS FOLLOWS :

1. The name of the Corporation is “*B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II*”. The original certificate of incorporation of the Corporation was filed with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware on June 3, 2019 (the “*Original Certificate*”).
2. This Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation (the “*Amended and Restated Certificate*”), which both restates and amends the provisions of the Original Certificate, was duly adopted in accordance with Sections 228, 242 and 245 of the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware, as amended from time to time (the “*DGCL*”).
3. This Amended and Restated Certificate shall become effective on the date of filing with the Secretary of State of Delaware.
4. The text of the Original Certificate is hereby restated and amended in its entirety to read as follows:

**ARTICLE I  
NAME**

The name of the corporation is B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II (the “*Corporation*”).

**ARTICLE II  
PURPOSE**

The purpose of the Corporation is to engage in any lawful act or activity for which corporations may be organized under the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware, as amended from time to time (the “*DGCL*”).

**ARTICLE III  
REGISTERED AGENT**

The address of the Corporation’s registered office in the State of Delaware is The Corporation Trust Company, 1209 Orange Street in the City of Wilmington, County of New Castle, State of Delaware, 19801, and the name of the Corporation’s registered agent at such address is Corporation Trust Company.

**ARTICLE IV  
CAPITALIZATION**

Section 4.1 Authorized Capital Stock. The total number of shares of all classes of capital stock, each with a par value of \$0.0001 per share, which the Corporation is authorized to issue is 126,000,000 shares, consisting of (a) 125,000,000 shares of common stock (the “*Common Stock*”), including (i) 100,000,000 shares of Class A Common Stock (the “*Class A Common Stock*”), and (ii) 25,000,000 shares of Class B Common Stock (the “*Class B Common Stock*”), and (b) 1,000,000 shares of preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the “*Preferred Stock*”).

---

Upon the effective time of this Amended and Restated Certificate, each issued share of common stock of the Corporation that is outstanding immediately prior to the effective time of this Amended and Restated Certificate shall be converted into 575 issued and outstanding shares of Class B Common Stock, without further action on the part of the Corporation or the holders thereof and whether or not certificates representing such shares are surrendered for cancellation.

Section 4.2 Preferred Stock. The board of directors of the Corporation (the “**Board**”) is hereby expressly authorized to provide, out of the unissued shares of the Preferred Stock, one or more series of Preferred Stock, and to establish from time to time the number of shares to be included in each such series and to fix the voting rights, if any, designations, powers, preferences and relative, participating, optional, special and other rights, if any, of each such series and any qualifications, limitations and restrictions thereof, as shall be stated in the resolution or resolutions adopted by the Board providing for the issuance of such series and included in a certificate of designation (a “**Preferred Stock Designation**”) filed pursuant to the DGCL, and the Board is hereby expressly vested with the authority to the full extent provided by law, now or hereafter, to adopt any such resolution or resolutions.

Section 4.3 Common Stock.

(a) *Voting*.

(i) Except as otherwise required by law or this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), the holders of the Common Stock shall exclusively possess all voting power with respect to the Corporation.

(ii) Except as otherwise required by law or this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), the holders of shares of Common Stock shall be entitled to one vote for each such share on each matter properly submitted to the stockholders on which the holders of the Common Stock are entitled to vote.

(iii) Except as otherwise required by law or this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), at any annual or special meeting of the stockholders of the Corporation, holders of the Class A Common Stock and holders of the Class B Common Stock, voting together as a single class, shall have the exclusive right to vote for the election of directors and on all other matters properly submitted to a vote of the stockholders. Notwithstanding the foregoing, except as otherwise required by law or this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), holders of shares of any series of Common Stock shall not be entitled to vote on any amendment to this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any amendment to any Preferred Stock Designation) that relates solely to the terms of one or more outstanding series of Preferred Stock or other series of Common Stock if the holders of such affected series of Preferred Stock or Common Stock, as applicable, are entitled, either separately or together with the holders of one or more other such series, to vote thereon pursuant to this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation) or the DGCL.

(b) *Class B Common Stock*.

(i) Shares of Class B Common Stock shall be convertible into shares of Class A Common Stock on a one-for-one basis (the “**Initial Conversion Ratio**”) (A) at any time and from time to time at the option of the holder thereof and (B) automatically on the business day following the closing of the Business Combination (as defined below).

(ii) Notwithstanding the Initial Conversion Ratio, in the case that additional shares of Class A Common Stock, or equity-linked securities, are issued or deemed issued in excess of the amounts sold in the Corporation’s initial public offering of securities and related to the closing of the initial Business Combination, all issued and outstanding shares of Class B Common Stock shall automatically convert into shares of Class A Common Stock at the time of the closing of the Corporation’s initial merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or similar business combination with one or more businesses (the “**Business Combination**”) at a ratio for which:

- the numerator shall be equal to the sum of (A) 25% of all shares of Class A Common Stock issued or issuable (upon the conversion or exercise of any equity-linked securities or otherwise) by the Corporation, related to or in connection with the consummation of the initial Business Combination (excluding any securities issued or issuable to any seller in the initial Business Combination) plus (B) the number of shares of Class B Common Stock issued and outstanding prior to the closing of the initial Business Combination; and
- the denominator shall be the number of shares of Class B Common Stock issued and outstanding prior to the closing of the initial Business Combination.

Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained herein, (i) the foregoing adjustment to the Initial Conversion Ratio may be waived as to any particular issuance or deemed issuance of additional shares of Class A Common Stock or equity-linked securities by the written consent or agreement of holders of a majority of the shares of Class B Common Stock then outstanding consenting or agreeing separately as a single class in the manner provided in Section 4.3(b)(iii), and (ii) in no event shall the Class B Common Stock convert into Class A Common Stock at a ratio that is less than one-for-one.

The foregoing conversion ratio shall also be adjusted to account for any subdivision (by stock split, subdivision, exchange, stock dividend, reclassification, recapitalization or otherwise) or combination (by reverse stock split, exchange, reclassification, recapitalization or otherwise) or similar reclassification or recapitalization of the outstanding shares of Class A Common Stock into a greater or lesser number of shares occurring after the original filing of this Amended and Restated Certificate without a proportionate and corresponding subdivision, combination or similar reclassification or recapitalization of the outstanding shares of Class B Common Stock.

Each share of Class B Common Stock shall convert into its *pro rata* number of shares of Class A Common Stock pursuant to this Section 4.3(b). The *pro rata* share for each holder of Class B Common Stock will be determined as follows: Each share of Class B Common Stock shall convert into such number of shares of Class A Common Stock as is equal to the product of one (1) multiplied by a fraction, the numerator of which shall be the total number of shares of Class A Common Stock into which all of the issued and outstanding shares of Class B Common Stock shall be converted pursuant to this Section 4.3(b) and the denominator of which shall be the total number of issued and outstanding shares of Class B Common Stock at the time of conversion.

(iii) *Voting*. Except as otherwise required by law or this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), for so long as any shares of Class B Common Stock shall remain outstanding, the Corporation shall not, without the prior vote or written consent of the holders of a majority of the shares of Class B Common Stock then outstanding, voting separately as a single class, amend, alter or repeal any provision of this Amended and Restated Certificate, whether by merger, consolidation or otherwise, if such amendment, alteration or repeal would alter or change the powers, preferences or relative, participating, optional or other or special rights of the Class B Common Stock. Any action required or permitted to be taken at any meeting of the holders of Class B Common Stock may be taken without a meeting, without prior notice and without a vote, if a consent or consents in writing, setting forth the action so taken, shall be signed by the holders of the outstanding Class B Common Stock having not less than the minimum number of votes that would be necessary to authorize or take such action at a meeting at which all shares of Class B Common Stock were present and voted and shall be delivered to the Corporation by delivery to its registered office in the State of Delaware, its principal place of business, or an officer or agent of the Corporation having custody of the book in which minutes of proceedings of stockholders are recorded. Delivery made to the Corporation's registered office shall be by hand or by certified or registered mail, return receipt requested. Prompt written notice of the taking of corporate action without a meeting by less than unanimous written consent of the holders of Class B Common Stock shall, to the extent required by law, be given to those holders of Class B Common Stock who have not consented in writing and who, if the action had been taken at a meeting, would have been entitled to notice of the meeting if the record date for notice of such meeting had been the date that written consents signed by a sufficient number of holders of Class B Common Stock to take the action were delivered to the Corporation.



(c) *Dividends.* Subject to applicable law, the rights, if any, of the holders of any outstanding series of the Preferred Stock, the holders of shares of Common Stock shall be entitled to receive such dividends and other distributions (payable in cash, property or capital stock of the Corporation) when, as and if declared thereon by the Board from time to time out of any assets or funds of the Corporation legally available therefor and shall share equally on a per share basis in such dividends and distributions.

(d) *Liquidation, Dissolution or Winding Up of the Corporation.* Subject to applicable law, the rights, if any, of the holders of any outstanding series of the Preferred Stock, in the event of any voluntary or involuntary liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Corporation, after payment or provision for payment of the debts and other liabilities of the Corporation, the holders of shares of Common Stock shall be entitled to receive all the remaining assets of the Corporation available for distribution to its stockholders, ratably in proportion to the number of shares of Class A Common Stock (on an as converted basis with respect to the Class B Common Stock) held by them.

Section 4.4 Rights and Options. The Corporation has the authority to create and issue rights, warrants and options entitling the holders thereof to acquire from the Corporation any shares of its capital stock of any class or classes, with such rights, warrants and options to be evidenced by or in instrument(s) approved by the Board. The Board is empowered to set the exercise price, duration, times for exercise and other terms and conditions of such rights, warrants or options; provided, however, that the consideration to be received for any shares of capital stock issuable upon exercise thereof may not be less than the par value thereof.

## **ARTICLE V DIRECTORS**

Section 5.1 Board Powers. The business and affairs of the Corporation shall be managed by, or under the direction of, the Board. In addition to the powers and authority expressly conferred upon the Board by statute, this Amended and Restated Certificate or the Bylaws (the “*Bylaws*”) of the Corporation, the Board is hereby empowered to exercise all such powers and do all such acts and things as may be exercised or done by the Corporation, subject, nevertheless, to the provisions of the DGCL, this Amended and Restated Certificate and any Bylaws adopted by the stockholders; provided, however, that no Bylaws hereafter adopted by the stockholders shall invalidate any prior act of the Board that would have been valid if such Bylaws had not been adopted.

Section 5.2 Election. Unless and except to the extent that the Bylaws shall so require, the election of directors need not be by written ballot.

## **ARTICLE VI BYLAWS**

In furtherance and not in limitation of the powers conferred upon it by law, the Board shall have the power to adopt, amend, alter, change, add or repeal the Bylaws. The Bylaws also may be adopted, amended, altered or repealed by the stockholders.

**ARTICLE VII  
LIMITED LIABILITY; INDEMNIFICATION**

Section 7.1 Limitation of Director Liability. A director of the Corporation shall not be personally liable to the Corporation or its stockholders for monetary damages for any breach of fiduciary duty by such director as a director, except for liability (i) for any breach of the director's duty of loyalty to the Corporation or its stockholders, (ii) for acts or omissions not in good faith or which involve intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of law, (iii) under Section 174 of the DGCL, or (iv) for any transaction from which the director derived an improper personal benefit. If the DGCL is amended to authorize corporate action further eliminating or limiting the personal liability of directors, then the liability of a director of the Corporation shall be eliminated or limited to the fullest extent permitted by the DGCL, as so amended. Any repeal or modification of this Section 7.1 by the stockholders of the Corporation shall not adversely affect any right or protection of a director of the Corporation with respect to events occurring prior to the time of such repeal or modification.

Section 7.2 Indemnification. The Corporation, to the full extent permitted by Section 145 of the DGCL, as amended from time to time, shall indemnify all persons whom it may indemnify pursuant thereto. Expenses (including attorneys' fees) incurred by an officer or director in defending any civil, criminal, administrative, or investigative action, suit or proceeding for which such officer or director may be entitled to indemnification hereunder shall be paid by the Corporation in advance of the final disposition of such action, suit or proceeding upon receipt of an undertaking by or on behalf of such director or officer to repay such amount if it shall ultimately be determined that he is not entitled to be indemnified by the Corporation as authorized hereby.

**ARTICLE VIII  
INSOLVENCY; SALE, LEASE OR EXCHANGE OF ASSETS**

Whenever a compromise or arrangement is proposed between this Corporation and its creditors or any class of them and/or between this Corporation and its stockholders or any class of them, any court of equitable jurisdiction within the State of Delaware may, on the application in a summary way of this Corporation or of any creditor or stockholder thereof or on the application of any receiver or receivers appointed for this Corporation under Section 291 of Title 8 of the Delaware Code or on the application of trustees in dissolution or of any receiver or receivers appointed for this Corporation under Section 279 of Title 8 of the Delaware Code order a meeting of the creditors or class of creditors, and/or of the stockholders or class of stockholders of this Corporation, as the case may be, to be summoned in such manner as the said court directs. If a majority in number representing three fourths in value of the creditors or class of creditors, and/or of the stockholders or class of stockholders of this Corporation, as the case may be, agree to any compromise or arrangement and to any reorganization of this Corporation as a consequence of such compromise or arrangement, the said compromise or arrangement and the said reorganization shall, if sanctioned by the court to which the said application has been made, be binding on all the creditors or class of creditors, and/or on all the stockholders or class of stockholders, of this Corporation, as the case may be, and also on this Corporation.

**ARTICLE IX  
AMENDMENT OF CERTIFICATE OF INCORPORATION**

The Corporation reserves the right to amend, alter, change, add or repeal any provision contained in this Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), in the manner now or hereafter prescribed by this Amended and Restated Certificate and the DGCL; and except as set forth in ARTICLE VII, all rights, preferences and privileges herein conferred upon stockholders, directors or any other persons by and pursuant to this Amended and Restated Certificate in its present form or as hereafter amended are granted subject to the right reserved in this Article.

[ Signature Page Follows ]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the undersigned officer has executed this Amended and Restated Certificate as of the date first set forth above.

By: /s/ Kenneth Young

Name:

Kenneth Young

Title: Chief Executive Officer

---

**FORM OF SECOND AMENDED AND RESTATED  
CERTIFICATE OF INCORPORATION  
OF  
B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II**

[        ], 2020

B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II, a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of Delaware (the “*Corporation*”), DOES HEREBY CERTIFY AS FOLLOWS:

1. The name of the Corporation is “*B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II*”. The original certificate of incorporation of the Corporation was filed with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware on June 3, 2019 (the “*Original Certificate*”). An Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation (the “*Amended and Restated Certificate*”) was filed with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware on February 4, 2020.

2. This Second Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation (the “*Second Amended and Restated Certificate*”), which both restates and amends the provisions of the Amended and Restated Certificate, was duly adopted in accordance with Sections 228, 242 and 245 of the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware, as amended from time to time (the “*DGCL*”).

3. This Second Amended and Restated Certificate shall become effective on the date of filing with Secretary of State of Delaware.

4. The text of the Amended and Restated Certificate is hereby restated and amended in its entirety to read as follows:

**ARTICLE I  
NAME**

The name of the corporation is B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II (the “*Corporation*”).

**ARTICLE II  
PURPOSE**

The purpose of the Corporation is to engage in any lawful act or activity for which corporations may be organized under the DGCL. In addition to the powers and privileges conferred upon the Corporation by law and those incidental thereto, the Corporation shall possess and may exercise all the powers and privileges that are necessary or convenient to the conduct, promotion or attainment of the business or purposes of the Corporation, including, but not limited to, effecting a merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or similar business combination involving the Corporation and one or more businesses (a “*Business Combination*”).

**ARTICLE III  
REGISTERED AGENT**

The address of the Corporation’s registered office in the State of Delaware is Corporation Trust Center, 1209 Orange Street in the City of Wilmington, County of New Castle, State of Delaware, 19801, and the name of the Corporation’s registered agent at such address is The Corporation Trust Company.

---

## ARTICLE IV CAPITALIZATION

Section 4.1 Authorized Capital Stock. The total number of shares of all classes of capital stock, each with a par value of \$0.0001 per share, which the Corporation is authorized to issue is 126,000,000 shares, consisting of (a) 125,000,000 shares of common stock (the “ **Common Stock** ”), including (i) 100,000,000 shares of Class A common stock (the “ **Class A Common Stock** ”), and (ii) 25,000,000 shares of Class B common stock (the “ **Class B Common Stock** ”), and (b) 1,000,000 shares of preferred stock (the “ **Preferred Stock** ”).

Section 4.2 Preferred Stock. Subject to *Article IX* of this Second Amended and Restated Certificate, the Board of Directors of the Corporation (the “ **Board** ”) is hereby expressly authorized to provide out of the unissued shares of the Preferred Stock for one or more series of Preferred Stock and to establish from time to time the number of shares to be included in each such series and to fix the voting rights, if any, designations, powers, preferences and relative, participating, optional, special and other rights, if any, of each such series and any qualifications, limitations and restrictions thereof, as shall be stated in the resolution or resolutions adopted by the Board providing for the issuance of such series and included in a certificate of designation (a “ **Preferred Stock Designation** ”) filed pursuant to the DGCL, and the Board is hereby expressly vested with the authority to the full extent provided by law, now or hereafter, to adopt any such resolution or resolutions.

Section 4.3 Common Stock.

(a) *Voting* .

(i) Except as otherwise required by law or this Second Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), the holders of the Common Stock shall exclusively possess all voting power with respect to the Corporation.

(ii) Except as otherwise required by law or this Second Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), the holders of shares of Common Stock shall be entitled to one vote for each such share on each matter properly submitted to the stockholders on which the holders of the Common Stock are entitled to vote.

(iii) Except as otherwise required by law or this Second Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), at any annual or special meeting of the stockholders of the Corporation, holders of the Class A Common Stock and holders of the Class B Common Stock, voting together as a single class, shall have the exclusive right to vote for the election of directors and on all other matters properly submitted to a vote of the stockholders. Notwithstanding the foregoing, except as otherwise required by law or this Second Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), holders of shares of any series of Common Stock shall not be entitled to vote on any amendment to this Second Amended and Restated Certificate (including any amendment to any Preferred Stock Designation) that relates solely to the terms of one or more outstanding series of Preferred Stock or other series of Common Stock if the holders of such affected series of Preferred Stock or Common Stock, as applicable, are entitled exclusively, either separately or together with the holders of one or more other such series, to vote thereon pursuant to this Second Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation) or the DGCL.

(b) Class B Common Stock.

(i) Shares of Class B Common Stock shall be convertible into shares of Class A Common Stock on a one-for-one basis (the “ **Initial Conversion Ratio** ”) automatically concurrently with or immediately following the closing of the Business Combination.

(ii) Notwithstanding the Initial Conversion Ratio, in the case that additional shares of Class A Common Stock or equity-linked securities are issued or deemed issued in excess of the amounts sold in the Corporation's initial public offering of securities (the "**Offering**") and related to or in connection with the closing of the initial Business Combination (as defined below), all issued and outstanding shares of Class B Common Stock shall automatically convert into shares of Class A Common Stock at the time of the closing of the Corporation's initial Business Combination, the ratio for which the shares of Class B Common Stock shall convert into shares of Class A Common Stock will be adjusted so that the number of shares of Class A Common Stock issuable upon conversion of all shares of Class B Common Stock will equal, in the aggregate, 25% of the sum of (a) the total number of all shares of Class A Common Stock issued in the Offering (including any shares of Class A Common Stock issued pursuant to the underwriters' over-allotment option and shares underlying private placement units sold to the Sponsor in connection with the Offering) plus (b) the sum of (i) all shares of Class A Common Stock and equity-linked securities issued or deemed issued or issuable upon conversion or exercise of any equity-linked securities or rights issued or deemed issued in connection with or in relation to the consummation of a Business Combination (including any shares of Class A Common Stock issued pursuant to a forward purchase agreement), excluding any shares of Class A Common Stock or equity-linked securities issued, or to be issued, to any seller in a Business Combination, any private placement units issued to B. Riley Principal Sponsor Co. II, LLC (the "**Sponsor**"), or an affiliate of the Sponsor or the Corporation's officers and directors upon the conversion of working capital loans made to the Corporation and any warrants issued pursuant to a forward purchase agreement, minus (ii) the number of shares of Class A Common Stock redeemed in connection with a Business Combination, provided that such conversion of shares of Class B Common Stock shall never be less than the Initial Conversion Ratio.

Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained herein, (i) the foregoing adjustment to the Initial Conversion Ratio may be waived as to any particular issuance or deemed issuance of additional shares of Class A Common Stock or equity-linked securities by the written consent or agreement of holders of a majority of the shares of Class B Common Stock then outstanding consenting or agreeing separately as a single class in the manner provided in Section 4.3(b)(iii), and (ii) in no event shall the Class B Common Stock convert into Class A Common Stock at a ratio that is less than one-for-one.

The foregoing conversion ratio shall also be adjusted to account for any subdivision (by stock split, subdivision, exchange, stock dividend, reclassification, recapitalization or otherwise) or combination (by reverse stock split, exchange, reclassification, recapitalization or otherwise) or similar reclassification or recapitalization of the outstanding shares of Class A Common Stock into a greater or lesser number of shares occurring after the original filing of this Second Amended and Restated Certificate without a proportionate and corresponding subdivision, combination or similar reclassification or recapitalization of the outstanding shares of Class B Common Stock.

Each share of Class B Common Stock shall convert into its *pro rata* number of shares of Class A Common Stock pursuant to this Section 4.3(b). The *pro rata* share for each holder of Class B Common Stock will be determined as follows: Each share of Class B Common Stock shall convert into such number of shares of Class A Common Stock as is equal to the product of one (1) multiplied by a fraction, the numerator of which shall be the total number of shares of Class A Common Stock into which all of the issued and outstanding shares of Class B Common Stock shall be converted pursuant to this Section 4.3(b) and the denominator of which shall be the total number of issued and outstanding shares of Class B Common Stock at the time of conversion.

(iii) *Voting*. Except as otherwise required by law or this Second Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), for so long as any shares of Class B Common Stock shall remain outstanding, the Corporation shall not, without the prior vote or written consent of the holders of a majority of the shares of Class B Common Stock then outstanding, voting separately as a single class, amend, alter or repeal any provision of this Second Amended and Restated Certificate, whether by merger, consolidation or otherwise, if such amendment, alteration or repeal would alter or change the powers, preferences or relative, participating, optional or other or special rights of the Class B Common Stock. Any action required or permitted to be taken at any meeting of the holders of Class B Common Stock may be taken without a meeting, without prior notice and without a vote, if a consent or consents in writing, setting forth the action so taken, shall be signed by the holders of the outstanding Class B Common Stock having not less than the minimum number of votes that would be necessary to authorize or take such action at a meeting at which all shares of Class B Common Stock were present and voted and shall be delivered to the Corporation by delivery to its registered office in the State of Delaware, its principal place of business, or an officer or agent of the Corporation having custody of the book in which minutes of proceedings of stockholders are recorded. Delivery made to the Corporation's registered office shall be by hand or by certified or registered mail, return receipt requested. Prompt written notice of the taking of corporate action without a meeting by less than unanimous written consent of the holders of Class B Common Stock shall, to the extent required by law, be given to those holders of Class B Common Stock who have not consented in writing and who, if the action had been taken at a meeting, would have been entitled to notice of the meeting if the record date for notice of such meeting had been the date that written consents signed by a sufficient number of holders of Class B Common Stock to take the action were delivered to the Corporation

(c) *Dividends* . Subject to applicable law, the rights, if any, of the holders of any outstanding series of the Preferred Stock and the provisions of Article IX hereof, the holders of shares of Common Stock shall be entitled to receive such dividends and other distributions (payable in cash, property or capital stock of the Corporation) when, as and if declared thereon by the Board from time to time out of any assets or funds of the Corporation legally available therefor and shall share equally on a per share basis in such dividends and distributions.

(d) *Liquidation, Dissolution or Winding Up of the Corporation*. Subject to applicable law, the rights, if any, of the holders of any outstanding series of the Preferred Stock and the provisions of *Article IX* hereof, in the event of any voluntary or involuntary liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Corporation, after payment or provision for payment of the debts and other liabilities of the Corporation, the holders of shares of Common Stock shall be entitled to receive all the remaining assets of the Corporation available for distribution to its stockholders, ratably in proportion to the number of shares of Common Stock held by them.

Section 4.4 *Rights and Options* . The Corporation has the authority to create and issue rights, warrants and options entitling the holders thereof to acquire from the Corporation any shares of its capital stock of any class or classes, with such rights, warrants and options to be evidenced by or in instrument(s) approved by the Board. The Board is empowered to set the exercise price, duration, times for exercise and other terms and conditions of such rights, warrants or options; provided, however, that the consideration to be received for any shares of capital stock issuable upon exercise thereof may not be less than the par value thereof.

## ARTICLE V BOARD OF DIRECTORS

Section 5.1 *Board Powers* . The business and affairs of the Corporation shall be managed by, or under the direction of, the Board. In addition to the powers and authority expressly conferred upon the Board by statute, this Second Amended and Restated Certificate or the By Laws of the Corporation (“*By Laws* ”), the Board is hereby empowered to exercise all such powers and do all such acts and things as may be exercised or done by the Corporation, subject, nevertheless, to the provisions of the DGCL, this Second Amended and Restated Certificate and any By Laws adopted by the stockholders; provided, however, that no By Laws hereafter adopted by the stockholders shall invalidate any prior act of the Board that would have been valid if such By Laws had not been adopted.

Section 5.2 *Number, Election and Term* .

(a) The number of directors of the Corporation, other than those who may be elected by the holders of one or more series of the Preferred Stock voting separately by class or series, shall be fixed from time to time exclusively by the Board pursuant to a resolution adopted by a majority of the Board.

(b) Subject to Section 5.5 hereof, the Board shall be divided into two classes, as nearly equal in number as possible and designated Class I and Class II. The Board is authorized to assign members of the Board already in office to Class I or Class II. The term of the initial Class I Directors shall expire at the first annual meeting of the stockholders of the Corporation following the effectiveness of this Second Amended and Restated Certificate and the term of the initial Class II Directors shall expire at the second annual meeting of the stockholders of the Corporation following the effectiveness of this Second Amended and Restated Certificate. At each succeeding annual meeting of the stockholders of the Corporation, beginning with the first annual meeting of the stockholders of the Corporation following the effectiveness of this Second Amended and Restated Certificate, each of the successors elected to replace the class of directors whose term expires at that annual meeting shall be elected for a two-year term or until the election and qualification of their respective successors in office, subject to their earlier death, resignation or removal. Subject to Section 5.5 hereof, if the number of directors that constitutes the Board is changed, any increase or decrease shall be apportioned by the Board among the classes so as to maintain the number of directors in each class as nearly equal as possible, but in no case shall a decrease in the number of directors constituting the Board shorten the term of any incumbent director. Subject to the rights of the holders of one or more series of Preferred Stock, voting separately by class or series, to elect directors pursuant to the terms of one or more series of Preferred Stock, the election of directors shall be determined by a plurality of the votes cast by the stockholders present in person or represented by proxy at the meeting and entitled to vote thereon. The Board is hereby expressly authorized, by resolution or resolutions thereof, to assign members of the Board already in office to the aforesaid classes at the time this Second Amended and Restated Certificate (and therefore such classification) becomes effective in accordance with the DGCL.

(c) Subject to Section 5.5 hereof, a director shall hold office until the annual meeting for the year in which his or her term expires and until his or her successor has been elected and qualified, subject, however, to such director's earlier death, resignation, retirement, disqualification or removal.

(d) Unless and except to the extent that the By Laws shall so require, the election of directors need not be by written ballot.

Section 5.3 Newly Created Directorships and Vacancies. Subject to Section 5.5 hereof, newly created directorships resulting from an increase in the number of directors and any vacancies on the Board resulting from death, resignation, retirement, disqualification, removal or other cause may be filled solely and exclusively by a majority vote of the remaining directors then in office, even if less than a quorum or by a sole remaining director (and not by stockholders), and any director so chosen shall hold office for the remainder of the full term of the class of directors to which the new directorship was added or in which the vacancy occurred and until his or her successor has been elected and qualified, subject, however, to such director's earlier death, resignation, retirement, disqualification or removal.

Section 5.4 Removal. Subject to Section 5.5 hereof, any or all of the directors may be removed from office at any time, but only for cause and only by the affirmative vote of holders of a majority of the voting power of all then outstanding shares of capital stock of the Corporation entitled to vote generally in the election of directors, voting together as a single class.

Section 5.5 Preferred Stock - Directors. Notwithstanding any other provision of this *Article V*, and except as otherwise required by law, whenever the holders of one or more series of the Preferred Stock shall have the right, voting separately by class or series, to elect one or more directors, the term of office, the filling of vacancies, the removal from office and other features of such directorships shall be governed by the terms of such series of the Preferred Stock as set forth in this Second Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation) and such directors shall not be included in any of the classes created pursuant to this *Article V* unless expressly provided by such terms.

Section 5.6 Quorum. A quorum for the transaction of business by the directors shall be set forth in the By Laws.

## **ARTICLE VI BY LAWS**

In furtherance and not in limitation of the powers conferred upon it by law, the Board shall have the power and is expressly authorized to adopt, amend, alter or repeal the By Laws. The affirmative vote of a majority of the Board shall be required to adopt, amend, alter or repeal the By Laws. The By Laws also may be adopted, amended, altered or repealed by the stockholders; provided, however, that in addition to any vote of the holders of any class or series of capital stock of the Corporation required by law or by this Second Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), the affirmative vote of the holders of at least a majority of the voting power of all then outstanding shares of capital stock of the Corporation entitled to vote generally in the election of directors, voting together as a single class, shall be required for the stockholders to adopt, amend, alter or repeal the By Laws; and provided further, however, that no By Laws hereafter adopted by the stockholders shall invalidate any prior act of the Board that would have been valid if such By Laws had not been adopted.



**ARTICLE VII**  
**MEETINGS OF STOCKHOLDERS; ACTION BY WRITTEN CONSENT**

Section 7.1 Meetings. Subject to the rights, if any, of the holders of any outstanding series of the Preferred Stock, and to the requirements of applicable law, special meetings of stockholders of the Corporation may be called only by the Chairman of the Board, Chief Executive Officer of the Corporation, or the Board pursuant to a resolution adopted by a majority of the Board, and the ability of the stockholders to call a special meeting is hereby specifically denied. Except as provided in the foregoing sentence, special meetings of stockholders may not be called by another person or persons.

Section 7.2 Advance Notice. Advance notice of stockholder nominations for the election of directors and of business to be brought by stockholders before any meeting of the stockholders of the Corporation shall be given in the manner provided in the By Laws.

Section 7.3 Action by Written Consent. Except as may be otherwise provided for or fixed pursuant to this Second Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation) relating to the rights of the holders of any outstanding series of Preferred Stock, subsequent to the consummation of the Offering, any action required or permitted to be taken by the stockholders of the Corporation must be effected by a duly called annual or special meeting of such stockholders and may not be effected by written consent of the stockholders other than with respect to the Class B Common Stock with respect to which action may be taken by written consent.

**ARTICLE VIII**  
**LIMITED LIABILITY; INDEMNIFICATION**

Section 8.1 Limitation of Director Liability. A director of the Corporation shall not be personally liable to the Corporation or its stockholders for monetary damages for breach of fiduciary duty as a director, except to the extent such exemption from liability or limitation thereof is not permitted under the DGCL as the same exists or may hereafter be amended unless they violated their duty of loyalty to the Corporation or its stockholders, acted in bad faith, knowingly or intentionally violated the law, authorized unlawful payments of dividends, unlawful stock purchases or unlawful redemptions, or derived improper personal benefit from their actions as directors. Any amendment, modification or repeal of the foregoing sentence shall not adversely affect any right or protection of a director of the Corporation hereunder in respect of any act or omission occurring prior to the time of such amendment, modification or repeal.

Section 8.2 Indemnification and Advancement of Expenses.

(a) To the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, as the same exists or may hereafter be amended, the Corporation shall indemnify and hold harmless each person who is or was made a party or is threatened to be made a party to or is otherwise involved in any threatened, pending or completed action, suit or proceeding, whether civil, criminal, administrative or investigative (a “*proceeding*”) by reason of the fact that he or she is or was a director or officer of the Corporation or, while a director or officer of the Corporation, is or was serving at the request of the Corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation or of a partnership, joint venture, trust, other enterprise or nonprofit entity, including service with respect to an employee benefit plan (an “*indemnitee*”), whether the basis of such proceeding is alleged action in an official capacity as a director, officer, employee or agent, or in any other capacity while serving as a director, officer, employee or agent, against all liability and loss suffered and expenses (including, without limitation, attorneys’ fees, judgments, fines, ERISA excise taxes and penalties and amounts paid in settlement) reasonably incurred by such indemnitee in connection with such proceeding. The Corporation shall to the fullest extent not prohibited by applicable law pay the expenses (including attorneys’ fees) incurred by an indemnitee in defending or otherwise participating in any proceeding in advance of its final disposition; provided, however, that, to the extent required by applicable law, such payment of expenses in advance of the final disposition of the proceeding shall be made only upon receipt of an undertaking, by or on behalf of the indemnitee, to repay all amounts so advanced if it shall ultimately be determined that the indemnitee is not entitled to be indemnified under this Section 8.2 or otherwise. The rights to indemnification and advancement of expenses conferred by this Section 8.2 shall be contract rights and such rights shall continue as to an indemnitee who has ceased to be a director, officer, employee or agent and shall inure to the benefit of his or her heirs, executors and administrators. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section 8.2(a), except for proceedings to enforce rights to indemnification and advancement of expenses, the Corporation shall indemnify and advance expenses to an indemnitee in connection with a proceeding (or part thereof) initiated by such indemnitee only if such proceeding (or part thereof) was authorized by the Board.

(b) The rights to indemnification and advancement of expenses conferred on any indemnitee by this Section 8.2 shall not be exclusive of any other rights that any indemnitee may have or hereafter acquire under law, this Second Amended and Restated Certificate, the By Laws, an agreement, vote of stockholders or disinterested directors, or otherwise.

(c) Any repeal or amendment of this Section 8.2 by the stockholders of the Corporation or by changes in law, or the adoption of any other provision of this Second Amended and Restated Certificate inconsistent with this Section 8.2, shall, unless otherwise required by law, be prospective only (except to the extent such amendment or change in law permits the Corporation to provide broader indemnification rights on a retroactive basis than permitted prior thereto), and shall not in any way diminish or adversely affect any right or protection existing at the time of such repeal or amendment or adoption of such inconsistent provision in respect of any proceeding (regardless of when such proceeding is first threatened, commenced or completed) arising out of, or related to, any act or omission occurring prior to such repeal or amendment or adoption of such inconsistent provision.

(d) This Section 8.2 shall not limit the right of the Corporation, to the extent and in the manner authorized or permitted by law, to indemnify and to advance expenses to persons other than indemnitees.

## ARTICLE IX BUSINESS COMBINATION REQUIREMENTS; EXISTENCE

### Section 9.1 General.

(a) The provisions of this *Article IX* shall apply during the period commencing upon the effectiveness of this Second Amended and Restated Certificate and terminating upon the consummation of the Corporation's initial Business Combination and no amendment to this *Article IX* shall be effective prior to the consummation of the initial Business Combination unless approved by the affirmative vote of the holders of at least sixty-five percent (65%) of all then outstanding shares of the Common Stock.

(b) Immediately after the Offering, a certain amount of the net offering proceeds received by the Corporation in the Offering (including the proceeds of any exercise of the underwriters' over-allotment option) and certain other amounts specified in the Corporation's registration statement on Form S-1, as initially filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the "**SEC**") on April [ ], 2020 (the "**Registration Statement**"), shall be deposited in a trust account (the "**Trust Account**"), established for the benefit of the Public Stockholders (as defined below) pursuant to a trust agreement described in the Registration Statement. Except for the withdrawal of interest to pay franchise and income taxes, none of the funds held in the Trust Account (including the interest earned on the funds held in the Trust Account) will be released from the Trust Account until the earliest to occur of (i) the completion of the initial Business Combination, (ii) the redemption of 100% of the Offering Shares (as defined below) if the Corporation is unable to complete its initial Business Combination within 24 months from the closing of the Offering and (iii) the redemption of shares in connection with a vote seeking to amend any provisions of the Second Amended and Restated Certificate relating to stockholders' rights or pre-initial Business Combination activity (as described in Section 9.7). Holders of shares of Common Stock included as part of the units sold in the Offering (the "**Offering Shares**") (whether such Offering Shares were purchased in the Offering or in the secondary market following the Offering and whether or not such holders are the Sponsor or officers or directors of the Corporation, or affiliates of any of the foregoing) are referred to herein as "**Public Stockholders**."

## Section 9.2 Redemption Rights.

(a) Prior to the consummation of the initial Business Combination, the Corporation shall provide all holders of Offering Shares with the opportunity to have their Offering Shares redeemed upon the consummation of the initial Business Combination pursuant to, and subject to the limitations of, Section 9.2(b) and 9.2(c) (such rights of such holders to have their Offering Shares redeemed pursuant to such Sections, the “**Redemption Rights**”) hereof for cash equal to the applicable redemption price per share determined in accordance with Section 9.2(b) hereof (the “**Redemption Price**”); provided, however, that the Corporation shall not redeem Offering Shares in an amount that would cause the Corporation to have net tangible assets to be less than \$5,000,001 (such limitation hereinafter called the “**Redemption Limitation**”). Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in this Second Amended and Restated Certificate, there shall be no Redemption Rights or liquidating distributions with respect to any warrant issued pursuant to the Offering.

(b) If the Corporation offers to redeem the Offering Shares other than in conjunction with a stockholder vote on an initial Business Combination with a proxy solicitation pursuant to Regulation 14A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “**Exchange Act**”) (or any successor rules or regulations) and filing proxy materials with the SEC, the Corporation shall offer to redeem the Offering Shares upon the consummation of the initial Business Combination, subject to lawfully available funds therefor, in accordance with the provisions of Section 9.2(a) hereof pursuant to a tender offer in accordance with Rule 13e-4 and Regulation 14E of the Exchange Act (or any successor rule or regulation) (such rules and regulations hereinafter called the “**Tender Offer Rules**”) which it shall commence prior to the consummation of the initial Business Combination and shall file tender offer documents with the SEC prior to the consummation of the initial Business Combination that contain substantially the same financial and other information about the initial Business Combination and the Redemption Rights as is required under Regulation 14A of the Exchange Act (or any successor rule or regulation) (such rules and regulations hereinafter called the “**Proxy Solicitation Rules**”), even if such information is not required under the Tender Offer Rules; provided, however, that if a stockholder vote is required by law to approve the proposed initial Business Combination, or the Corporation decides to submit the proposed initial Business Combination to the stockholders for their approval for business or other legal reasons, the Corporation shall offer to redeem the Offering Shares, subject to lawfully available funds therefor, in accordance with the provisions of Section 9.2(a) hereof in conjunction with a proxy solicitation pursuant to the Proxy Solicitation Rules (and not the Tender Offer Rules) at a price per share equal to the Redemption Price calculated in accordance with the following provisions of this Section 9.2(b). In the event that the Corporation offers to redeem the Offering Shares pursuant to a tender offer in accordance with the Tender Offer Rules, the Redemption Price per share of the Common Stock payable to holders of the Offering Shares tendering their Offering Shares pursuant to such tender offer shall be equal to the quotient obtained by dividing: (i) the aggregate amount on deposit in the Trust Account as of two business days prior to the consummation of the initial Business Combination, including interest not previously released to the Corporation to pay its franchise and income taxes, by (ii) the total number of then outstanding Offering Shares. If the Corporation offers to redeem the Offering Shares in conjunction with a stockholder vote on the proposed initial Business Combination pursuant to a proxy solicitation, the Redemption Price per share of the Common Stock payable to holders of the Offering Shares exercising their Redemption Rights (irrespective of whether they voted in favor or against the Business Combination) shall be equal to the quotient obtained by dividing (a) the aggregate amount on deposit in the Trust Account as of two business days prior to the consummation of the initial Business Combination, including interest not previously released to the Corporation to pay its franchise and income taxes, by (b) the total number of then outstanding Offering Shares.

(c) If the Corporation offers to redeem the Offering Shares in conjunction with a stockholder vote on an initial Business Combination pursuant to a proxy solicitation, a Public Stockholder, together with any affiliate of such stockholder or any other person with whom such stockholder is acting in concert or as a “**group**” (as defined under Section 13(d)(3) of the Exchange Act), shall be restricted from seeking Redemption Rights with respect to more than an aggregate of 20% of the Offering Shares without the prior consent of the Corporation.

(d) In the event that the Corporation has not consummated an initial Business Combination within 24 months from the closing of the Offering, the Corporation shall (i) cease all operations except for the purpose of winding up, (ii) as promptly as reasonably possible but not more than ten business days thereafter subject to lawfully available funds therefor, redeem 100% of the Offering Shares in consideration of a per-share price, payable in cash, equal to the quotient obtained by dividing (A) the aggregate amount then on deposit in the Trust Account, including interest not previously released to the Corporation to pay its franchise and income taxes (less up to \$100,000 of such net interest to pay dissolution expenses), by (B) the total number of then outstanding Offering Shares, which redemption will completely extinguish rights of the Public Stockholders (including the right to receive further liquidating distributions, if any), subject to applicable law, and (iii) as promptly as reasonably possible following such redemption, subject to the approval of the remaining stockholders and the Board in accordance with applicable law, dissolve and liquidate, subject in each case to the Corporation’s obligations under the DGCL to provide for claims of creditors and other requirements of applicable law.

(e) If the Corporation offers to redeem the Offering Shares in conjunction with a stockholder vote on an initial Business Combination, the Corporation shall consummate the proposed initial Business Combination only if (i) such initial Business Combination is approved by the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the shares of the Common Stock that are voted at a stockholder meeting held to consider such initial Business Combination and (ii) the Redemption Limitation is not exceeded.

(f) If the Corporation conducts a tender offer pursuant to Section 9.2(b), the Corporation shall consummate the proposed initial Business Combination only if the Redemption Limitation is not exceeded.

Section 9.3 Distributions from the Trust Account.

(a) A Public Stockholder shall be entitled to receive funds from the Trust Account only as provided in Sections 9.2(a), 9.2(b), 9.2(c) or 9.7 hereof. In no other circumstances shall a Public Stockholder have any right or interest of any kind in or to distributions from the Trust Account, and no stockholder other than a Public Stockholder shall have any interest in or to the Trust Account.

(b) Each Public Stockholder that does not exercise its Redemption Rights shall retain its interest in the Corporation and shall be deemed to have given its consent to the release of the remaining funds in the Trust Account to the Corporation, and following payment to any Public Stockholders exercising their Redemption Rights, the remaining funds in the Trust Account shall be released to the Corporation.

(c) The exercise by a Public Stockholder of the Redemption Rights shall be conditioned on such Public Stockholder following the specific procedures for redemptions set forth by the Corporation in any applicable tender offer or proxy materials sent to the Public Stockholders relating to the proposed initial Business Combination. Payment of the amounts necessary to satisfy the Redemption Rights properly exercised shall be made as promptly as practical after the consummation of the initial Business Combination.

Section 9.4 Share Issuances. Prior to the consummation of the Corporation's initial Business Combination, the Corporation shall not issue any additional shares of capital stock of the Corporation that would entitle the holders thereof to receive funds from the Trust Account or vote on any initial Business Combination, on any pre-Business Combination activity or on any amendment to this *Article IX*.

Section 9.5 Transactions with Affiliates. In the event the Corporation enters into an initial Business Combination with a target business that is affiliated with the Sponsor, or the directors or officers of the Corporation, the Corporation, or a committee of the independent directors of the Corporation, shall obtain an opinion from an independent accounting firm or an independent investment banking firm that is a member of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority that such Business Combination is fair to the Corporation from a financial point of view.

Section 9.6 No Transactions with Other Blank Check Companies. The Corporation shall not enter into an initial Business Combination with another blank check company or a similar company with nominal operations.

Section 9.7 Additional Redemption Rights. If, in accordance with Section 9.1(a), any amendment is made to this Second Amended and Restated Certificate (a) to modify the substance or timing of the Corporation's obligation to redeem 100% of the Offering Shares if the Corporation has not consummated an initial Business Combination within 24 months from the date of the closing of the Offering or to provide for redemption in connection with an initial Business Combination, the Public Stockholders shall be provided with the opportunity to redeem their Offering Shares upon the approval of any such amendment, at a per-share price, payable in cash, equal to the aggregate amount then on deposit in the Trust Account, including interest not previously released to the Corporation to pay its franchise and income taxes, divided by the number of then outstanding Offering Shares; provided, however, that any such amendment will be voided, and this *Article IX* will remain unchanged, if any stockholders who wish to redeem are unable to redeem due to the Redemption Limitation.

**ARTICLE X  
CORPORATE OPPORTUNITY**

To the extent allowed by law, the doctrine of corporate opportunity, or any other analogous doctrine, shall not apply with respect to the Corporation or any of its officers or directors, or any of their respective affiliates, in circumstances where the application of any such doctrine would conflict with any fiduciary duties or contractual obligations they may have as of the date of this Second Amended and Restated Certificate or in the future, and the Corporation renounces any expectancy that any of the directors or officers of the Corporation will offer any such corporate opportunity of which he or she may become aware to the Corporation, except, the doctrine of corporate opportunity shall apply with respect to any of the directors or officers of the Corporation with respect to a corporate opportunity that was offered to such person solely in his or her capacity as a director or officer of the Corporation and (i) such opportunity is one the Corporation is legally and contractually permitted to undertake and would otherwise be reasonable for the Corporation to pursue and (ii) the director or officer is permitted to refer that opportunity to the Corporation without violating any legal obligation.

**ARTICLE XI  
AMENDMENT OF SECOND AMENDED AND RESTATED CERTIFICATE OF INCORPORATION**

The Corporation reserves the right at any time and from time to time to amend, alter, change or repeal any provision contained in this Second Amended and Restated Certificate (including any Preferred Stock Designation), and other provisions authorized by the laws of the State of Delaware at the time in force that may be added or inserted, in the manner now or hereafter prescribed by this Second Amended and Restated Certificate and the DGCL; and, except as set forth in *Article VIII*, all rights, preferences and privileges of whatever nature herein conferred upon stockholders, directors or any other persons by and pursuant to this Second Amended and Restated Certificate in its present form or as hereafter amended are granted subject to the right reserved in this *Article XI*; provided, however, that *Article IX* of this Second Amended and Restated Certificate may be amended only as provided therein.

**ARTICLE XII  
EXCLUSIVE FORUM FOR CERTAIN LAWSUITS**

Section 12.1 Forum. Unless the Corporation consents in writing to the selection of an alternative forum, the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware (the “*Court of Chancery*”) shall be the sole and exclusive forum for any stockholder (including a beneficial owner) to bring (i) any derivative action or proceeding brought on behalf of the Corporation, (ii) any action asserting a claim of breach of a fiduciary duty owed by any director, officer or other employee of the Corporation to the Corporation or the Corporation’s stockholders, (iii) any action asserting a claim against the Corporation, its directors, officers or employees arising pursuant to any provision of the DGCL or this Second Amended and Restated Certificate or the By Laws, or (iv) any action asserting a claim against the Corporation, its directors, officers or employees governed by the internal affairs doctrine and, if brought outside of Delaware, the stockholder bringing the suit will be deemed to have consented to service of process on such stockholder’s counsel, except for, as to each of (i) through (iv) above, any claim (A) as to which the Court of Chancery determines that there is an indispensable party not subject to the jurisdiction of the Court of Chancery (and the indispensable party does not consent to the personal jurisdiction of the Court of Chancery within ten days following such determination), (B) which is vested in the exclusive jurisdiction of a court or forum other than the Court of Chancery, (C) for which the Court of Chancery does not have subject matter jurisdiction, or (D) any action arising under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, as to which the Court of Chancery and the federal district court for the District of Delaware shall have concurrent jurisdiction. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the provisions of this Section 12.1 will not apply to suits brought to enforce a duty or liability created by the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or any other claim for which the federal courts have exclusive jurisdiction. Any person or entity purchasing or otherwise acquiring any interest in any security of the Corporation shall be deemed to have notice of and consented to the provisions of this section.

Section 12.2 Consent to Jurisdiction. If any action the subject matter of which is within the scope of Section 12.1 immediately above is filed in a court other than a court located within the State of Delaware (a “ **Foreign Action** ”) in the name of any stockholder, such stockholder shall be deemed to have consented to (i) the personal jurisdiction of the state and federal courts located within the State of Delaware in connection with any action brought in any such court to enforce Section 12.1 immediately above (an “ **FSC Enforcement Action** ”) and (ii) having service of process made upon such stockholder in any such FSC Enforcement Action by service upon such stockholder’s counsel in the Foreign Action as agent for such stockholder.

Section 12.3 Severability. If any provision or provisions of this *Article XII* shall be held to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable as applied to any person or entity or circumstance for any reason whatsoever, then, to the fullest extent permitted by law, the validity, legality and enforceability of such provisions in any other circumstance and of the remaining provisions of this *Article XII* (including, without limitation, each portion of any sentence of this *Article XII* containing any such provision held to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable that is not itself held to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable) and the application of such provision to other persons or entities and circumstances shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby. Any person or entity purchasing or otherwise acquiring any interest in shares of capital stock of the Corporation shall be deemed to have notice of and consented to the provisions of this *Article XII* .

*[Remainder of page intentionally left blank]*

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II has caused this Second Amended and Restated Certificate to be duly executed and acknowledged in its name and on its behalf by an authorized officer as of the date first set forth above.

**B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: Daniel Shribman  
Title: Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial  
Officer

[ *Signature Page to Second Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation* ]

---

BY LAWS  
OF  
B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II  
(THE “CORPORATION”)

ARTICLE I

OFFICES

**Section 1.1. Registered Office** . The registered office of the Corporation within the State of Delaware shall be located at either (a) the principal place of business of the Corporation in the State of Delaware or (b) the office of the corporation or individual acting as the Corporation’s registered agent in Delaware.

**Section 1.2. Additional Offices** . The Corporation may, in addition to its registered office in the State of Delaware, have such other offices and places of business, both within and outside the State of Delaware, as the Board of Directors of the Corporation (the “ **Board** ”) may from time to time determine or as the business and affairs of the Corporation may require.

ARTICLE II

STOCKHOLDERS MEETINGS

**Section 2.1. Annual Meetings** . The annual meeting of stockholders shall be held at such place, either within or without the State of Delaware, and time and on such date as shall be determined by the Board and stated in the notice of the meeting, provided that the Board may in its sole discretion determine that the meeting shall not be held at any place, but may instead be held solely by means of remote communication pursuant to Section 9.5(a). At each annual meeting, the stockholders entitled to vote on such matters shall elect those directors of the Corporation to fill any term of a directorship that expires on the date of such annual meeting and may transact any other business as may properly be brought before the meeting.

**Section 2.2. Special Meetings** . Subject to the rights of the holders of any outstanding series of the preferred stock of the Corporation (“ **Preferred Stock** ”), and to the requirements of applicable law, special meetings of stockholders, for any purpose or purposes, may be called only by the Chairman of the Board, Chief Executive Officer, or the Board pursuant to a resolution adopted by a majority of the Board, and may not be called by any other person. Special meetings of stockholders shall be held at such place, either within or without the State of Delaware, and at such time and on such date as shall be determined by the Board and stated in the Corporation’s notice of the meeting, provided that the Board may in its sole discretion determine that the meeting shall not be held at any place, but may instead be held solely by means of remote communication pursuant to Section 9.5(a).

**Section 2.3. Notices**. Written notice of each stockholders meeting stating the place, if any, date, and time of the meeting, and the means of remote communication, if any, by which stockholders and proxy holders may be deemed to be present in person and vote at such meeting and the record date for determining the stockholders entitled to vote at the meeting, if such date is different from the record date for determining stockholders entitled to notice of the meeting, shall be given in the manner permitted by Section 9.3 to each stockholder entitled to vote thereat as of the record date for determining the stockholders entitled to notice of the meeting, by the Corporation not less than 10 nor more than 60 days before the date of the meeting unless otherwise required by the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware (the “ **DGCL** ”). If said notice is for a stockholders meeting other than an annual meeting, it shall in addition state the purpose or purposes for which the meeting is called, and the business transacted at such meeting shall be limited to the matters so stated in the Corporation’s notice of meeting (or any supplement thereto). Any meeting of stockholders as to which notice has been given may be postponed, and any meeting of stockholders as to which notice has been given may be cancelled, by the Board upon public announcement (as defined in Section 2.7(c)) given before the date previously scheduled for such meeting.

---



**Section 2.4. Quorum** . Except as otherwise provided by applicable law, the Corporation's Certificate of Incorporation, as the same may be amended or restated from time to time (the "**Certificate of Incorporation** ") or these By Laws, the presence, in person or by proxy, at a stockholders meeting of the holders of shares of outstanding capital stock of the Corporation representing a majority of the voting power of all outstanding shares of capital stock of the Corporation entitled to vote at such meeting shall constitute a quorum for the transaction of business at such meeting, except that when specified business is to be voted on by a class or series of stock voting as a class, the holders of shares representing a majority of the voting power of the outstanding shares of such class or series shall constitute a quorum of such class or series for the transaction of such business. If a quorum shall not be present or represented by proxy at any meeting of the stockholders of the Corporation, the chairman of the meeting may adjourn the meeting from time to time in the manner provided in Section 2.6 until a quorum shall attend. The stockholders present at a duly convened meeting may continue to transact business until adjournment, notwithstanding the withdrawal of enough stockholders to leave less than a quorum. Shares of its own stock belonging to the Corporation or to another corporation, if a majority of the voting power of the shares entitled to vote in the election of directors of such other corporation is held, directly or indirectly, by the Corporation, shall neither be entitled to vote nor be counted for quorum purposes; provided, however, that the foregoing shall not limit the right of the Corporation or any such other corporation to vote shares held by it in a fiduciary capacity.

#### **Section 2.5. Voting of Shares** .

(a) Voting Lists . The Secretary of the Corporation (the "**Secretary** ") shall prepare, or shall cause the officer or agent who has charge of the stock ledger of the Corporation to prepare and make, at least 10 days before every meeting of stockholders, a complete list of the stockholders of record entitled to vote at such meeting; provided, however, that if the record date for determining the stockholders entitled to vote is less than 10 days before the meeting date, the list shall reflect the stockholders entitled to vote as of the tenth day before the meeting date, arranged in alphabetical order and showing the address and the number and class of shares registered in the name of each stockholder. Nothing contained in this Section 2.5(a) shall require the Corporation to include electronic mail addresses or other electronic contact information on such list. Such list shall be open to the examination of any stockholder, for any purpose germane to the meeting, during ordinary business hours for a period of at least 10 days prior to the meeting: (i) on a reasonably accessible electronic network, provided that the information required to gain access to such list is provided with the notice of the meeting, or (ii) during ordinary business hours, at the principal place of business of the Corporation. In the event that the Corporation determines to make the list available on an electronic network, the Corporation may take reasonable steps to ensure that such information is available only to stockholders of the Corporation. If the meeting is to be held at a place, then the list shall be produced and kept at the time and place of the meeting during the whole time thereof, and may be inspected by any stockholder who is present. If a meeting of stockholders is to be held solely by means of remote communication as permitted by Section 9.5(a), the list shall be open to the examination of any stockholder during the whole time of the meeting on a reasonably accessible electronic network, and the information required to access such list shall be provided with the notice of meeting. The stock ledger shall be the only evidence as to who are the stockholders entitled to examine the list required by this Section 2.5(a) or to vote in person or by proxy at any meeting of stockholders.

(b) Manner of Voting . At any stockholders meeting, every stockholder entitled to vote may vote in person or by proxy. If authorized by the Board, the voting by stockholders or proxy holders at any meeting conducted by remote communication may be effected by a ballot submitted by electronic transmission (as defined in Section 9.3 ), provided that any such electronic transmission must either set forth or be submitted with information from which the Corporation can determine that the electronic transmission was authorized by the stockholder or proxy holder. The Board, in its discretion, or the chairman of the meeting of stockholders, in such person's discretion, may require that any votes cast at such meeting shall be cast by written ballot.

(c) Proxies . Each stockholder entitled to vote at a meeting of stockholders or to express consent or dissent to corporate action in writing without a meeting may authorize another person or persons to act for such stockholder by proxy, but no such proxy shall be voted or acted upon after three years from its date, unless the proxy provides for a longer period. Proxies need not be filed with the Secretary until the meeting is called to order, but shall be filed with the Secretary before being voted. Without limiting the manner in which a stockholder may authorize another person or persons to act for such stockholder as proxy, either of the following shall constitute a valid means by which a stockholder may grant such authority. No stockholder shall have cumulative voting rights.

(i) A stockholder may execute a writing authorizing another person or persons to act for such stockholder as proxy. Execution may be accomplished by the stockholder or such stockholder's authorized officer, director, employee or agent signing such writing or causing such person's signature to be affixed to such writing by any reasonable means, including, but not limited to, by facsimile signature.

(ii) A stockholder may authorize another person or persons to act for such stockholder as proxy by transmitting or authorizing the transmission of an electronic transmission to the person who will be the holder of the proxy or to a proxy solicitation firm, proxy support service organization or like agent duly authorized by the person who will be the holder of the proxy to receive such transmission, provided that any such electronic transmission must either set forth or be submitted with information from which it can be determined that the electronic transmission was authorized by the stockholder. Any copy, facsimile telecommunication or other reliable reproduction of the writing or transmission authorizing another person or persons to act as proxy for a stockholder may be substituted or used in lieu of the original writing or transmission for any and all purposes for which the original writing or transmission could be used; provided that such copy, facsimile telecommunication or other reproduction shall be a complete reproduction of the entire original writing or transmission.

(d) Required Vote. Subject to the rights of the holders of one or more series of Preferred Stock, voting separately by class or series, to elect directors pursuant to the terms of one or more series of Preferred Stock, at all meetings of stockholders at which a quorum is present, the election of directors shall be determined by a plurality of the votes cast by the stockholders present in person or represented by proxy at the meeting and entitled to vote thereon. All other matters presented to the stockholders at a meeting at which a quorum is present shall be determined by the vote of a majority of the votes cast by the stockholders present in person or represented by proxy at the meeting and entitled to vote thereon, unless the matter is one upon which, by applicable law, the Certificate of Incorporation, these By Laws or applicable stock exchange rules, a different vote is required, in which case such provision shall govern and control the decision of such matter.

(e) Inspectors of Election. The Board may, and shall if required by law, in advance of any meeting of stockholders, appoint one or more persons as inspectors of election, who may be employees of the Corporation or otherwise serve the Corporation in other capacities, to act at such meeting of stockholders or any adjournment thereof and to make a written report thereof. The Board may appoint one or more persons as alternate inspectors to replace any inspector who fails to act. If no inspectors of election or alternates are appointed by the Board, the chairman of the meeting shall appoint one or more inspectors to act at the meeting. Each inspector, before discharging his or her duties, shall take and sign an oath faithfully to execute the duties of inspector with strict impartiality and according to the best of his or her ability. The inspectors shall ascertain and report the number of outstanding shares and the voting power of each; determine the number of shares present in person or represented by proxy at the meeting and the validity of proxies and ballots; count all votes and ballots and report the results; determine and retain for a reasonable period a record of the disposition of any challenges made to any determination by the inspectors; and certify their determination of the number of shares represented at the meeting and their count of all votes and ballots. No person who is a candidate for an office at an election may serve as an inspector at such election. Each report of an inspector shall be in writing and signed by the inspector or by a majority of them if there is more than one inspector acting at such meeting. If there is more than one inspector, the report of a majority shall be the report of the inspectors.

**Section 2.6. Adjournments** . Any meeting of stockholders, annual or special, may be adjourned by the chairman of the meeting, from time to time, whether or not there is a quorum, to reconvene at the same or some other place. Notice need not be given of any such adjourned meeting if the date, time, and place, if any, thereof, and the means of remote communication, if any, by which stockholders and proxy holders may be deemed to be present in person and vote at such adjourned meeting are announced at the meeting at which the adjournment is taken. At the adjourned meeting the stockholders, or the holders of any class or series of stock entitled to vote separately as a class, as the case may be, may transact any business that might have been transacted at the original meeting. If the adjournment is for more than 30 days, notice of the adjourned meeting shall be given to each stockholder of record entitled to vote at the meeting. If after the adjournment a new record date for stockholders entitled to vote is fixed for the adjourned meeting, the Board shall fix a new record date for notice of such adjourned meeting in accordance with Section 9.2, and shall give notice of the adjourned meeting to each stockholder of record entitled to vote at such adjourned meeting as of the record date fixed for notice of such adjourned meeting.

## Section 2.7. Advance Notice for Business .

(a) Annual Meetings of Stockholders . No business may be transacted at an annual meeting of stockholders, other than business that is either (i) specified in the Corporation's notice of meeting (or any supplement thereto) given by or at the direction of the Board, (ii) otherwise properly brought before the annual meeting by or at the direction of the Board or (iii) otherwise properly brought before the annual meeting by any stockholder of the Corporation (x) who is a stockholder of record entitled to vote at such annual meeting on the date of the giving of the notice provided for in this Section 2.7(a), and on the record date for the determination of stockholders entitled to vote at such annual meeting and (y) who complies with the notice procedures set forth in this Section 2.7(a). Notwithstanding anything in this Section 2.7(a) to the contrary, only persons nominated for election as a director to fill any term of a directorship that expires on the date of the annual meeting pursuant to Section 3.2 will be considered for election at such meeting.

(i) In addition to any other applicable requirements, for business (other than nominations) to be properly brought before an annual meeting by a stockholder, such stockholder must have given timely notice thereof in proper written form to the Secretary and such business must otherwise be a proper matter for stockholder action. Subject to Section 2.7(a)(iii), a stockholder's notice to the Secretary with respect to such business, to be timely, must be received by the Secretary at the principal executive offices of the Corporation not later than the close of business on the 90th day nor earlier than the opening of business on the 120th day before the anniversary date of the immediately preceding annual meeting of stockholders; provided, however, that in the event that the annual meeting is more than 30 days before or more than 60 days after such anniversary date, notice by the stockholder to be timely must be so delivered not earlier than the close of business on the 120th day before the meeting and not later than the later of (x) the close of business on the 90th day before the meeting or (y) the close of business on the 10th day following the day on which public announcement of the date of the annual meeting is first made by the Corporation. The public announcement of an adjournment or postponement of an annual meeting shall not commence a new time period (or extend any time period) for the giving of a stockholder's notice as described in this Section 2.7(a).

(ii) To be in proper written form, a stockholder's notice to the Secretary with respect to any business (other than nominations) must set forth as to each such matter such stockholder proposes to bring before the annual meeting (A) a brief description of the business desired to be brought before the annual meeting, the text of the proposal or business (including the text of any resolutions proposed for consideration and in the event such business includes a proposal to amend these By Laws, the language of the proposed amendment) and the reasons for conducting such business at the annual meeting, (B) the name and record address of such stockholder and the name and address of the beneficial owner, if any, on whose behalf the proposal is made, (C) the class or series and number of shares of capital stock of the Corporation that are owned beneficially and of record by such stockholder and by the beneficial owner, if any, on whose behalf the proposal is made, (D) a description of all arrangements or understandings between such stockholder and the beneficial owner, if any, on whose behalf the proposal is made and any other person or persons (including their names) in connection with the proposal of such business by such stockholder, (E) any material interest of such stockholder and the beneficial owner, if any, on whose behalf the proposal is made in such business and (F) a representation that such stockholder (or a qualified representative of such stockholder) intends to appear in person or by proxy at the annual meeting to bring such business before the meeting.

(iii) The foregoing notice requirements of this Section 2.7(a) shall be deemed satisfied by a stockholder as to any proposal (other than nominations) if the stockholder has notified the Corporation of such stockholder's intention to present such proposal at an annual meeting in compliance with Rule 14a-8 (or any successor thereof) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "**Exchange Act**"), and such stockholder has complied with the requirements of such Rule for inclusion of such proposal in a proxy statement prepared by the Corporation to solicit proxies for such annual meeting. No business shall be conducted at the annual meeting of stockholders except business brought before the annual meeting in accordance with the procedures set forth in this Section 2.7(a), provided, however, that once business has been properly brought before the annual meeting in accordance with such procedures, nothing in this Section 2.7(a) shall be deemed to preclude discussion by any stockholder of any such business. If the Board or the chairman of the annual meeting determines that any stockholder proposal was not made in accordance with the provisions of this Section 2.7(a) or that the information provided in a stockholder's notice does not satisfy the information requirements of this Section 2.7(a), such proposal shall not be presented for action at the annual meeting. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section 2.7(a), if the stockholder (or a qualified representative of the stockholder) does not appear at the annual meeting of stockholders of the Corporation to present the proposed business, such proposed business shall not be transacted, notwithstanding that proxies in respect of such matter may have been received by the Corporation.

(iv) In addition to the provisions of this Section 2.7(a), a stockholder shall also comply with all applicable requirements of the Exchange Act and the rules and regulations thereunder with respect to the matters set forth herein. Nothing in this Section 2.7(a) shall be deemed to affect any rights of stockholders to request inclusion of proposals in the Corporation's proxy statement pursuant to Rule 14a-8 under the Exchange Act.

(b) Special Meetings of Stockholders. Only such business shall be conducted at a special meeting of stockholders as shall have been brought before the meeting pursuant to the Corporation's notice of meeting. Nominations of persons for election to the Board may be made at a special meeting of stockholders at which directors are to be elected pursuant to the Corporation's notice of meeting only pursuant to Section 3.2.

(c) Public Announcement. For purposes of these By Laws, "**public announcement**" shall mean disclosure in a press release reported by the Dow Jones News Service, Associated Press or comparable national news service or in a document publicly filed by the Corporation with the Securities and Exchange Commission pursuant to Sections 13, 14 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act (or any successor thereto).

**Section 2.8. Conduct of Meetings**. The chairman of each annual and special meeting of stockholders shall be the Chairman of the Board or, in the absence (or inability or refusal to act) of the Chairman of the Board, the Chief Executive Officer (if he or she shall be a director) or, in the absence (or inability or refusal to act) of the Chief Executive Officer or if the Chief Executive Officer is not a director, the President (if he or she shall be a director) or, in the absence (or inability or refusal to act) of the President or if the President is not a director, such other person as shall be appointed by the Board. The date and time of the opening and the closing of the polls for each matter upon which the stockholders will vote at a meeting shall be announced at the meeting by the chairman of the meeting. The Board may adopt such rules and regulations for the conduct of the meeting of stockholders as it shall deem appropriate. Except to the extent inconsistent with these By Laws or such rules and regulations as adopted by the Board, the chairman of any meeting of stockholders shall have the right and authority to convene and to adjourn the meeting, to prescribe such rules, regulations and procedures and to do all such acts as, in the judgment of such chairman, are appropriate for the proper conduct of the meeting. Such rules, regulations or procedures, whether adopted by the Board or prescribed by the chairman of the meeting, may include, without limitation, the following: (a) the establishment of an agenda or order of business for the meeting; (b) rules and procedures for maintaining order at the meeting and the safety of those present; (c) limitations on attendance at or participation in the meeting to stockholders of record of the Corporation, their duly authorized and constituted proxies or such other persons as the chairman of the meeting shall determine; (d) restrictions on entry to the meeting after the time fixed for the commencement thereof; and (e) limitations on the time allotted to questions or comments by participants. Unless and to the extent determined by the Board or the chairman of the meeting, meetings of stockholders shall not be required to be held in accordance with the rules of parliamentary procedure. The secretary of each annual and special meeting of stockholders shall be the Secretary or, in the absence (or inability or refusal to act) of the Secretary, an Assistant Secretary so appointed to act by the chairman of the meeting. In the absence (or inability or refusal to act) of the Secretary and all Assistant Secretaries, the chairman of the meeting may appoint any person to act as secretary of the meeting.

**Section 2.9. Consents in Lieu of Meeting**. Unless otherwise provided by the Certificate of Incorporation, until the Corporation consummates an initial public offering ("**Offering**"), any action required to be taken at any annual or special meeting of stockholders, or any action which may be taken at any annual or special meeting of such stockholders, may be taken without a meeting, without prior notice and without a vote, if a consent in writing, setting forth the action so taken, shall be signed by the holders of outstanding stock entitled to vote thereon having not less than the minimum number of votes that would be necessary to authorize or take such action at a meeting at which all shares entitled to vote thereon were present and voted, and shall be delivered to the Corporation by delivery to its registered office in the State of Delaware, its principal place of business, or an officer or agent of the Corporation having custody of the book in which proceedings of meetings of stockholders are recorded. Delivery made to the Corporation's registered office shall be by hand or by certified or registered mail, return receipt requested.

Every written consent shall bear the date of signature of each stockholder who signs the consent, and no written consent shall be effective to take the corporate action referred to therein unless, within 60 days of the earliest dated consent delivered in the manner required by this section and the DGCL to the Corporation, written consents signed by a sufficient number of holders entitled to vote to take action are delivered to the Corporation by delivery to its registered office in Delaware, its principal place of business or an officer or agent of the Corporation having custody of the book in which proceedings of meetings of stockholders are recorded. Delivery made to the Corporation's registered office shall be by hand or by certified or registered mail, return receipt requested.

### ARTICLE III

#### DIRECTORS

**Section 3.1. Powers; Number .** The business and affairs of the Corporation shall be managed by or under the direction of the Board, which may exercise all such powers of the Corporation and do all such lawful acts and things as are not by statute or by the Certificate of Incorporation or by these By Laws required to be exercised or done by the stockholders. Directors need not be stockholders or residents of the State of Delaware. Subject to the Certificate of Incorporation, the number of directors shall be fixed exclusively by resolution of the Board.

#### **Section 3.2. Advance Notice for Nomination of Directors .**

(a) Only persons who are nominated in accordance with the following procedures shall be eligible for election as directors of the Corporation, except as may be otherwise provided by the terms of one or more series of Preferred Stock with respect to the rights of holders of one or more series of Preferred Stock to elect directors. Nominations of persons for election to the Board at any annual meeting of stockholders, or at any special meeting of stockholders called for the purpose of electing directors as set forth in the Corporation's notice of such special meeting, may be made (i) by or at the direction of the Board or (ii) by any stockholder of the Corporation (x) who is a stockholder of record entitled to vote in the election of directors on the date of the giving of the notice provided for in this Section 3.2 and on the record date for the determination of stockholders entitled to vote at such meeting and (y) who complies with the notice procedures set forth in this Section 3.2.

(b) In addition to any other applicable requirements, for a nomination to be made by a stockholder, such stockholder must have given timely notice thereof in proper written form to the Secretary. To be timely, a stockholder's notice to the Secretary must be received by the Secretary at the principal executive offices of the Corporation (i) in the case of an annual meeting, not later than the close of business on the 90th day nor earlier than the close of business on the 120th day before the anniversary date of the immediately preceding annual meeting of stockholders; provided, however, that in the event that the annual meeting is more than 30 days before or more than 60 days after such anniversary date, notice by the stockholder to be timely must be so received not earlier than the close of business on the 120th day before the meeting and not later than the later of (x) the close of business on the 90th day before the meeting or (y) the close of business on the 10th day following the day on which public announcement of the date of the annual meeting was first made by the Corporation; and (ii) in the case of a special meeting of stockholders called for the purpose of electing directors, not later than the close of business on the 10th day following the day on which public announcement of the date of the special meeting is first made by the Corporation. In no event shall the public announcement of an adjournment or postponement of an annual meeting or special meeting commence a new time period (or extend any time period) for the giving of a stockholder's notice as described in this Section 3.2.

(c) Notwithstanding anything in paragraph (b) to the contrary, in the event that the number of directors to be elected to the Board at an annual meeting is greater than the number of directors whose terms expire on the date of the annual meeting and there is no public announcement by the Corporation naming all of the nominees for the additional directors to be elected or specifying the size of the increased Board before the close of business on the 90th day prior to the anniversary date of the immediately preceding annual meeting of stockholders, a stockholder's notice required by this Section 3.2 shall also be considered timely, but only with respect to nominees for the additional directorships created by such increase that are to be filled by election at such annual meeting, if it shall be received by the Secretary at the principal executive offices of the Corporation not later than the close of business on the 10th day following the date on which such public announcement was first made by the Corporation.

(d) To be in proper written form, a stockholder's notice to the Secretary must set forth (i) as to each person whom the stockholder proposes to nominate for election as a director (A) the name, age, business address and residence address of the person, (B) the principal occupation or employment of the person, (C) the class or series and number of shares of capital stock of the Corporation that are owned beneficially or of record by the person and (D) any other information relating to the person that would be required to be disclosed in a proxy statement or other filings required to be made in connection with solicitations of proxies for election of directors pursuant to Section 14 of the Exchange Act and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder; and (ii) as to the stockholder giving the notice (A) the name and record address of such stockholder as they appear on the Corporation's books and the name and address of the beneficial owner, if any, on whose behalf the nomination is made, (B) the class or series and number of shares of capital stock of the Corporation that are owned beneficially and of record by such stockholder and the beneficial owner, if any, on whose behalf the nomination is made, (C) a description of all arrangements or understandings relating to the nomination to be made by such stockholder among such stockholder, the beneficial owner, if any, on whose behalf the nomination is made, each proposed nominee and any other person or persons (including their names), (D) a representation that such stockholder (or a qualified representative of such stockholder) intends to appear in person or by proxy at the meeting to nominate the persons named in its notice and (E) any other information relating to such stockholder and the beneficial owner, if any, on whose behalf the nomination is made that would be required to be disclosed in a proxy statement or other filings required to be made in connection with solicitations of proxies for election of directors pursuant to Section 14 of the Exchange Act and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder. Such notice must be accompanied by a written consent of each proposed nominee to being named as a nominee and to serve as a director if elected.

(e) If the Board or the chairman of the meeting of stockholders determines that any nomination was not made in accordance with the provisions of this Section 3.2, or that the information provided in a stockholder's notice does not satisfy the information requirements of this Section 3.2, then such nomination shall not be considered at the meeting in question. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section 3.2, if the stockholder (or a qualified representative of the stockholder) does not appear at the meeting of stockholders of the Corporation to present the nomination, such nomination shall be disregarded, notwithstanding that proxies in respect of such nomination may have been received by the Corporation.

(f) In addition to the provisions of this Section 3.2, a stockholder shall also comply with all of the applicable requirements of the Exchange Act and the rules and regulations thereunder with respect to the matters set forth herein. Nothing in this Section 3.2 shall be deemed to affect any rights of the holders of Preferred Stock to elect directors pursuant to the Certificate of Incorporation.

**Section 3.3. Compensation** . Unless otherwise restricted by the Certificate of Incorporation or these By Laws, the Board shall have the authority to fix the compensation of directors, including for service on a committee of the Board, and may be paid either a fixed sum for attendance at each meeting of the Board or other compensation as director. The directors may be reimbursed their expenses, if any, of attendance at each meeting of the Board. No such payment shall preclude any director from serving the Corporation in any other capacity and receiving compensation therefor. Members of committees of the Board may be allowed like compensation and reimbursement of expenses for service on the committee.

## ARTICLE IV

### BOARD MEETINGS

**Section 4.1. Annual Meetings** . The Board shall meet as soon as practicable after the adjournment of each annual stockholders meeting at the place of the annual stockholders meeting unless the Board shall fix another time and place and give notice thereof in the manner required herein for special meetings of the Board. No notice to the directors shall be necessary to legally convene this meeting, except as provided in this Section 4.1.

**Section 4.2. Regular Meetings** . Regularly scheduled, periodic meetings of the Board may be held without notice at such times, dates and places (within or without the State of Delaware) as shall from time to time be determined by the Board.

**Section 4.3. Special Meetings** . Special meetings of the Board (a) may be called by the Chairman of the Board or President and (b) shall be called by the Chairman of the Board, President or Secretary on the written request of at least a majority of directors then in office, or the sole director, as the case may be, and shall be held at such time, date and place (within or without the State of Delaware) as may be determined by the person calling the meeting or, if called upon the request of directors or the sole director, as specified in such written request. Notice of each special meeting of the Board shall be given, as provided in Section 9.3, to each director (i) at least 24 hours before the meeting if such notice is oral notice given personally or by telephone or written notice given by hand delivery or by means of a form of electronic transmission and delivery; (ii) at least two days before the meeting if such notice is sent by a nationally recognized overnight delivery service; and (iii) at least five days before the meeting if such notice is sent through the United States mail. If the Secretary shall fail or refuse to give such notice, then the notice may be given by the officer who called the meeting or the directors who requested the meeting. Any and all business that may be transacted at a regular meeting of the Board may be transacted at a special meeting. Except as may be otherwise expressly provided by applicable law, the Certificate of Incorporation, or these By Laws, neither the business to be transacted at, nor the purpose of, any special meeting need be specified in the notice or waiver of notice of such meeting. A special meeting may be held at any time without notice if all the directors are present or if those not present waive notice of the meeting in accordance with Section 9.4.

**Section 4.4. Quorum; Required Vote** . A majority of the Board shall constitute a quorum for the transaction of business at any meeting of the Board, and the act of a majority of the directors present at any meeting at which there is a quorum shall be the act of the Board, except as may be otherwise specifically provided by applicable law, the Certificate of Incorporation or these By Laws. If a quorum shall not be present at any meeting, a majority of the directors present may adjourn the meeting from time to time, without notice other than announcement at the meeting, until a quorum is present.

**Section 4.5. Consent In Lieu of Meeting** . Unless otherwise restricted by the Certificate of Incorporation or these By Laws, any action required or permitted to be taken at any meeting of the Board or any committee thereof may be taken without a meeting if all members of the Board or committee, as the case may be, consent thereto in writing or by electronic transmission, and the writing or writings or electronic transmission or transmissions (or paper reproductions thereof) are filed with the minutes of proceedings of the Board or committee. Such filing shall be in paper form if the minutes are maintained in paper form and shall be in electronic form if the minutes are maintained in electronic form.

**Section 4.6. Organization** . The chairman of each meeting of the Board shall be the Chairman of the Board or, in the absence (or inability or refusal to act) of the Chairman of the Board, the Chief Executive Officer (if he or she shall be a director) or, in the absence (or inability or refusal to act) of the Chief Executive Officer or if the Chief Executive Officer is not a director, the President (if he or she shall be a director) or in the absence (or inability or refusal to act) of the President or if the President is not a director, a chairman elected from the directors present. The Secretary shall act as secretary of all meetings of the Board. In the absence (or inability or refusal to act) of the Secretary, an Assistant Secretary shall perform the duties of the Secretary at such meeting. In the absence (or inability or refusal to act) of the Secretary and all Assistant Secretaries, the chairman of the meeting may appoint any person to act as secretary of the meeting.

## ARTICLE V

### COMMITTEES OF DIRECTORS

**Section 5.1. Establishment** . The Board may by resolution of the Board designate one or more committees, each committee to consist of one or more of the directors of the Corporation. Each committee shall keep regular minutes of its meetings and report the same to the Board when required by the resolution designating such committee. The Board shall have the power at any time to fill vacancies in, to change the membership of, or to dissolve any such committee.

**Section 5.2. Available Powers** . Any committee established pursuant to Section 5.1 hereof, to the extent permitted by applicable law and by resolution of the Board, shall have and may exercise all of the powers and authority of the Board in the management of the business and affairs of the Corporation, and may authorize the seal of the Corporation to be affixed to all papers that may require it.

**Section 5.3. Alternate Members** . The Board may designate one or more directors as alternate members of any committee, who may replace any absent or disqualified member at any meeting of such committee. In the absence or disqualification of a member of the committee, the member or members thereof present at any meeting and not disqualified from voting, whether or not he, she or they constitute a quorum, may unanimously appoint another member of the Board to act at the meeting in place of any such absent or disqualified member.

**Section 5.4. Procedures** . Unless the Board otherwise provides, the time, date, place, if any, and notice of meetings of a committee shall be determined by such committee. At meetings of a committee, a majority of the number of members of the committee (but not including any alternate member, unless such alternate member has replaced any absent or disqualified member at the time of, or in connection with, such meeting) shall constitute a quorum for the transaction of business. The act of a majority of the members present at any meeting at which a quorum is present shall be the act of the committee, except as otherwise specifically provided by applicable law, the Certificate of Incorporation, these By Laws or the Board. If a quorum is not present at a meeting of a committee, the members present may adjourn the meeting from time to time, without notice other than an announcement at the meeting, until a quorum is present. Unless the Board otherwise provides and except as provided in these By Laws, each committee designated by the Board may make, alter, amend and repeal rules for the conduct of its business. In the absence of such rules each committee shall conduct its business in the same manner as the Board is authorized to conduct its business pursuant to Article III and Article IV of these By Laws.

## ARTICLE VI

### OFFICERS

**Section 6.1. Officers** . The officers of the Corporation elected by the Board shall be a Chief Executive Officer, a Chief Financial Officer, a Secretary and such other officers (including without limitation, a Chairman of the Board, Presidents, Vice Presidents, Partners, Managing Directors, Senior Managing Directors, Assistant Secretaries and a Treasurer) as the Board from time to time may determine. Officers elected by the Board shall each have such powers and duties as generally pertain to their respective offices, subject to the specific provisions of this Article VI. Such officers shall also have such powers and duties as from time to time may be conferred by the Board. The Chief Executive Officer or President may also appoint such other officers (including without limitation one or more Vice Presidents and Controllers) as may be necessary or desirable for the conduct of the business of the Corporation. Such other officers shall have such powers and duties and shall hold their offices for such terms as may be provided in these By Laws or as may be prescribed by the Board or, if such officer has been appointed by the Chief Executive Officer or President, as may be prescribed by the appointing officer.

(a) Chairman of the Board . The Chairman of the Board shall preside when present at all meetings of the stockholders and the Board. The Chairman of the Board shall have general supervision and control of the acquisition activities of the Corporation subject to the ultimate authority of the Board, and shall be responsible for the execution of the policies of the Board with respect to such matters. In the absence (or inability or refusal to act) of the Chairman of the Board, the Chief Executive Officer (if he or she shall be a director) shall preside when present at all meetings of the stockholders and the Board. The powers and duties of the Chairman of the Board shall not include supervision or control of the preparation of the financial statements of the Corporation (other than through participation as a member of the Board). The position of Chairman of the Board and Chief Executive Officer may be held by the same person.

(b) Chief Executive Officer . The Chief Executive Officer shall be the chief executive officer of the Corporation, shall have general supervision of the affairs of the Corporation and general control of all of its business subject to the ultimate authority of the Board, and shall be responsible for the execution of the policies of the Board with respect to such matters, except to the extent any such powers and duties have been prescribed to the Chairman of the Board pursuant to Section 6.1(a) above. In the absence (or inability or refusal to act) of the Chairman of the Board, the Chief Executive Officer (if he or she shall be a director) shall preside when present at all meetings of the stockholders and the Board. The position of Chief Executive Officer and President may be held by the same person.



(c) President. The President shall make recommendations to the Chief Executive Officer on all operational matters that would normally be reserved for the final executive responsibility of the Chief Executive Officer. In the absence (or inability or refusal to act) of the Chairman of the Board and Chief Executive Officer, the President (if he or she shall be a director) shall preside when present at all meetings of the stockholders and the Board. The President shall also perform such duties and have such powers as shall be designated by the Board. The position of President and Chief Executive Officer may be held by the same person.

(d) Vice Presidents. In the absence (or inability or refusal to act) of the President, the Vice President (or in the event there be more than one Vice President, the Vice Presidents in the order designated by the Board) shall perform the duties and have the powers of the President. Any one or more of the Vice Presidents may be given an additional designation of rank or function.

(e) Secretary.

(i) The Secretary shall attend all meetings of the stockholders, the Board and (as required) committees of the Board and shall record the proceedings of such meetings in books to be kept for that purpose. The Secretary shall give, or cause to be given, notice of all meetings of the stockholders and special meetings of the Board and shall perform such other duties as may be prescribed by the Board, the Chairman of the Board, Chief Executive Officer or President. The Secretary shall have custody of the corporate seal of the Corporation and the Secretary, or any Assistant Secretary, shall have authority to affix the same to any instrument requiring it, and when so affixed, it may be attested by his or her signature or by the signature of such Assistant Secretary. The Board may give general authority to any other officer to affix the seal of the Corporation and to attest the affixing thereof by his or her signature.

(ii) The Secretary shall keep, or cause to be kept, at the principal executive office of the Corporation or at the office of the Corporation's transfer agent or registrar, if one has been appointed, a stock ledger, or duplicate stock ledger, showing the names of the stockholders and their addresses, the number and classes of shares held by each and, with respect to certificated shares, the number and date of certificates issued for the same and the number and date of certificates cancelled.

(f) Assistant Secretaries. The Assistant Secretary or, if there be more than one, the Assistant Secretaries in the order determined by the Board shall, in the absence (or inability or refusal to act) of the Secretary, perform the duties and have the powers of the Secretary.

(g) Chief Financial Officer. The Chief Financial Officer shall perform all duties commonly incident to that office (including, without limitation, the care and custody of the funds and securities of the Corporation, which from time to time may come into the Chief Financial Officer's hands and the deposit of the funds of the Corporation in such banks or trust companies as the Board, the Chief Executive Officer or the President may authorize).

(h) Treasurer. The Treasurer shall, in the absence (or inability or refusal to act) of the Chief Financial Officer, perform the duties and exercise the powers of the Chief Financial Officer.

**Section 6.2. Term of Office; Removal; Vacancies**. The elected officers of the Corporation shall be appointed by the Board and shall hold office until their successors are duly elected and qualified by the Board or until their earlier death, resignation, retirement, disqualification, or removal from office. Any officer may be removed, with or without cause, at any time by the Board. Any officer appointed by the Chief Executive Officer or President may also be removed, with or without cause, by the Chief Executive Officer or President, as the case may be, unless the Board otherwise provides. Any vacancy occurring in any elected office of the Corporation may be filled by the Board. Any vacancy occurring in any office appointed by the Chief Executive Officer or President may be filled by the Chief Executive Officer, or President, as the case may be, unless the Board then determines that such office shall thereupon be elected by the Board, in which case the Board shall elect such officer.

**Section 6.3. Other Officers** . The Board may delegate the power to appoint such other officers and agents, and may also remove such officers and agents or delegate the power to remove same, as it shall from time to time deem necessary or desirable.

**Section 6.4. Multiple Officeholders; Stockholder and Director Officers** . Any number of offices may be held by the same person unless the Certificate of Incorporation or these By Laws otherwise provide. Officers need not be stockholders or residents of the State of Delaware.

## ARTICLE VII

### SHARES

**Section 7.1. Certificated and Uncertificated Shares** . The shares of the Corporation may be certificated or uncertificated, subject to the sole discretion of the Board and the requirements of the DGCL.

**Section 7.2. Multiple Classes of Stock** . If the Corporation shall be authorized to issue more than one class of stock or more than one series of any class, the Corporation shall (a) cause the powers, designations, preferences and relative, participating, optional or other special rights of each class of stock or series thereof and the qualifications, limitations or restrictions of such preferences and/or rights to be set forth in full or summarized on the face or back of any certificate that the Corporation issues to represent shares of such class or series of stock or (b) in the case of uncertificated shares, within a reasonable time after the issuance or transfer of such shares, send to the registered owner thereof a written notice containing the information required to be set forth on certificates as specified in clause (a) above; provided, however, that, except as otherwise provided by applicable law, in lieu of the foregoing requirements, there may be set forth on the face or back of such certificate or, in the case of uncertificated shares, on such written notice a statement that the Corporation will furnish without charge to each stockholder who so requests the powers, designations, preferences and relative, participating, optional or other special rights of each class of stock or series thereof and the qualifications, limitations or restrictions of such preferences or rights.

**Section 7.3. Signatures** . Each certificate representing capital stock of the Corporation shall be signed by or in the name of the Corporation by (a) the Chairman of the Board, Chief Executive Officer, the President or a Vice President and (b) the Treasurer, an Assistant Treasurer, the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Corporation. Any or all the signatures on the certificate may be a facsimile. In case any officer, transfer agent or registrar who has signed or whose facsimile signature has been placed upon a certificate shall have ceased to be such officer, transfer agent or registrar before such certificate is issued, such certificate may be issued by the Corporation with the same effect as if such person were such officer, transfer agent or registrar on the date of issue.

#### **Section 7.4. Consideration and Payment for Shares** .

(a) Subject to applicable law and the Certificate of Incorporation, shares of stock may be issued for such consideration, having in the case of shares with par value a value not less than the par value thereof, and to such persons, as determined from time to time by the Board. The consideration may consist of any tangible or intangible property or any benefit to the Corporation including cash, promissory notes, services performed, contracts for services to be performed or other securities, or any combination thereof.

(b) Subject to applicable law and the Certificate of Incorporation, shares may not be issued until the full amount of the consideration has been paid, unless upon the face or back of each certificate issued to represent any partly paid shares of capital stock or upon the books and records of the Corporation in the case of partly paid uncertificated shares, there shall have been set forth the total amount of the consideration to be paid therefor and the amount paid thereon up to and including the time said certificate representing certificated shares or said uncertificated shares are issued.

#### **Section 7.5. Lost, Destroyed or Wrongfully Taken Certificates** .

(a) If an owner of a certificate representing shares claims that such certificate has been lost, destroyed or wrongfully taken, the Corporation shall issue a new certificate representing such shares or such shares in uncertificated form if the owner: (i) requests such a new certificate before the Corporation has notice that the certificate representing such shares has been acquired by a protected purchaser; (ii) if requested by the Corporation, delivers to the Corporation a bond sufficient to indemnify the Corporation against any claim that may be made against the Corporation on account of the alleged loss, wrongful taking or destruction of such certificate or the issuance of such new certificate or uncertificated shares; and (iii) satisfies other reasonable requirements imposed by the Corporation.

(b) If a certificate representing shares has been lost, apparently destroyed or wrongfully taken, and the owner fails to notify the Corporation of that fact within a reasonable time after the owner has notice of such loss, apparent destruction or wrongful taking and the Corporation registers a transfer of such shares before receiving notification, the owner shall be precluded from asserting against the Corporation any claim for registering such transfer or a claim to a new certificate representing such shares or such shares in uncertificated form.

#### **Section 7.6. Transfer of Stock .**

(a) If a certificate representing shares of the Corporation is presented to the Corporation with an endorsement requesting the registration of transfer of such shares or an instruction is presented to the Corporation requesting the registration of transfer of uncertificated shares, the Corporation shall register the transfer as requested if:

(i) in the case of certificated shares, the certificate representing such shares has been surrendered;

(ii)(A) with respect to certificated shares, the endorsement is made by the person specified by the certificate as entitled to such shares; (B) with respect to uncertificated shares, an instruction is made by the registered owner of such uncertificated shares; or (C) with respect to certificated shares or uncertificated shares, the endorsement or instruction is made by any other appropriate person or by an agent who has actual authority to act on behalf of the appropriate person;

(iii) the Corporation has received a guarantee of signature of the person signing such endorsement or instruction or such other reasonable assurance that the endorsement or instruction is genuine and authorized as the Corporation may request;

(iv) the transfer does not violate any restriction on transfer imposed by the Corporation that is enforceable in accordance with Section 7.8(a);  
and

(v) such other conditions for such transfer as shall be provided for under applicable law have been satisfied.

(b) Whenever any transfer of shares shall be made for collateral security and not absolutely, the Corporation shall so record such fact in the entry of transfer if, when the certificate for such shares is presented to the Corporation for transfer or, if such shares are uncertificated, when the instruction for registration of transfer thereof is presented to the Corporation, both the transferor and transferee request the Corporation to do so.

**Section 7.7. Registered Stockholders .** Before due presentment for registration of transfer of a certificate representing shares of the Corporation or of an instruction requesting registration of transfer of uncertificated shares, the Corporation may treat the registered owner as the person exclusively entitled to inspect for any proper purpose the stock ledger and the other books and records of the Corporation, vote such shares, receive dividends or notifications with respect to such shares and otherwise exercise all the rights and powers of the owner of such shares, except that a person who is the beneficial owner of such shares (if held in a voting trust or by a nominee on behalf of such person) may, upon providing documentary evidence of beneficial ownership of such shares and satisfying such other conditions as are provided under applicable law, may also so inspect the books and records of the Corporation.

#### **Section 7.8. Effect of the Corporation's Restriction on Transfer .**

(a) A written restriction on the transfer or registration of transfer of shares of the Corporation or on the amount of shares of the Corporation that may be owned by any person or group of persons, if permitted by the DGCL and noted conspicuously on the certificate representing such shares or, in the case of uncertificated shares, contained in a notice, offering circular or prospectus sent by the Corporation to the registered owner of such shares within a reasonable time prior to or after the issuance or transfer of such shares, may be enforced against the holder of such shares or any successor or transferee of the holder including an executor, administrator, trustee, guardian or other fiduciary entrusted with like responsibility for the person or estate of the holder.

(b) A restriction imposed by the Corporation on the transfer or the registration of shares of the Corporation or on the amount of shares of the Corporation that may be owned by any person or group of persons, even if otherwise lawful, is ineffective against a person without actual knowledge of such restriction unless: (i) the shares are certificated and such restriction is noted conspicuously on the certificate; or (ii) the shares are uncertificated and such restriction was contained in a notice, offering circular or prospectus sent by the Corporation to the registered owner of such shares within a reasonable time prior to or after the issuance or transfer of such shares.

**Section 7.9. Regulations** . The Board shall have power and authority to make such additional rules and regulations, subject to any applicable requirement of law, as the Board may deem necessary and appropriate with respect to the issue, transfer or registration of transfer of shares of stock or certificates representing shares. The Board may appoint one or more transfer agents or registrars and may require for the validity thereof that certificates representing shares bear the signature of any transfer agent or registrar so appointed.

## ARTICLE VIII

### INDEMNIFICATION

**Section 8.1. Right to Indemnification** . To the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, as the same exists or may hereafter be amended, the Corporation shall indemnify and hold harmless each person who was or is made a party or is threatened to be made a party to or is otherwise involved in any threatened, pending or completed action, suit or proceeding, whether civil, criminal, administrative or investigative (hereinafter a “ *proceeding* ”), by reason of the fact that he or she is or was a director or officer of the Corporation or, while a director or officer of the Corporation, is or was serving at the request of the Corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation or of a partnership, joint venture, trust, other enterprise or nonprofit entity, including service with respect to an employee benefit plan (hereinafter an “ *Indemnitee* ”), whether the basis of such proceeding is alleged action in an official capacity as a director, officer, employee or agent, or in any other capacity while serving as a director, officer, employee or agent, against all liability and loss suffered and expenses (including, without limitation, attorneys’ fees, judgments, fines, ERISA excise taxes and penalties and amounts paid in settlement) reasonably incurred by such Indemnitee in connection with such proceeding; provided, however, that, except as provided in Section 8.3 with respect to proceedings to enforce rights to indemnification, the Corporation shall indemnify an Indemnitee in connection with a proceeding (or part thereof) initiated by such Indemnitee only if such proceeding (or part thereof) was authorized by the Board.

**Section 8.2. Right to Advancement of Expenses** . In addition to the right to indemnification conferred in Section 8.1, an Indemnitee shall also have the right to be paid by the Corporation to the fullest extent not prohibited by applicable law the expenses (including, without limitation, attorneys’ fees) incurred in defending or otherwise participating in any such proceeding in advance of its final disposition (hereinafter an “ *advancement of expenses* ”); provided, however, that, if the DGCL requires, an advancement of expenses incurred by an Indemnitee in his or her capacity as a director or officer of the Corporation (and not in any other capacity in which service was or is rendered by such Indemnitee, including, without limitation, service to an employee benefit plan) shall be made only upon the Corporation’s receipt of an undertaking (hereinafter an “ *undertaking* ”), by or on behalf of such Indemnitee, to repay all amounts so advanced if it shall ultimately be determined that such Indemnitee is not entitled to be indemnified under this Article VIII or otherwise.

**Section 8.3. Right of Indemnitee to Bring Suit** . If a claim under Section 8.1 or Section 8.2 is not paid in full by the Corporation within 60 days after a written claim therefor has been received by the Corporation, except in the case of a claim for an advancement of expenses, in which case the applicable period shall be 20 days, the Indemnitee may at any time thereafter bring suit against the Corporation to recover the unpaid amount of the claim. If successful in whole or in part in any such suit, or in a suit brought by the Corporation to recover an advancement of expenses pursuant to the terms of an undertaking, the Indemnitee shall also be entitled to be paid the expense of prosecuting or defending such suit. In (a) any suit brought by the Indemnitee to enforce a right to indemnification hereunder (but not in a suit brought by an Indemnitee to enforce a right to an advancement of expenses) it shall be a defense that, and (b) in any suit brought by the Corporation to recover an advancement of expenses pursuant to the terms of an undertaking, the Corporation shall be entitled to recover such expenses upon a final judicial decision from which there is no further right to appeal (hereinafter a “ **final adjudication** ”) that, the Indemnitee has not met any applicable standard for indemnification set forth in the DGCL. Neither the failure of the Corporation (including its directors who are not parties to such action, a committee of such directors, independent legal counsel, or its stockholders) to have made a determination prior to the commencement of such suit that indemnification of the Indemnitee is proper in the circumstances because the Indemnitee has met the applicable standard of conduct set forth in the DGCL, nor an actual determination by the Corporation (including a determination by its directors who are not parties to such action, a committee of such directors, independent legal counsel, or its stockholders) that the Indemnitee has not met such applicable standard of conduct, shall create a presumption that the Indemnitee has not met the applicable standard of conduct or, in the case of such a suit brought by the Indemnitee, shall be a defense to such suit. In any suit brought by the Indemnitee to enforce a right to indemnification or to an advancement of expenses hereunder, or by the Corporation to recover an advancement of expenses pursuant to the terms of an undertaking, the burden of proving that the Indemnitee is not entitled to be indemnified, or to such advancement of expenses, under this Article VIII or otherwise shall be on the Corporation.

**Section 8.4. Non-Exclusivity of Rights** . The rights provided to any Indemnitee pursuant to this Article VIII shall not be exclusive of any other right, which such Indemnitee may have or hereafter acquire under applicable law, the Certificate of Incorporation, these By Laws, an agreement, a vote of stockholders or disinterested directors, or otherwise.

**Section 8.5. Insurance** . The Corporation may maintain insurance, at its expense, to protect itself and/or any director, officer, employee or agent of the Corporation or another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise against any expense, liability or loss, whether or not the Corporation would have the power to indemnify such person against such expense, liability or loss under the DGCL.

**Section 8.6. Indemnification of Other Persons** . This Article VIII shall not limit the right of the Corporation to the extent and in the manner authorized or permitted by law to indemnify and to advance expenses to persons other than Indemnitees. Without limiting the foregoing, the Corporation may, to the extent authorized from time to time by the Board, grant rights to indemnification and to the advancement of expenses to any employee or agent of the Corporation and to any other person who is or was serving at the request of the Corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation or of a partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise, including service with respect to an employee benefit plan, to the fullest extent of the provisions of this Article VIII with respect to the indemnification and advancement of expenses of Indemnitees under this Article VIII.

**Section 8.7. Amendments** . Any repeal or amendment of this Article VIII by the Board or the stockholders of the Corporation or by changes in applicable law, or the adoption of any other provision of these By Laws inconsistent with this Article VIII, will, to the extent permitted by applicable law, be prospective only (except to the extent such amendment or change in applicable law permits the Corporation to provide broader indemnification rights to Indemnitees on a retroactive basis than permitted prior thereto), and will not in any way diminish or adversely affect any right or protection existing hereunder in respect of any act or omission occurring prior to such repeal or amendment or adoption of such inconsistent provision; provided however, that amendments or repeals of this Article VIII shall require the affirmative vote of the stockholders holding at least 66.7% of the voting power of all outstanding shares of capital stock of the Corporation.

**Section 8.8. Certain Definitions** . For purposes of this Article VIII, (a) references to “ **other enterprise** ” shall include any employee benefit plan; (b) references to “  **fines**  ” shall include any excise taxes assessed on a person with respect to an employee benefit plan; (c) references to “  **serving at the request of the Corporation**  ” shall include any service that imposes duties on, or involves services by, a person with respect to any employee benefit plan, its participants, or beneficiaries; and (d) a person who acted in good faith and in a manner such person reasonably believed to be in the interest of the participants and beneficiaries of an employee benefit plan shall be deemed to have acted in a manner “not opposed to the best interest of the Corporation” for purposes of Section 145 of the DGCL.

**Section 8.9. Contract Rights** . The rights provided to Indemnitees pursuant to this Article VIII shall be contract rights and such rights shall continue as to an Indemnitee who has ceased to be a director, officer, agent or employee and shall inure to the benefit of the Indemnitee's heirs, executors and administrators.

**Section 8.10. Severability** . If any provision or provisions of this Article VIII shall be held to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable for any reason whatsoever: (a) the validity, legality and enforceability of the remaining provisions of this Article VIII shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby; and (b) to the fullest extent possible, the provisions of this Article VIII (including, without limitation, each such portion of this Article VIII containing any such provision held to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable) shall be construed so as to give effect to the intent manifested by the provision held invalid, illegal or unenforceable.

## ARTICLE IX

### MISCELLANEOUS

**Section 9.1. Place of Meetings** . If the place of any meeting of stockholders, the Board or committee of the Board for which notice is required under these By Laws is not designated in the notice of such meeting, such meeting shall be held at the principal business office of the Corporation; provided, however, if the Board has, in its sole discretion, determined that a meeting shall not be held at any place, but instead shall be held by means of remote communication pursuant to Section 9.5 hereof, then such meeting shall not be held at any place.

#### **Section 9.2. Fixing Record Dates** .

(a) In order that the Corporation may determine the stockholders entitled to notice of any meeting of stockholders or any adjournment thereof, the Board may fix a record date, which shall not precede the date upon which the resolution fixing the record date is adopted by the Board, and which record date shall not be more than 60 nor less than 10 days before the date of such meeting. If the Board so fixes a date, such date shall also be the record date for determining the stockholders entitled to vote at such meeting unless the Board determines, at the time it fixes such record date, that a later date on or before the date of the meeting shall be the date for making such determination. If no record date is fixed by the Board, the record date for determining stockholders entitled to notice of and to vote at a meeting of stockholders shall be at the close of business on the business day next preceding the day on which notice is given, or, if notice is waived, at the close of business on the business day next preceding the day on which the meeting is held. A determination of stockholders of record entitled to notice of or to vote at a meeting of stockholders shall apply to any adjournment of the meeting; provided, however, that the Board may fix a new record date for the adjourned meeting, and in such case shall also fix as the record date for stockholders entitled to notice of such adjourned meeting the same or an earlier date as that fixed for determination of stockholders entitled to vote in accordance with the foregoing provisions of this Section 9.2(a) at the adjourned meeting.

(b) In order that the Corporation may determine the stockholders entitled to receive payment of any dividend or other distribution or allotment of any rights or the stockholders entitled to exercise any rights in respect of any change, conversion or exchange of stock, or for the purpose of any other lawful action, the Board may fix a record date, which record date shall not precede the date upon which the resolution fixing the record date is adopted, and which record date shall be not more than 60 days prior to such action. If no record date is fixed, the record date for determining stockholders for any such purpose shall be at the close of business on the day on which the Board adopts the resolution relating thereto.

#### **Section 9.3. Means of Giving Notice** .

(a) Notice to Directors . Whenever under applicable law, the Certificate of Incorporation or these By Laws notice is required to be given to any director, such notice shall be given either (i) in writing and sent by mail, or by a nationally recognized delivery service, (ii) by means of facsimile telecommunication or other form of electronic transmission, or (iii) by oral notice given personally or by telephone. A notice to a director will be deemed given as follows: (i) if given by hand delivery, orally, or by telephone, when actually received by the director, (ii) if sent through the United States mail, when deposited in the United States mail, with postage and fees thereon prepaid, addressed to the director at the director's address appearing on the records of the Corporation, (iii) if sent for next day delivery by a nationally recognized overnight delivery service, when deposited with such service, with fees thereon prepaid, addressed to the director at the director's address appearing on the records of the Corporation, (iv) if sent by facsimile telecommunication, when sent to the facsimile transmission number for such director appearing on the records of the Corporation, (v) if sent by electronic mail, when sent to the electronic mail address for such director appearing on the records of the Corporation, or (vi) if sent by any other form of electronic transmission, when sent to the address, location or number (as applicable) for such director appearing on the records of the Corporation.

(b) Notice to Stockholders . Whenever under applicable law, the Certificate of Incorporation or these By Laws notice is required to be given to any stockholder, such notice may be given (i) in writing and sent either by hand delivery, through the United States mail, or by a nationally recognized overnight delivery service for next day delivery, or (ii) by means of a form of electronic transmission consented to by the stockholder, to the extent permitted by, and subject to the conditions set forth in Section 232 of the DGCL. A notice to a stockholder shall be deemed given as follows: (i) if given by hand delivery, when actually received by the stockholder, (ii) if sent through the United States mail, when deposited in the United States mail, with postage and fees thereon prepaid, addressed to the stockholder at the stockholder's address appearing on the stock ledger of the Corporation, (iii) if sent for next day delivery by a nationally recognized overnight delivery service, when deposited with such service, with fees thereon prepaid, addressed to the stockholder at the stockholder's address appearing on the stock ledger of the Corporation, and (iv) if given by a form of electronic transmission consented to by the stockholder to whom the notice is given and otherwise meeting the requirements set forth above, (A) if by facsimile transmission, when directed to a number at which the stockholder has consented to receive notice, (B) if by electronic mail, when directed to an electronic mail address at which the stockholder has consented to receive notice, (C) if by a posting on an electronic network together with separate notice to the stockholder of such specified posting, upon the later of (1) such posting and (2) the giving of such separate notice, and (D) if by any other form of electronic transmission, when directed to the stockholder. A stockholder may revoke such stockholder's consent to receiving notice by means of electronic communication by giving written notice of such revocation to the Corporation. Any such consent shall be deemed revoked if (1) the Corporation is unable to deliver by electronic transmission two consecutive notices given by the Corporation in accordance with such consent and (2) such inability becomes known to the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary or to the Corporation's transfer agent, or other person responsible for the giving of notice; provided, however, the inadvertent failure to treat such inability as a revocation shall not invalidate any meeting or other action.

(c) Electronic Transmission . “ **Electronic transmission** ” means any form of communication, not directly involving the physical transmission of paper, that creates a record that may be retained, retrieved and reviewed by a recipient thereof, and that may be directly reproduced in paper form by such a recipient through an automated process, including but not limited to transmission by telex, facsimile telecommunication, electronic mail, telegram and cablegram.

(d) Notice to Stockholders Sharing Same Address . Without limiting the manner by which notice otherwise may be given effectively by the Corporation to stockholders, any notice to stockholders given by the Corporation under any provision of the DGCL, the Certificate of Incorporation or these By Laws shall be effective if given by a single written notice to stockholders who share an address if consented to by the stockholders at that address to whom such notice is given. A stockholder may revoke such stockholder's consent by delivering written notice of such revocation to the Corporation. Any stockholder who fails to object in writing to the Corporation within 60 days of having been given written notice by the Corporation of its intention to send such a single written notice shall be deemed to have consented to receiving such single written notice.

(e) Exceptions to Notice Requirements . Whenever notice is required to be given, under the DGCL, the Certificate of Incorporation or these By Laws, to any person with whom communication is unlawful, the giving of such notice to such person shall not be required and there shall be no duty to apply to any governmental authority or agency for a license or permit to give such notice to such person. Any action or meeting that shall be taken or held without notice to any such person with whom communication is unlawful shall have the same force and effect as if such notice had been duly given. In the event that the action taken by the Corporation is such as to require the filing of a certificate with the Secretary of State of Delaware, the certificate shall state, if such is the fact and if notice is required, that notice was given to all persons entitled to receive notice except such persons with whom communication is unlawful.

Whenever notice is required to be given by the Corporation, under any provision of the DGCL, the Certificate of Incorporation or these By Laws, to any stockholder to whom (1) notice of two consecutive annual meetings of stockholders and all notices of stockholder meetings or of the taking of action by written consent of stockholders without a meeting to such stockholder during the period between such two consecutive annual meetings, or (2) all, and at least two payments (if sent by first-class mail) of dividends or interest on securities during a 12-month period, have been mailed addressed to such stockholder at such stockholder's address as shown on the records of the Corporation and have been returned undeliverable, the giving of such notice to such stockholder shall not be required. Any action or meeting that shall be taken or held without notice to such stockholder shall have the same force and effect as if such notice had been duly given. If any such stockholder shall deliver to the Corporation a written notice setting forth such stockholder's then current address, the requirement that notice be given to such stockholder shall be reinstated. In the event that the action taken by the Corporation is such as to require the filing of a certificate with the Secretary of State of Delaware, the certificate need not state that notice was not given to persons to whom notice was not required to be given pursuant to Section 230(b) of the DGCL. The exception in subsection (1) of the first sentence of this paragraph to the requirement that notice be given shall not be applicable to any notice returned as undeliverable if the notice was given by electronic transmission.

**Section 9.4. Waiver of Notice** . Whenever any notice is required to be given under applicable law, the Certificate of Incorporation, or these By Laws, a written waiver of such notice, signed by the person or persons entitled to said notice, or a waiver by electronic transmission by the person entitled to said notice, whether before or after the time stated therein, shall be deemed equivalent to such required notice. All such waivers shall be kept with the books of the Corporation. Attendance at a meeting shall constitute a waiver of notice of such meeting, except where a person attends for the express purpose of objecting to the transaction of any business on the ground that the meeting was not lawfully called or convened.

#### **Section 9.5. Meeting Attendance via Remote Communication Equipment.**

(a) Stockholder Meetings . If authorized by the Board in its sole discretion, and subject to such guidelines and procedures as the Board may adopt, stockholders entitled to vote at such meeting and proxy holders not physically present at a meeting of stockholders may, by means of remote communication:

(i) participate in a meeting of stockholders; and

(ii) be deemed present in person and vote at a meeting of stockholders, whether such meeting is to be held at a designated place or solely by means of remote communication, provided that (A) the Corporation shall implement reasonable measures to verify that each person deemed present and permitted to vote at the meeting by means of remote communication is a stockholder or proxy holder, (B) the Corporation shall implement reasonable measures to provide such stockholders and proxy holders a reasonable opportunity to participate in the meeting and, if entitled to vote, to vote on matters submitted to the applicable stockholders, including an opportunity to read or hear the proceedings of the meeting substantially concurrently with such proceedings, and (C) if any stockholder or proxy holder votes or takes other action at the meeting by means of remote communication, a record of such votes or other action shall be maintained by the Corporation.

(b) Board Meetings . Unless otherwise restricted by applicable law, the Certificate of Incorporation or these By Laws, members of the Board or any committee thereof may participate in a meeting of the Board or any committee thereof by means of conference telephone or other communications equipment by means of which all persons participating in the meeting can hear each other. Such participation in a meeting shall constitute presence in person at the meeting, except where a person participates in the meeting for the express purpose of objecting to the transaction of any business on the ground that the meeting was not lawfully called or convened.

**Section 9.6. Dividends** . The Board may from time to time declare, and the Corporation may pay, dividends (payable in cash, property or shares of the Corporation's capital stock) on the Corporation's outstanding shares of capital stock, subject to applicable law and the Certificate of Incorporation.

**Section 9.7. Reserves** . The Board may set apart out of the funds of the Corporation available for dividends a reserve or reserves for any proper purpose and may abolish any such reserve.



**Section 9.8. Contracts and Negotiable Instruments** . Except as otherwise provided by applicable law, the Certificate of Incorporation or these By Laws, any contract, bond, deed, lease, mortgage or other instrument may be executed and delivered in the name and on behalf of the Corporation by such officer or officers or other employee or employees of the Corporation as the Board may from time to time authorize. Such authority may be general or confined to specific instances as the Board may determine. The Chairman of the Board, the Chief Executive Officer, the President, the Chief Financial Officer, the Treasurer or any Vice President may execute and deliver any contract, bond, deed, lease, mortgage or other instrument in the name and on behalf of the Corporation. Subject to any restrictions imposed by the Board, the Chairman of the Board Chief Executive Officer, President, the Chief Financial Officer, the Treasurer or any Vice President may delegate powers to execute and deliver any contract, bond, deed, lease, mortgage or other instrument in the name and on behalf of the Corporation to other officers or employees of the Corporation under such person's supervision and authority, it being understood, however, that any such delegation of power shall not relieve such officer of responsibility with respect to the exercise of such delegated power.

**Section 9.9. Fiscal Year** . The fiscal year of the Corporation shall be fixed by the Board.

**Section 9.10. Seal** . The Board may adopt a corporate seal, which shall be in such form as the Board determines. The seal may be used by causing it or a facsimile thereof to be impressed, affixed or otherwise reproduced.

**Section 9.11. Books and Records** . The books and records of the Corporation may be kept within or outside the State of Delaware at such place or places as may from time to time be designated by the Board.

**Section 9.12. Resignation** . Any director, committee member or officer may resign by giving notice thereof in writing or by electronic transmission to the Chairman of the Board, the Chief Executive Officer, the President or the Secretary. The resignation shall take effect at the time it is delivered unless the resignation specifies a later effective date or an effective date determined upon the happening of an event or events. Unless otherwise specified therein, the acceptance of such resignation shall not be necessary to make it effective.

**Section 9.13. Surety Bonds** . Such officers, employees and agents of the Corporation (if any) as the Chairman of the Board, Chief Executive Officer, President or the Board may direct, from time to time, shall be bonded for the faithful performance of their duties and for the restoration to the Corporation, in case of their death, resignation, retirement, disqualification or removal from office, of all books, papers, vouchers, money and other property of whatever kind in their possession or under their control belonging to the Corporation, in such amounts and by such surety companies as the Chairman of the Board, Chief Executive Officer, President or the Board may determine. The premiums on such bonds shall be paid by the Corporation and the bonds so furnished shall be in the custody of the Secretary.

**Section 9.14. Securities of Other Corporations** . Powers of attorney, proxies, waivers of notice of meeting, consents in writing and other instruments relating to securities owned by the Corporation may be executed in the name of and on behalf of the Corporation by the Chairman of the Board, Chief Executive Officer, President, any Vice President or any officers authorized by the Board. Any such officer, may, in the name of and on behalf of the Corporation, take all such action as any such officer may deem advisable to vote in person or by proxy at any meeting of security holders of any corporation in which the Corporation may own securities, or to consent in writing, in the name of the Corporation as such holder, to any action by such corporation, and at any such meeting or with respect to any such consent shall possess and may exercise any and all rights and power incident to the ownership of such securities and which, as the owner thereof, the Corporation might have exercised and possessed. The Board may from time to time confer like powers upon any other person or persons.

**Section 9.15. Amendments** . The Board shall have the power to adopt, amend, alter or repeal the By Laws. The affirmative vote of a majority of the Board shall be required to adopt, amend, alter or repeal the By Laws. The By Laws also may be adopted, amended, altered or repealed by the stockholders; provided, however, that in addition to any vote of the holders of any class or series of capital stock of the Corporation required by applicable law or the Certificate of Incorporation, the affirmative vote of the holders of at least a majority of the voting power (except as otherwise provided in Section 8.7)of all outstanding shares of capital stock of the Corporation entitled to vote generally in the election of directors, voting together as a single class, shall be required for the stockholders to adopt, amend, alter or repeal the By Laws.

NUMBER  
U-

UNITS

SEE REVERSE FOR CERTAIN DEFINITIONS

CUSIP [\_\_\_\_]

**B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II**

**UNITS CONSISTING OF ONE SHARE OF COMMON STOCK AND ONE-HALF OF ONE REDEEMABLE WARRANT,  
EACH WHOLE WARRANT ENTITLING THE HOLDER TO PURCHASE ONE SHARE OF COMMON STOCK**

THIS CERTIFIES THAT \_\_\_\_\_ is the owner of \_\_\_\_\_ Units.

Each Unit (“ *Unit* ”) consists of one (1) share of Class A common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (“ *Common Stock* ”), of B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II, a Delaware corporation (the “ *Company* ”), and one-half of one redeemable warrant (the “ *Warrant* ”). Each whole Warrant entitles the holder to purchase one share of Common Stock for \$11.50 per share (subject to adjustment). Only whole Warrants are exercisable. Each whole Warrant will become exercisable on the later of (i) thirty (30) days after the Company’s completion of a merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or other similar business combination with one or more businesses (each a “ *Business Combination* ”), or (ii) twelve (12) months from the closing of the Company’s initial public offering, and will expire unless exercised before 5:00 p.m., New York City Time, on the date that is five (5) years after the date on which the Company completes its initial Business Combination, or earlier upon redemption or liquidation (the “ *Expiration Date* ”). The Common Stock and Warrants comprising the Units represented by this certificate are not transferable separately prior to \_\_\_\_\_, 2020, unless B. Riley FBR, Inc. elects to allow separate trading earlier, subject to the Company’s filing of a Current Report on Form 8-K with the Securities and Exchange Commission containing an audited balance sheet reflecting the Company’s receipt of the gross proceeds of the Company’s initial public offering and filing a Current Report on Form 8-K and issuing a press release announcing when separate trading will begin. No fractional Warrants will be issued upon separation of the Units. The terms of the Warrants are governed by a Warrant Agreement, dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 2020, between the Company and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, as Warrant Agent, and are subject to the terms and provisions contained therein, all of which terms and provisions the holder of this certificate consents to by acceptance hereof. Copies of the Warrant Agreement are on file at the office of the Warrant Agent at 1 State Street, 30<sup>th</sup> Floor, New York, New York 10004, and are available to any Warrant holder on written request and without cost.

This certificate is not valid unless countersigned by the Transfer Agent and registered by the Registrar of the Company.

This certificate shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the internal laws of the State of New York.

Witness the facsimile signature of a duly authorized signatory of the Company.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Authorized Signatory

\_\_\_\_\_  
Transfer Agent

**B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II**

The Company will furnish without charge to each unitholder who so requests, a statement of the powers, designations, preferences and relative, participating, optional or other special rights of each class of equity or series thereof of the Company and the qualifications, limitations, or restrictions of such preferences and/or rights.

The following abbreviations, when used in the inscription on the face of this certificate, shall be construed as though they were written out in full according to applicable laws or regulations:

TEN COM	—	as tenants in common	UNIF GIFT MIN ACT	—	_____ Custodian _____
TEN ENT	—	as tenants by the entireties			(Cust) (Minor)
JT TEN	—	as joint tenants with right of survivorship and not as tenants in common			under Uniform Gifts to Minors Act
					_____
					(State)

Additional abbreviations may also be used though not in the above list.

*For value received, hereby sell, assign and transfer unto*

(PLEASE INSERT SOCIAL SECURITY OR OTHER IDENTIFYING NUMBER OF ASSIGNEE)

(PLEASE PRINT OR TYPEWRITE NAME AND ADDRESS, INCLUDING ZIP CODE, OF ASSIGNEE)

*Units represented by the within Certificate, and do hereby irrevocably constitute and appoint*

Attorney to transfer the said Units on the books of the within named Company with full power of substitution in the premises.

*Dated*

---

**Notice:** The signature to this assignment must correspond with the name as written upon the face of the certificate in every particular, without alteration or enlargement or any change whatever.

---

**Signature(s) Guaranteed:**

---

THE SIGNATURE(S) MUST BE GUARANTEED BY AN ELIGIBLE GUARANTOR INSTITUTION (BANKS, STOCKBROKERS, SAVINGS AND LOAN ASSOCIATIONS AND CREDIT UNIONS WITH MEMBERSHIP IN AN APPROVED SIGNATURE GUARANTEE MEDALLION PROGRAM, PURSUANT TO S.E.C. RULE 17Ad-15 UNDER THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934, AS AMENDED (OR ANY SUCCESSOR RULE)).

As more fully described in, and subject to the terms and conditions described in, the Company's final prospectus for its initial public offering dated , 2020, the holder(s) of this certificate shall be entitled to receive a pro rata portion of certain funds held in the trust account established in connection with the Company's initial public offering only in the event that (i) the Company redeems the shares of Common Stock sold in the Company's initial public offering and liquidates because it does not consummate an initial business combination by the date set forth (the "**Last Date**") in the Company's Second Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation, as the same may be amended from time to time (the "**Charter**"), (ii) the Company redeems the shares of Common Stock sold in its initial public offering properly submitted in connection with a stockholder vote to amend the Charter to modify the substance or timing of the Company's obligation to redeem 100% of the Common Stock if it does not consummate an initial business combination by the Last Date, or (iii) if the holder(s) seek(s) to redeem for cash his, her or its respective shares of Common Stock in connection with a tender offer (or proxy solicitation, solely in the event the Company seeks stockholder approval of the proposed initial business combination) setting forth the details of a proposed initial business combination. In no other circumstances shall the holder(s) have any right or interest of any kind in or to the trust account.

---

NUMBER C- SHARES

SEE REVERSE FOR CERTAIN DEFINITIONS

CUSIP [\_\_\_\_]

**B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II**

**CLASS A COMMON STOCK**

THIS CERTIFIES THAT \_\_\_\_\_ is the owner of \_\_\_\_\_ fully paid and non-assessable shares of Class A common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the “ *Common Stock* ”), of B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II, a Delaware corporation (the “ *Company* ”), transferable on the books of the Company in person or by duly authorized attorney upon surrender of this certificate properly endorsed.

This certificate is not valid unless countersigned by the Transfer Agent and registered by the Registrar of the Company.

Witness the facsimile signature of a duly authorized signatory of the Company.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Authorized Signatory

\_\_\_\_\_  
Transfer Agent

\_\_\_\_\_

**B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II**

The Company will furnish without charge to each stockholder who so requests, a statement of the powers, designations, preferences and relative, participating, optional or other special rights of each class of stock or series thereof of the Company and the qualifications, limitations, or restrictions of such preferences and/or rights. This certificate and the shares represented thereby are issued and shall be held subject to all the provisions of the Company's Second Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation and all amendments thereto and resolutions of the Board of Directors providing for the issue of securities (copies of which may be obtained from the secretary of the Company), to all of which the holder of this certificate by acceptance hereof assents.

The following abbreviations, when used in the inscription on the face of this certificate, shall be construed as though they were written out in full according to applicable laws or regulations:

TEN COM	— as tenants in common	UNIF GIFT MIN ACT	—	_____ Custodian	_____
TEN ENT	— as tenants by the entireties			(Cust)	(Minor)
JT TEN	— as joint tenants with right of survivorship and not as tenants in common			under Uniform Gifts to Minors Act	(State)

Additional abbreviations may also be used though not in the above list.

*For value received, hereby sells, assigns and transfers unto*

(PLEASE INSERT SOCIAL SECURITY OR OTHER IDENTIFYING NUMBER(S) OF ASSIGNEE(S))

(PLEASE PRINT OR TYPEWRITE NAME(S) AND ADDRESS(ES), INCLUDING ZIP CODE, OF ASSIGNEE(S))

*shares of Common Stock represented by the within Certificate, and hereby irrevocably constitutes and appoints*

Attorney to transfer the said shares of Common Stock on the books of the within named Company with full power of substitution in the premises.

*Dated:*

**Notice:** The signature(s) to this assignment must correspond with the name as written upon the face of the certificate in every particular, without alteration or enlargement or any change whatever.

---

**Signature(s) Guaranteed:**

---

---

THE SIGNATURE(S) MUST BE GUARANTEED BY AN ELIGIBLE GUARANTOR INSTITUTION (BANKS, STOCKBROKERS, SAVINGS AND LOAN ASSOCIATIONS AND CREDIT UNIONS WITH MEMBERSHIP IN AN APPROVED SIGNATURE GUARANTEE MEDALLION PROGRAM, PURSUANT TO S.E.C. RULE 17Ad-15 UNDER THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934, AS AMENDED (OR ANY SUCCESSOR RULE).

As more fully described in, and subject to the terms and conditions described in, the Company's final prospectus for its initial public offering dated , 2020, the holder(s) of this certificate shall be entitled to receive a pro rata portion of certain funds held in the trust account established in connection with the Company's initial public offering only in the event that (i) the Company redeems the shares of Common Stock sold in the Company's initial public offering and liquidates because it does not consummate an initial business combination by the date set forth (the "**Last Date**") in the Company's Second Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation, as the same may be amended from time to time (the "**Charter**"), (ii) the Company redeems the shares of Common Stock sold in its initial public offering properly submitted in connection with a stockholder vote to amend the Charter to modify the substance or timing of the Company's obligation to redeem 100% of the Common Stock if it does not consummate an initial business combination by the Last Date, or (iii) if the holder(s) seek(s) to redeem for cash his, her or its respective shares of Common Stock in connection with a tender offer (or proxy solicitation, solely in the event the Company seeks stockholder approval of the proposed initial business combination) setting forth the details of a proposed initial business combination. In no other circumstances shall the holder(s) have any right or interest of any kind in or to the trust account.

---

## FORM OF WARRANT CERTIFICATE

[FACE]

Number

**Warrants**

**THIS WARRANT SHALL BE VOID IF NOT EXERCISED PRIOR TO  
THE EXPIRATION OF THE EXERCISE PERIOD PROVIDED FOR  
IN THE WARRANT AGREEMENT DESCRIBED BELOW**

**B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II**

*Incorporated Under the Laws of the State of Delaware*

CUSIP \_\_\_\_\_

**Warrant Certificate**

***This Warrant Certificate certifies that*** \_\_\_\_\_, or registered assigns, is the registered holder of warrant(s) evidenced hereby (the “**Warrants**” and each, a “**Warrant**”) to purchase shares of Class A common stock, \$0.0001 par value per share (“**Class A Common Stock**”), of B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II, a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”). Each whole Warrant entitles the holder, upon exercise during the Exercise Period set forth in the Warrant Agreement referred to below, to receive from the Company that number of fully paid and non-assessable shares of Class A Common Stock as set forth below, at the exercise price (the “**Warrant Price**”) as determined pursuant to the Warrant Agreement, payable in lawful money (or through “**cashless exercise**” as provided for in the Warrant Agreement) of the United States of America upon surrender of this Warrant Certificate and payment of the Warrant Price at the office or agency of the Warrant Agent referred to below, subject to the conditions set forth herein and in the Warrant Agreement. Defined terms used in this Warrant Certificate but not defined herein shall have the meanings given to them in the Warrant Agreement.

Each whole Warrant is initially exercisable for one fully paid and non-assessable share of Class A Common Stock. No fractional shares will be issued upon exercise of any Warrant. If, upon the exercise of Warrants, a holder would be entitled to receive a fractional interest in a share of Class A Common Stock, the Company will, upon exercise, round down to the nearest whole number the number of shares of Class A Common Stock to be issued to the Warrant holder. The number of shares of Class A Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants is subject to adjustment upon the occurrence of certain events as set forth in the Warrant Agreement.

The initial Warrant Price per share of Class A Common Stock for any Warrant is equal to \$11.50 per share. The Warrant Price is subject to adjustment upon the occurrence of certain events set forth in the Warrant Agreement.

Subject to the conditions set forth in the Warrant Agreement, the Warrants may be exercised only during the Exercise Period and to the extent not exercised by the end of such Exercise Period, such Warrants shall become void.

Reference is hereby made to the further provisions of this Warrant Certificate set forth on the reverse hereof and such further provisions shall for all purposes have the same effect as though fully set forth at this place.

This Warrant Certificate shall not be valid unless countersigned by the Warrant Agent, as such term is used in the Warrant Agreement.



This Warrant Certificate shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the internal laws of the State of New York, without regard to conflicts of laws principles thereof.

B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

CONTINENTAL STOCK TRANSFER & TRUST  
COMPANY, as Warrant Agent

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

---

[Form of Warrant Certificate]

[Reverse]

The Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate are part of a duly authorized issue of Warrants entitling the holder on exercise to receive shares of Class A Common Stock and are issued or to be issued pursuant to a Warrant Agreement dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 2020 (the “**Warrant Agreement**”), duly executed and delivered by the Company to Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, a New York corporation, as warrant agent (the “**Warrant Agent**”), which Warrant Agreement is hereby incorporated by reference in and made a part of this instrument and is hereby referred to for a description of the rights, limitation of rights, obligations, duties and immunities thereunder of the Warrant Agent, the Company and the holders (the words “**holders**” or “**holder**” meaning the Registered Holders or Registered Holder, respectively) of the Warrants. A copy of the Warrant Agreement may be obtained by the holder hereof upon written request to the Company. Defined terms used in this Warrant Certificate but not defined herein shall have the meanings given to them in the Warrant Agreement.

Warrants may be exercised at any time during the Exercise Period set forth in the Warrant Agreement. The holder of Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate may exercise them by surrendering this Warrant Certificate, with the form of election to purchase set forth hereon properly completed and executed, together with payment of the Warrant Price as specified in the Warrant Agreement (or through “cashless exercise” as provided for in the Warrant Agreement) at the principal corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent. In the event that upon any exercise of Warrants evidenced hereby the number of Warrants exercised shall be less than the total number of Warrants evidenced hereby, there shall be issued to the holder hereof or his, her or its assignee, a new Warrant Certificate evidencing the number of Warrants not exercised.

Notwithstanding anything else in this Warrant Certificate or the Warrant Agreement, no Warrant may be exercised unless at the time of exercise (i) a registration statement covering the shares of Class A Common Stock to be issued upon exercise is effective under the Securities Act and (ii) a prospectus thereunder relating to the shares of Class A Common Stock is current, except through “cashless exercise” as provided for in the Warrant Agreement.

The Warrant Agreement provides that upon the occurrence of certain events the number of shares of Class A Common Stock issuable upon the exercise of the Warrants set forth on the face hereof may, subject to certain conditions, be adjusted. If, upon exercise of a Warrant, the holder thereof would be entitled to receive a fractional interest in a share of Class A Common Stock, the Company shall, upon exercise, round down to the nearest whole number of shares of Class A Common Stock to be issued to the holder of the Warrant.

Warrant Certificates, when surrendered at the principal corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent by the Registered Holder thereof in person or by legal representative or attorney duly authorized in writing, may be exchanged, in the manner and subject to the limitations provided in the Warrant Agreement, but without payment of any service charge, for another Warrant Certificate or Warrant Certificates of like tenor evidencing in the aggregate a like number of Warrants.

Upon due presentation for registration of transfer of this Warrant Certificate at the office of the Warrant Agent a new Warrant Certificate or Warrant Certificates of like tenor and evidencing in the aggregate a like number of Warrants shall be issued to the transferee(s) in exchange for this Warrant Certificate, subject to the limitations provided in the Warrant Agreement, without charge except for any tax or other governmental charge imposed in connection therewith.

The Company and the Warrant Agent may deem and treat the Registered Holder(s) hereof as the absolute owner(s) of this Warrant Certificate (notwithstanding any notation of ownership or other writing hereon made by anyone), for the purpose of any exercise hereof, of any distribution to the holder(s) hereof, and for all other purposes, and neither the Company nor the Warrant Agent shall be affected by any notice to the contrary. Neither the Warrants nor this Warrant Certificate entitles any holder hereof to any rights of a stockholder of the Company.

---

Election to Purchase

(To Be Executed Upon Exercise of Warrant)

The undersigned hereby irrevocably elects to exercise the right, represented by this Warrant Certificate, to receive \_\_\_\_\_ shares of Class A Common Stock and herewith tenders payment for such shares of Class A Common Stock to the order of B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II (the “**Company**” ) in the amount of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ in accordance with the terms hereof. The undersigned requests that a certificate for such shares of Class A Common Stock be registered in the name of \_\_\_\_\_, whose address is \_\_\_\_\_ and that such shares of Class A Common Stock be delivered to whose address is \_\_\_\_\_. If said number of shares of Class A Common Stock is less than all of the shares of Class A Common Stock purchasable hereunder, the undersigned requests that a new Warrant Certificate representing the remaining balance of such shares of Class A Common Stock be registered in the name of \_\_\_\_\_, whose address is \_\_\_\_\_ and that such Warrant Certificate be delivered to \_\_\_\_\_, whose address is \_\_\_\_\_.

In the event that the Warrant has been called for redemption by the Company pursuant to Section 6 of the Warrant Agreement and the Company has required cashless exercise pursuant to Section 6.3 of the Warrant Agreement, the number of shares of Class A Common Stock that this Warrant is exercisable for shall be determined in accordance with subsection 3.3.1(b) and Section 6.3 of the Warrant Agreement.

In the event that the Warrant is a Private Placement Warrant, a Working Capital Warrant or a Forward Purchase Warrant that is to be exercised on a “cashless” basis pursuant to subsection 3.3.1(c) of the Warrant Agreement, the number of shares of Class A Common Stock that this Warrant is exercisable for shall be determined in accordance with subsection 3.3.1(c) of the Warrant Agreement.

In the event that the Warrant is to be exercised on a “cashless” basis pursuant to Section 7.4 of the Warrant Agreement, the number of shares of Class A Common Stock that this Warrant is exercisable for shall be determined in accordance with Section 7.4 of the Warrant Agreement.

In the event that the Warrant may be exercised, to the extent allowed by the Warrant Agreement, through cashless exercise (i) the number of shares of Class A Common Stock that this Warrant is exercisable for would be determined in accordance with the relevant section of the Warrant Agreement which allows for such cashless exercise and (ii) the holder hereof shall complete the following: The undersigned hereby irrevocably elects to exercise the right, represented by this Warrant Certificate, through the cashless exercise provisions of the Warrant Agreement, to receive shares of Class A Common Stock. If said number of shares of Class A Common Stock is less than all of the shares of Class A Common Stock purchasable hereunder (after giving effect to the cashless exercise), the undersigned requests that a new Warrant Certificate representing the remaining balance of such shares of Class A Common Stock be registered in the name of \_\_\_\_\_, whose address is \_\_\_\_\_ and that such Warrant Certificate be delivered to \_\_\_\_\_, whose address is \_\_\_\_\_.

[ Signature Page Follows ]

---

Date: \_\_\_\_\_, 20

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature)

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
(Address)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Tax Identification Number)

Signature Guaranteed:

\_\_\_\_\_

THE SIGNATURE(S) SHOULD BE GUARANTEED BY AN ELIGIBLE GUARANTOR INSTITUTION (BANKS, STOCKBROKERS, SAVINGS AND LOAN ASSOCIATIONS AND CREDIT UNIONS WITH MEMBERSHIP IN AN APPROVED SIGNATURE GUARANTEE MEDALLION PROGRAM, PURSUANT TO SEC RULE 17Ad-15 UNDER THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934, AS AMENDED (OR ANY SUCCESSOR RULE)).

\_\_\_\_\_

## WARRANT AGREEMENT

THIS WARRANT AGREEMENT (this “**Agreement**”), dated as of [ ], 2020, is by and between B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II, a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, a New York corporation, as warrant agent (in such capacity, the “**Warrant Agent**”, and also referred to herein as the “**Transfer Agent**”).

WHEREAS, the Company is engaged in an initial public offering (the “**Offering**”) of units of the Company’s equity securities, each such unit comprised of one share of Class A common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (“**Common Stock**”), and one-half of one redeemable Public Warrant (as defined below) (the “**Units**”) and, in connection therewith, has determined to issue and deliver up to 10,000,000 Public Warrants (or up to 11,500,000 Public Warrants if the Over-allotment Option (as defined below) is exercised in full) to public investors in the Offering (the “**Public Warrants**”);

WHEREAS, the Company has entered into that certain Private Placement Units Purchase Agreement with B. Riley Principal Sponsor Co. II, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company (the “**Sponsor**”), pursuant to which the Sponsor has agreed to purchase an aggregate of 575,000 Units (or up to 635,000 Units if the Over-allotment Option is exercised in full) simultaneously with the closing of the Offering (the “**Private Placement Units**”), which Private Placement Units include an aggregate of 287,500 private placement warrants (the “**Private Placement Warrants**”) (or up to 317,500 Private Placement Warrants if the Over-allotment Option is exercised in full), each bearing the legend set forth in Exhibit B hereto;

WHEREAS, the Company has entered into that certain Forward Purchase Agreement (the “**Forward Purchase Agreement**”) with an affiliate of the Sponsor (the “**Forward Purchase Investor**”) pursuant to which the Forward Purchase Investor will be issued 1,250,000 warrants (the “**Forward Purchase Warrants**”) included as part of Units to be sold to the Forward Purchase Investor in a private placement transaction to occur at or prior to the time of the Company’s initial Business Combination (as defined below), each bearing the legend set forth in Exhibit B hereto;

WHEREAS, in order to finance the Company’s transaction costs in connection with an intended initial Business Combination (as defined below), the Sponsor or an affiliate of the Sponsor or the Company’s officers and directors may, but are not obligated to, loan to the Company funds as the Company may require, of which up to \$1,500,000 of such loans may be convertible into additional units at a price of \$10.00 per unit, or up to 150,000 units, which will be identical to the Private Placement Units (the warrants underlying such units, “**Working Capital Warrants**”, and collectively with the Private Placement Warrants, the Forward Purchase Warrants and the Public Warrants, the “**Warrants**”);

WHEREAS, each whole Warrant entitles the holder thereof to purchase one share of Common Stock at a price of \$11.50 per whole share, subject to adjustment in either case as described herein;

WHEREAS, the Company has filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the “**Commission**”) a registration statement on Form S-1, File No. 333-[ ] (the “**Registration Statement**”) and prospectus (the “**Prospectus**”), for the registration, under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “**Securities Act**”), of the Units, the Public Warrants and the Common Stock included in the Units;

WHEREAS, the Company desires the Warrant Agent to act on behalf of the Company, and the Warrant Agent is willing to so act, in connection with the issuance, registration, transfer, exchange, redemption and exercise of the Warrants;

WHEREAS, the Company desires to provide for the form and provisions of the Warrants, the terms upon which they shall be issued and exercised, and the respective rights, limitation of rights, and immunities of the Company, the Warrant Agent, and the holders of the Warrants; and

---

WHEREAS, all acts and things have been done and performed which are necessary to make the Warrants, when executed on behalf of the Company and countersigned by or on behalf of the Warrant Agent, as provided herein, the valid, binding and legal obligations of the Company, and to authorize the execution and delivery of this Agreement.

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the mutual agreements herein contained, the parties hereto agree as follows:

1. Appointment of Warrant Agent. The Company hereby appoints the Warrant Agent to act as agent for the Company for the Warrants, and the Warrant Agent hereby accepts such appointment and agrees to perform the same in accordance with the terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement.

2. Warrants.

2.1 Form of Warrant. Each Warrant shall be issued in registered form only, and, if a physical certificate is issued, shall be in substantially the form of Exhibit A hereto, the provisions of which are incorporated herein and shall be signed by, or bear the facsimile signature of, the Chairman of the Board, President, Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, Secretary or other principal officer of the Company. In the event the person whose facsimile signature has been placed upon any Warrant shall have ceased to serve in the capacity in which such person signed the Warrant before such Warrant is issued, it may be issued with the same effect as if he or she had not ceased to be such at the date of issuance. All of the Public Warrants shall initially be represented by one or more book-entry certificates (each, a “**Book-Entry Warrant Certificate**”).

2.2 Effect of Countersignature. If a physical certificate is issued, unless and until countersigned by the Warrant Agent pursuant to this Agreement, a Warrant certificate shall be invalid and of no effect and may not be exercised by the holder thereof.

2.3 Registration.

2.3.1 Warrant Register. The Warrant Agent shall maintain books (the “**Warrant Register**”) for the registration of original issuance and the registration of transfer of the Warrants. Upon the initial issuance of the Warrants, the Warrant Agent shall issue and register the Warrants in the names of the respective holders thereof in such denominations and otherwise in accordance with instructions delivered to the Warrant Agent by the Company. All of the Public Warrants shall initially be represented by one or more Book-Entry Warrant Certificates deposited with The Depository Trust Company (the “**Depository**”) and registered in the name of Cede & Co., a nominee of the Depository. Ownership of beneficial interests in the Public Warrants shall be shown on, and the transfer of such ownership shall be effected through, records maintained by (i) the Depository or its nominee for each Book-Entry Warrant Certificate, or (ii) institutions that have accounts with the Depository (each such institution, with respect to a Warrant in its account, a “**Participant**”).

If the Depository subsequently ceases to make its book-entry settlement system available for the Public Warrants, the Company may instruct the Warrant Agent regarding making other arrangements for book-entry settlement. In the event that the Public Warrants are not eligible for, or it is no longer necessary to have the Public Warrants available in, book-entry form, the Warrant Agent shall provide written instructions to the Depository to deliver to the Warrant Agent for cancellation each Book-Entry Warrant Certificate, and the Company shall instruct the Warrant Agent to deliver to the Depository definitive certificates in physical form evidencing such Warrants (“**Definitive Warrant Certificate**”). Such Definitive Warrant Certificate shall be in the form annexed hereto as Exhibit A, with appropriate insertions, modifications and omissions, as provided above.

2.3.2 Registered Holder. Prior to due presentment for registration of transfer of any Warrant, the Company and the Warrant Agent may deem and treat the person in whose name such Warrant is registered in the Warrant Register (the “**Registered Holder**”) as the absolute owner of such Warrant and of each Warrant represented thereby (notwithstanding any notation of ownership or other writing on a Definitive Warrant Certificate made by anyone other than the Company or the Warrant Agent), for the purpose of any exercise thereof, and for all other purposes, and neither the Company nor the Warrant Agent shall be affected by any notice to the contrary.

2.4 Detachability of Warrants . The Common Stock and Public Warrants comprising the Units shall begin separate trading on the 52nd day following the date of the Prospectus or, if such 52nd day is not on a day, other than a Saturday, Sunday or federal holiday, on which banks in New York City are generally open for normal business (a “ **Business Day** ”), then on the immediately succeeding Business Day following such date, or earlier (the “ **Detachment Date** ”) with the consent of B. Riley FBR, Inc. (“ **B. Riley** ”), as representative of the several underwriters, but in no event shall the Common Stock and the Public Warrants comprising the Units be separately traded until (A) the Company has filed a current report on Form 8-K with the Commission containing an audited balance sheet reflecting the receipt by the Company of the gross proceeds of the Offering, including the proceeds received by the Company from the exercise by the underwriters of their right to purchase additional Units in the Offering (the “ **Over-allotment Option** ”), if the Over-allotment Option is exercised prior to the filing of the Form 8-K, and (B) the Company issues a press release and files with the Commission a current report on Form 8-K announcing when such separate trading shall begin.

2.5 Fractional Warrants . The Company shall not issue fractional Warrants other than as part of the Units, each of which is comprised of one share of Common Stock and one-half of one Public Warrant. If, upon the detachment of Public Warrants from Units or otherwise, a holder of Warrants would be entitled to receive a fractional Warrant, the Company shall round down to the nearest whole number of Warrants to be issued to such holder.

2.6 Private Placement Warrants, Forward Purchase Warrants and Working Capital Warrants . The Private Placement Warrants, Forward Purchase Warrants and the Working Capital Warrants shall be identical to the Public Warrants, except that so long as they are held by the Sponsor or any of its Permitted Transferees (as defined below) the Private Placement Warrants, Forward Purchase Warrants and the Working Capital Warrants: (i) may be exercised for cash or on a cashless basis, pursuant to subsection 3.3.1(c) hereof, (ii) may not be transferred, assigned or sold until the date that is thirty (30) days after the completion by the Company of an initial Business Combination (as defined below), (iii) will not be exercisable more than five years from the effective date of the Registration Statement in accordance with FINRA Rule 5110(f)(2)(G)(i), and (iv) shall not be redeemable by the Company; provided, however, that in the case of (ii), the Private Placement Warrants, the Forward Purchase Warrants, the Working Capital Warrants and any shares of Common Stock held by the Sponsor or its Permitted Transferees and issued upon exercise of the Private Placement Warrants, the Forward Purchase Warrants or the Working Capital Warrants may be transferred by the holders thereof:

(a) to the Company’s officers or directors, any affiliate or family member of any of the Company’s officers or directors or any affiliate of the Sponsor or to any member of the Sponsor;

(b) in the case of an individual, by gift to a member of such individual’s immediate family or to a trust, the beneficiary of which is a member of such individual’s immediate family, an affiliate of such individual or to a charitable organization;

(c) in the case of an individual, by virtue of the laws of descent and distribution upon death of such person;

(d) in the case of an individual, pursuant to a qualified domestic relations order;

(e) by private sales or transfers made in connection with any forward purchase agreement or similar arrangement or in connection with the consummation of an initial Business Combination at prices no greater than the price at which the Warrants were originally purchased;

(f) in the event of the Company’s liquidation prior to the consummation of the Company’s Business Combination;

(g) by virtue of the laws of the State of Delaware or the Sponsor’s limited liability company agreement upon dissolution of the Sponsor; or

(h) in the event that, subsequent to the consummation of an initial Business Combination, the Company completes a liquidation, merger, capital stock exchange, reorganization or other similar transaction which results in all of the Company's stockholders having the right to exchange their shares of Common Stock for cash, securities or other property;

provided, however, that, in the case of clauses (a) through (e) or (g), these transferees (the "**Permitted Transferees**") enter into a written agreement with the Company agreeing to be bound by the transfer restrictions in this Agreement.

2.7 Forward Purchase Warrants and Working Capital Warrants. The Forward Purchase Warrants and Working Capital Warrants shall be identical to the Private Placement Warrants.

### 3. Terms and Exercise of Warrants.

3.1 Warrant Price. Each Warrant shall entitle the Registered Holder thereof, subject to the provisions of such Warrant and of this Agreement, to purchase from the Company the number of shares of Common Stock stated therein, at the price of \$11.50 per share, subject to the adjustments provided in Section 4 hereof and in the last sentence of this Section 3.1. The term "Warrant Price" as used in this Agreement shall mean the price per share at which shares of Common Stock may be purchased at the time a Warrant is exercised. The Company in its sole discretion may lower the Warrant Price at any time prior to the Expiration Date (as defined below) for a period of not less than twenty (20) Business Days, provided, that the Company shall provide at least twenty (20) days prior written notice of such reduction to Registered Holders of the Warrants and, provided further that any such reduction shall be identical among all of the Warrants.

3.2 Duration of Warrants. A Warrant may be exercised only during the period (the "**Exercise Period**") commencing on the later of: (i) the date that is thirty (30) days after the first date on which the Company completes a merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or similar business combination, involving the Company and one or more businesses (a "**Business Combination**"), or (ii) the date that is twelve (12) months from the date of the closing of the Offering, and terminating on the earlier to occur of: (x) at 5:00 p.m., New York City time on the date that is five (5) years after the date on which the Company completes its initial Business Combination, (y) the liquidation of the Company or (z) other than with respect to the Private Placement Warrants, Forward Purchase Warrants and Working Capital Warrants, the Redemption Date (as defined below) as provided in Section 6.2 hereof (the "**Expiration Date**"); provided, however, that the exercise of any Warrant shall be subject to the satisfaction of any applicable conditions, as set forth in subsection 3.3.2 below, with respect to an effective registration statement. Except with respect to the right to receive the Redemption Price (as defined below) (other than with respect to a Private Placement Warrant, Forward Purchase Warrant or a Working Capital Warrant) in the event of a redemption (as set forth in Section 6 hereof), each outstanding Warrant (other than a Private Placement Warrant, Forward Purchase Warrant or a Working Capital Warrant in the event of a redemption) not exercised on or before the Expiration Date shall become void, and all rights thereunder and all rights in respect thereof under this Agreement shall cease at 5:00 p.m. New York City time on the Expiration Date. The Company in its sole discretion may extend the duration of the Warrants by delaying the Expiration Date; provided, that the Company shall provide at least twenty (20) days prior written notice of any such extension to Registered Holders of the Warrants and, provided further that any such extension shall be identical in duration among all the Warrants.

### 3.3 Exercise of Warrants.

3.3.1 Payment. Subject to the provisions of the Warrant and this Agreement, a Warrant may be exercised by the Registered Holder thereof by delivering to the Warrant Agent at its corporate trust department (i) the Definitive Warrant Certificate evidencing the Warrants to be exercised, or, in the case of a Book-Entry Warrant Certificate, the Warrants to be exercised (the "**Book-Entry Warrants**") on the records of the Depository to an account of the Warrant Agent at the Depository designated for such purposes in writing by the Warrant Agent to the Depository from time to time, (ii) an election to purchase ("**Election to Purchase**") shares of Common Stock pursuant to the exercise of a Warrant, properly completed and executed by the Registered Holder on the reverse of the Definitive Warrant Certificate or, in the case of a Book-Entry Warrant Certificate, properly delivered by the Participant in accordance with the Depository's procedures, and (iii) payment in full of the Warrant Price for each full share of Common Stock as to which the Warrant is exercised and any and all applicable taxes due in connection with the exercise of the Warrant, the exchange of the Warrant for the shares of Common Stock and the issuance of such shares of Common Stock, as follows:

(a) in lawful money of the United States, in good certified check or good bank draft payable to the Warrant Agent or by wire of immediately available funds;



(b) in the event of a redemption pursuant to Section 6 hereof in which the Company's board of directors (the "**Board**") has elected to require all holders of the Warrants to exercise such Warrants on a "cashless basis," by surrendering the Warrants for that number of shares of Common Stock equal to the quotient obtained by dividing (x) the product of the number of shares of Common Stock underlying the Warrants, multiplied by the excess of the "Fair Market Value", as defined in this subsection 3.3.1(b), over the Warrant Price by (y) the Fair Market Value. Solely for purposes of this subsection 3.3.1(b) and Section 6.3, the "Fair Market Value" shall mean the average reported last sale price of the Common Stock for the ten (10) trading days ending on the third trading day prior to the date on which the notice of redemption is sent to the holders of the Warrants, pursuant to Section 6 hereof;

(c) with respect to any Private Placement Warrant, Forward Purchase Warrant or Working Capital Warrant, so long as such Private Placement Warrant, Forward Purchase Warrant or Working Capital Warrant is held by the Sponsor or its Permitted Transferee, by surrendering the Warrants for that number of shares of Common Stock equal to the quotient obtained by dividing (x) the product of the number of shares of Common Stock underlying the Warrants, multiplied by the excess of the "Fair Market Value" (as defined in this subsection 3.3.1(c)) over the Warrant Price, by (y) the Fair Market Value. Solely for purposes of this subsection 3.3.1(c), the "Fair Market Value" shall mean the average reported last sale price of the Common Stock for the ten (10) trading days ending on the third trading day prior to the date on which notice of exercise of the Warrant is sent to the Warrant Agent; or

(d) as provided in Section 7.4 hereof.

3.3.2 Issuance of Shares of Common Stock on Exercise. As soon as practicable after the exercise of any Warrant and the clearance of the funds in payment of the Warrant Price (if payment is pursuant to subsection 3.3.1(a)), the Company shall issue to the Registered Holder of such Warrant a book-entry position or certificate, as applicable, for the number of full shares of Common Stock to which he, she or it is entitled, registered in such name or names as may be directed by him, her or it, and if such Warrant shall not have been exercised in full, a new book-entry position or countersigned Warrant, as applicable, for the number of shares of Common Stock as to which such Warrant shall not have been exercised. If fewer than all the Warrants evidenced by a Book-Entry Warrant Certificate are exercised, a notation shall be made to the records maintained by the Depository, its nominee for each Book-Entry Warrant Certificate, or a Participant, as appropriate, evidencing the balance of the Warrants remaining after such exercise. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company shall not be obligated to deliver any shares of Common Stock pursuant to the exercise of a Warrant and shall have no obligation to settle such Warrant exercise unless a registration statement under the Securities Act with respect to the shares of Common Stock underlying the Public Warrants is then effective and a prospectus relating thereto is current, subject to the Company's satisfying its obligations under Section 7.4. No Warrant shall be exercisable and the Company shall not be obligated to issue shares of Common Stock upon exercise of a Warrant unless the Common Stock issuable upon such Warrant exercise has been registered, qualified or deemed to be exempt from registration or qualification under the securities laws of the state of residence of the Registered Holder of the Warrants. In the event that the conditions in the two immediately preceding sentences are not satisfied with respect to a Warrant, the holder of such Warrant shall not be entitled to exercise such Warrant and such Warrant may have no value and expire worthless, in which case the purchaser of a Unit containing such Public Warrants shall have paid the full purchase price for the Unit solely for the shares of Common Stock underlying such Unit. Subject to Section 4.6 of this Agreement, a Registered Holder of Public Warrants may exercise its Public Warrants only for a whole number of shares of Common Stock. In no event will the Company be required to net cash settle the Warrant exercise. The Company may require holders of Public Warrants to settle the Warrant on a "cashless basis" pursuant to subsection 3.3.1(b) and Section 7.4. If, by reason of any exercise of Warrants on a "cashless basis," the holder of any Warrant would be entitled, upon the exercise of such Warrant, to receive a fractional interest in a share of Common Stock, the Company shall round down to the nearest whole number, the number of shares of Common Stock to be issued to such holder.

3.3.3 Valid Issuance. All shares of Common Stock issued upon the proper exercise of a Warrant in conformity with this Agreement shall be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable.

3.3.4 Date of Issuance . Each person in whose name any book-entry position or certificate, as applicable, for shares of Common Stock is issued shall for all purposes be deemed to have become the holder of record of such shares of Common Stock on the date on which the Warrant, or book-entry position representing such Warrant, was surrendered and payment of the Warrant Price was made, irrespective of the date of delivery of such certificate in the case of a certificated Warrant, except that, if the date of such surrender and payment is a date when the share transfer books of the Company or book-entry system of the Warrant Agent are closed, such person shall be deemed to have become the holder of such shares of Common Stock at the close of business on the next succeeding date on which the share transfer books or book-entry system are open.

3.3.5 Maximum Percentage . A holder of a Warrant may notify the Company in writing in the event it elects to be subject to the provisions contained in this subsection 3.3.5 ; however , no holder of a Warrant shall be subject to this subsection 3.3.5 unless he, she or it makes such election. If the election is made by a holder, the Warrant Agent shall not effect the exercise of the holder's Warrant, and such holder shall not have the right to exercise such Warrant, to the extent that after giving effect to such exercise, such person (together with such person's affiliates), to the Warrant Agent's actual knowledge, would beneficially own in excess of 4.9% or 9.8% (as specified by the holder)(the "**Maximum Percentage** ") of the shares of Common Stock outstanding immediately after giving effect to such exercise. For purposes of the foregoing sentence, the aggregate number of shares of Common Stock beneficially owned by such person and its affiliates shall include the number of shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrant with respect to which the determination of such sentence is being made, but shall exclude shares of Common Stock that would be issuable upon (x) exercise of the remaining, unexercised portion of the Warrant beneficially owned by such person and its affiliates and (y) exercise or conversion of the unexercised or unconverted portion of any other securities of the Company beneficially owned by such person and its affiliates (including, without limitation, any convertible notes or convertible preferred stock or warrants) subject to a limitation on conversion or exercise analogous to the limitation contained herein. Except as set forth in the preceding sentence, for purposes of this paragraph, beneficial ownership shall be calculated in accordance with Section 13(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "**Exchange Act** "). For purposes of the Warrant, in determining the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock, the holder may rely on the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock as reflected in (1) the Company's most recent annual report on Form 10-K, quarterly report on Form 10-Q, current report on Form 8-K or other public filing with the Commission as the case may be, (2) a more recent public announcement by the Company or (3) any other notice by the Company or the Transfer Agent setting forth the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding. For any reason at any time, upon the written request of the holder of the Warrant, the Company shall, within two (2) Business Days, confirm orally and in writing to such holder the number of shares of Common Stock then outstanding. In any case, the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock shall be determined after giving effect to the conversion or exercise of equity securities of the Company by the holder and its affiliates since the date as of which such number of outstanding shares of Common Stock was reported. By written notice to the Company, the holder of a Warrant may from time to time increase or decrease the Maximum Percentage applicable to such holder to any other percentage specified in such notice; provided , however , that any such increase shall not be effective until the sixty-first (61st) day after such notice is delivered to the Company.

#### 4. Adjustments .

##### 4.1 Stock Dividends .

4.1.1 Split-Ups . If after the date hereof, and subject to the provisions of Section 4.6 below, the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock is increased by a stock dividend payable in shares of Common Stock, or by a split-up of shares of Common Stock or other similar event, then, on the effective date of such stock dividend, split-up or similar event, the number of shares of Common Stock issuable on exercise of each Warrant shall be increased in proportion to such increase in the outstanding shares of Common Stock. A rights offering to holders of the Common Stock entitling holders to purchase shares of Common Stock at a price less than the "Fair Market Value" (as defined below) shall be deemed a stock dividend of a number of shares of Common Stock equal to the product of (i) the number of shares of Common Stock actually sold in such rights offering (or issuable under any other equity securities sold in such rights offering that are convertible into or exercisable for the Common Stock) and (ii) one (1) minus the quotient of (x) the price per share of Common Stock paid in such rights offering divided by (y) the Fair Market Value. For purposes of this subsection 4.1.1 , (a) if the rights offering is for securities convertible into or exercisable for Common Stock, in determining the price payable for Common Stock, there shall be taken into account any consideration received for such rights, as well as any additional amount payable upon exercise or conversion and (b) "Fair Market Value" means the volume weighted average price of the Common Stock as reported during the ten (10) trading day period ending on the trading day prior to the first date on which the shares of Common Stock trade on the applicable exchange or in the applicable market, regular way, without the right to receive such rights.

4.1.2 Extraordinary Dividends . If the Company, at any time while the Warrants are outstanding and unexpired, shall pay a dividend or make a distribution in cash, securities or other assets to the holders of the Common Stock on account of such shares of Common Stock (or other shares of the Company's capital stock into which the Warrants are convertible), other than (a) as described in subsection 4.1.1 above, (b) Ordinary Cash Dividends (as defined below), (c) to satisfy the redemption rights of the holders of the Common Stock in connection with a proposed initial Business Combination, (d) to satisfy the redemption rights of the holders of Common Stock in connection with a stockholder vote to amend the Company's amended and restated certificate of incorporation (the "**Charter**") to modify the substance or timing of the Company's obligation to redeem 100% of the shares of Common Stock included in the Units sold in the Offering if the Company does not complete the Business Combination within the time period set forth in the Company's Charter or (e) in connection with the redemption of public shares of Common Stock upon the failure of the Company to complete its initial Business Combination and any subsequent distribution of its assets upon its liquidation (any such non-excluded event being referred to herein as an "**Extraordinary Dividend**"), then the Warrant Price shall be decreased, effective immediately after the effective date of such Extraordinary Dividend, by the amount of cash and/or the fair market value (as determined by the Board, in good faith) of any securities or other assets paid on each share of Common Stock in respect of such Extraordinary Dividend. For purposes of this subsection 4.1.2, "**Ordinary Cash Dividends**" means any cash dividend or cash distribution which, when combined on a per share basis, with the per share amounts of all other cash dividends and cash distributions paid on the Common Stock during the 365-day period ending on the date of declaration of such dividend or distribution (as adjusted to appropriately reflect any of the events referred to in other subsections of this Section 4 and excluding cash dividends or cash distributions that resulted in an adjustment to the Warrant Price or to the number of shares of Common Stock issuable on exercise of each Warrant) does not exceed \$0.50 (being 5% of the offering price of the Units in the Offering).

4.2 Aggregation of Shares . If, after the date hereof and subject to the provisions of Section 4.6 hereof, the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock is decreased by a consolidation, combination, reverse stock split or reclassification of shares of Common Stock or other similar event, then, on the effective date of such consolidation, combination, reverse stock split, reclassification or similar event, the number of shares of Common Stock issuable on exercise of each Warrant shall be decreased in proportion to such decrease in outstanding shares of Common Stock.

#### 4.3 Adjustments in Warrant Price .

4.3.1 Whenever the number of shares of Common Stock purchasable upon the exercise of the Warrants is adjusted, as provided in subsection 4.1.1 or Section 4.2 above, the Warrant Price shall be adjusted (to the nearest cent) by multiplying such Warrant Price immediately prior to such adjustment by a fraction (x) the numerator of which shall be the number of shares of Common Stock purchasable upon the exercise of the Warrants immediately prior to such adjustment, and (y) the denominator of which shall be the number of shares of Common Stock so purchasable immediately thereafter.

4.3.2 If (x) the Company issues additional shares of Common Stock or securities convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for shares of Common Stock for capital raising purposes in connection with the closing of the initial Business Combination (excluding any issuance of securities under the Forward Purchase Agreement), at an issue price or effective issue price of less than \$9.20 per share of Common Stock (with such issue price or effective issue price to be determined in good faith by the Board and, in the case of any such issuance to the Sponsor or its affiliates, without taking into account any shares of Class B common stock of the Company held by the Sponsor or such affiliates, as applicable, prior to such issuance (the "**Newly Issued Price**")), (y) the aggregate gross proceeds from such issuances represent more than 60% of the total equity proceeds, and interest thereon, available for funding the initial Business Combination, and (z) the volume weighted average trading price of the Common Stock during the 20 trading day period starting on the trading day prior to the day on which the Company consummates the Business Combination (the "**Market Value**") is below \$9.20 per share, the Warrant Price shall be adjusted (to the nearest cent) to be equal to 115% of the higher of the Market Value and the Newly Issued Price, and the last sales price of the Common Stock that triggers the Company's right to redeem the Warrants pursuant to Section 6.1 below shall be adjusted (to the nearest cent) to be equal to 180% of the higher of the Market Value and the Newly Issued Price.

4.4 Replacement of Securities upon Reorganization, etc. . In case of any reclassification or reorganization of the outstanding shares of Common Stock (other than a change under subsections 4.1.1 or 4.1.2 or Section 4.2 hereof or that solely affects the par value of such shares of Common Stock), or in the case of any merger or consolidation of the Company with or into another entity or conversion of the Company as another entity (other than a consolidation or merger in which the Company is the continuing corporation and is not a subsidiary of another entity whose stockholders did not own all or substantially all of the Common Stock of the Company in substantially the same proportions immediately before such transaction) and that does not result in any reclassification or reorganization of the outstanding shares of Common Stock), or in the case of any sale or conveyance to another entity of the assets or other property of the Company as an entirety or substantially as an entirety in connection with which the Company is dissolved, the holders of the Warrants shall thereafter have the right to purchase and receive, upon the basis and upon the terms and conditions specified in the Warrants and in lieu of the shares of Common Stock of the Company immediately theretofore purchasable and receivable upon the exercise of the rights represented thereby, the kind and amount of shares of stock or other securities or property (including cash) receivable upon such reclassification, reorganization, merger or consolidation, or upon a dissolution following any such sale or transfer, that the holder of the Warrants would have received if such holder had exercised his, her or its Warrant(s) immediately prior to such event (the “ **Alternative Issuance** ” ); provided, however , that (i) if the holders of the Common Stock were entitled to exercise a right of election as to the kind or amount of securities, cash or other assets receivable upon such consolidation or merger, then the kind and amount of securities, cash or other assets constituting the Alternative Issuance for which each Warrant shall become exercisable shall be deemed to be the weighted average of the kind and amount received per share by the holders of the Common Stock in such consolidation or merger that affirmatively make such election, and (ii) if a tender, exchange or redemption offer shall have been made to and accepted by the holders of the Common Stock (other than a tender, exchange or redemption offer made by the Company in connection with redemption rights held by stockholders of the Company as provided for in the Company’s Charter or as a result of the redemption of shares of Common Stock by the Company if a proposed initial Business Combination is presented to the stockholders of the Company for approval) under circumstances in which, upon completion of such tender or exchange offer, the maker thereof, together with members of any group (within the meaning of Rule 13d-5(b)(1) under the Exchange Act (or any successor rule)) of which such maker is a part, and together with any affiliate or associate of such maker (within the meaning of Rule 12b-2 under the Exchange Act (or any successor rule)) and any members of any such group of which any such affiliate or associate is a part, own beneficially (within the meaning of Rule 13d-3 under the Exchange Act (or any successor rule)) more than 50% of the outstanding shares of Common Stock, the holder of a Warrant shall be entitled to receive as the Alternative Issuance, the highest amount of cash, securities or other property to which such holder would actually have been entitled as a stockholder if such Warrant holder had exercised the Warrant prior to the expiration of such tender or exchange offer, accepted such offer and all of the Common Stock held by such holder had been purchased pursuant to such tender or exchange offer, subject to adjustments (from and after the consummation of such tender or exchange offer) as nearly equivalent as possible to the adjustments provided for in this Section 4 ; provided, further , that if less than 70% of the consideration receivable by the holders of the Common Stock in the applicable event is payable in the form of common stock in the successor entity that is listed for trading on a national securities exchange or is quoted in an established over-the-counter market, or is to be so listed for trading or quoted immediately following such event, and if the Registered Holder properly exercises the Warrant within thirty (30) days following the public disclosure of the consummation of such applicable event by the Company pursuant to a Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the Commission, the Warrant Price shall be reduced by an amount (in dollars) equal to the difference (but in no event less than zero) of (i) the Warrant Price in effect prior to such reduction minus (ii) (A) the Per Share Consideration (as defined below) minus (B) the Black-Scholes Warrant Value (as defined below). The “ **Black-Scholes Warrant Value** ” means the value of a Warrant immediately prior to the consummation of the applicable event based on the Black-Scholes Warrant Model for a Capped American Call on Bloomberg Financial Markets (“ **Bloomberg** ”). For purposes of calculating such amount, (1) Section 6 of this Agreement shall be taken into account, (2) the price of each share of Common Stock shall be the volume weighted average price of the Common Stock as reported during the ten (10) trading day period ending on the trading day prior to the effective date of the applicable event, (3) the assumed volatility shall be the 90 day volatility obtained from the HVT function on Bloomberg determined as of the trading day immediately prior to the day of the announcement of the applicable event, and (4) the assumed risk-free interest rate shall correspond to the U.S. Treasury rate for a period equal to the remaining term of the Warrant. “ **Per Share Consideration** ” means (i) if the consideration paid to holders of the Common Stock consists exclusively of cash, the amount of such cash per share of Common Stock, and (ii) in all other cases, the volume weighted average price of the Common Stock as reported during the ten (10) trading day period ending on the trading day prior to the effective date of the applicable event. If any reclassification or reorganization also results in a change in shares of Common Stock covered by subsection 4.1.1 , then such adjustment shall be made pursuant to subsection 4.1.1 or Sections 4.2 , 4.3 and this Section 4.4 . The provisions of this Section 4.4 shall similarly apply to successive reclassifications, reorganizations, mergers or consolidations, sales or other transfers. In no event will the Warrant Price be reduced to less than the par value per share issuable upon exercise of such Warrant.

4.5 Notices of Changes in Warrant. Upon every adjustment of the Warrant Price or the number of shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of a Warrant, the Company shall give written notice thereof to the Warrant Agent, which notice shall state the Warrant Price resulting from such adjustment and the increase or decrease, if any, in the number of shares of Common Stock purchasable at such price upon the exercise of a Warrant, setting forth in reasonable detail the method of calculation and the facts upon which such calculation is based. Upon the occurrence of any event specified in Sections 4.1, 4.2, 4.3 or 4.4, the Company shall give written notice of the occurrence of such event to each holder of a Warrant, at the last address set forth for such holder in the Warrant Register, of the record date or the effective date of the event. Failure to give such notice, or any defect therein, shall not affect the legality or validity of such event.

4.6 No Fractional Shares. Notwithstanding any provision contained in this Agreement to the contrary, the Company shall not issue fractional shares of Common Stock upon the exercise of Warrants. If, by reason of any adjustment made pursuant to this Section 4, the holder of any Warrant would be entitled, upon the exercise of such Warrant, to receive a fractional interest in a share, the Company shall, upon such exercise, round down to the nearest whole number the number of shares of Common Stock to be issued to such holder.

4.7 Form of Warrant. The form of Warrant need not be changed because of any adjustment pursuant to this Section 4, and Warrants issued after such adjustment may state the same Warrant Price and the same number of shares of Common Stock as is stated in the Warrants initially issued pursuant to this Agreement; provided, however, that the Company may at any time in its sole discretion make any change in the form of Warrant that the Company may deem appropriate and that does not affect the substance thereof, and any Warrant thereafter issued or countersigned, whether in exchange or substitution for an outstanding Warrant or otherwise, may be in the form as so changed.

4.8 Other Events. In case any event shall occur affecting the Company as to which none of the provisions of the preceding subsections of this Section 4 are strictly applicable, but which would require an adjustment to the terms of the Warrants in order to (i) avoid an adverse impact on the Warrants and (ii) effectuate the intent and purpose of this Section 4, then, in each such case, the Company shall appoint a firm of independent public accountants, investment banking or other appraisal firm of recognized national standing, which shall give its opinion as to whether or not any adjustment to the rights represented by the Warrants is necessary to effectuate the intent and purpose of this Section 4 and, if they determine that an adjustment is necessary, the terms of such adjustment. The Company shall adjust the terms of the Warrants in a manner that is consistent with any adjustment recommended in such opinion.

4.9 No Adjustment. For the avoidance of doubt, no adjustment shall be made to the terms of the Warrants solely as a result of an adjustment to the conversion ratio of the Company's Class B common stock (the "**Class B Common Stock**") into shares of Common Stock or the conversion of the shares of Class B Common Stock into shares of Common Stock, in each case, pursuant to the Charter, as amended from time to time.

## 5. Transfer and Exchange of Warrants.

5.1 Registration of Transfer. The Warrant Agent shall register the transfer, from time to time, of any outstanding Warrant upon the Warrant Register, upon surrender of such Warrant for transfer, in the case of a certificated Warrant, properly endorsed with signatures properly guaranteed and accompanied by appropriate instructions for transfer. Upon any such transfer, a new Warrant representing an equal aggregate number of Warrants shall be issued and the old Warrant shall be cancelled by the Warrant Agent. In the case of certificated Warrants, the Warrants so cancelled shall be delivered by the Warrant Agent to the Company from time to time upon request.

5.2 Procedure for Surrender of Warrants . Warrants may be surrendered to the Warrant Agent, together with a written request for exchange or transfer, and thereupon the Warrant Agent shall issue in exchange therefor one or more new Warrants as requested by the Registered Holder of the Warrants so surrendered, representing an equal aggregate number of Warrants; provided, however, that except as otherwise provided herein or in any Book-Entry Warrant Certificate or Definitive Warrant Certificate, each Book-Entry Warrant Certificate and Definitive Warrant Certificate may be transferred only in whole and only to the Depository, to another nominee of the Depository, to a successor depository, or to a nominee of a successor depository; provided further, however, that in the event that a Warrant surrendered for transfer bears a restrictive legend (as in the case of the Private Placement Warrants, Forward Purchase Warrants and the Working Capital Warrants), the Warrant Agent shall not cancel such Warrant and issue new Warrants in exchange thereof until the Warrant Agent has received an opinion of counsel for the Company stating that such transfer may be made and indicating whether the new Warrants must also bear a restrictive legend.

5.3 Fractional Warrants . The Warrant Agent shall not be required to effect any registration of transfer or exchange which shall result in the issuance of a warrant certificate or book-entry position for a fraction of a warrant, except as part of the Units.

5.4 Service Charges . No service charge shall be made for any exchange or registration of transfer of Warrants.

5.5 Warrant Execution and Countersignature . The Warrant Agent is hereby authorized to countersign and to deliver, in accordance with the terms of this Agreement, the Warrants required to be issued pursuant to the provisions of this Section 5 , and the Company, whenever required by the Warrant Agent, shall supply the Warrant Agent with Warrants duly executed on behalf of the Company for such purpose.

5.6 Transfer of Warrants . Prior to the Detachment Date, the Public Warrants may be transferred or exchanged only together with the Unit in which such Warrant is included, and only for the purpose of effecting, or in conjunction with, a transfer or exchange of such Unit. Furthermore, each transfer of a Unit on the register relating to such Units shall operate also to transfer the Warrants included in such Unit. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the provisions of this Section 5.6 shall have no effect on any transfer of Warrants on and after the Detachment Date.

## 6. Redemption .

6.1 Redemption . Subject to Section 6.4 hereof, not less than all of the outstanding Warrants may be redeemed, at the option of the Company, at any time while they are exercisable and prior to their expiration, at the office of the Warrant Agent, upon notice to the Registered Holders of the Warrants, as described in Section 6.2 below, at the price of \$0.01 per Warrant (the “ **Redemption Price** ” ), provided that the last sales price of the Common Stock reported has been at least \$18.00 per share (subject to adjustment in compliance with Section 4 hereof), on each of twenty (20) trading days within the thirty (30) trading-day period ending on the third Business Day prior to the date on which notice of the redemption is given and provided that there is an effective registration statement covering the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants, and a current prospectus relating thereto, available throughout the 30-day Redemption Period (as defined in Section 6.2 below) or the Company has elected to require the exercise of the Warrants on a “cashless basis” pursuant to subsection 3.3.1 .

6.2 Date Fixed for, and Notice of, Redemption . In the event that the Company elects to redeem all of the Warrants, the Company shall fix a date for the redemption (the “ **Redemption Date** ”). Notice of redemption shall be mailed by first class mail, postage prepaid, by the Company not less than thirty (30) days prior to the Redemption Date (such period, the “ **Redemption Period** ”) to the Registered Holders of the Warrants to be redeemed at their last addresses as they shall appear on the registration books. Any notice mailed in the manner herein provided shall be conclusively presumed to have been duly given whether or not the Registered Holder received such notice.

6.3 Exercise After Notice of Redemption . The Warrants may be exercised for cash (or on a “cashless basis” in accordance with subsection 3.3.1(b) of this Agreement) at any time after notice of redemption shall have been given by the Company pursuant to Section 6.2 hereof and prior to the Redemption Date. In the event that the Company determines to require all holders of Warrants to exercise their Warrants on a “cashless basis” pursuant to subsection 3.3.1 , the notice of redemption shall contain the information necessary to calculate the number of shares of Common Stock to be received upon exercise of the Warrants, including the “Fair Market Value” (as such term is defined in subsection 3.3.1(b) hereof) in such case. On and after the Redemption Date, the record holder of the Warrants shall have no further rights except to receive, upon surrender of the Warrants, the Redemption Price.

6.4 Exclusion of Private Placement Warrants, Forward Purchase Warrants and Working Capital Warrants . The Company agrees that the redemption rights provided in this Section 6 shall not apply to the Private Placement Warrants, Forward Purchase Warrants or the Working Capital Warrants if at the time of the redemption such Private Placement Warrants, Forward Purchase Warrants or Working Capital Warrants continue to be held by the Sponsor or its Permitted Transferees. However, once such Private Placement Warrants, Forward Purchase Warrants or Working Capital Warrants are transferred (other than to Permitted Transferees under Section 2.6), the Company may redeem the Private Placement Warrants, Forward Purchase Warrants and the Working Capital Warrants pursuant to Section 6.1, provided that the criteria for redemption are met, including the opportunity of the holder of such Private Placement Warrants, Forward Purchase Warrants or Working Capital Warrants to exercise the Private Placement Warrants, Forward Purchase Warrants or Working Capital Warrants prior to redemption pursuant to Section 6.3. Private Placement Warrants, Forward Purchase Warrants and Working Capital Warrants that are transferred to persons other than Permitted Transferees shall upon such transfer cease to be Private Placement Warrants, Forward Purchase Warrants or Working Capital Warrants and shall become Public Warrants under this Agreement.

#### 7. Other Provisions Relating to Rights of Holders of Warrants .

7.1 No Rights as Stockholder . A Warrant does not entitle the Registered Holder thereof to any of the rights of a stockholder of the Company, including, without limitation, the right to receive dividends, or other distributions, exercise any preemptive rights to vote or to consent or to receive notice as stockholders in respect of the meetings of stockholders or the election of directors of the Company or any other matter.

7.2 Lost, Stolen, Mutilated, or Destroyed Warrants . If any Warrant is lost, stolen, mutilated, or destroyed, the Company and the Warrant Agent may on such terms as to indemnity or otherwise as they may in their discretion impose (which shall, in the case of a mutilated Warrant, include the surrender thereof), issue a new Warrant of like denomination, tenor, and date as the Warrant so lost, stolen, mutilated, or destroyed. Any such new Warrant shall constitute a substitute contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the allegedly lost, stolen, mutilated, or destroyed Warrant shall be at any time enforceable by anyone.

7.3 Reservation of Common Stock . The Company shall at all times reserve and keep available a number of its authorized but unissued shares of Common Stock that shall be sufficient to permit the exercise in full of all outstanding Warrants issued pursuant to this Agreement.

#### 7.4 Registration of Common Stock; Cashless Exercise at Company's Option .

7.4.1 Registration of the Common Stock . The Company agrees that as soon as practicable, but in no event later than fifteen (15) Business Days after the closing of its initial Business Combination, it shall use its best efforts to file with the Commission a registration statement registering, under the Securities Act, the issuance of the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants. The Company shall use its best efforts to cause the same to become effective and to maintain the effectiveness of such registration statement, and a current prospectus relating thereto, until the expiration of the Warrants in accordance with the provisions of this Agreement. If any such registration statement has not been declared effective by the 60th Business Day following the closing of the Business Combination, holders of the Warrants shall have the right, during the period beginning on the 61st Business Day after the closing of the Business Combination and ending upon such registration statement being declared effective by the Commission, and during any other period when the Company shall fail to have maintained an effective registration statement covering the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants, to exercise such Warrants on a "cashless basis," by exchanging the Warrants (in accordance with Section 3(a)(9) of the Securities Act (or any successor rule) or another exemption) for that number of shares of Common Stock equal to the quotient obtained by dividing (x) the product of the number of shares of Common Stock underlying the Warrants, multiplied by the excess of the "Fair Market Value" (as defined below) over the Warrant Price by (y) the Fair Market Value. Solely for purposes of this subsection 7.4.1, "Fair Market Value" shall mean the average last sales price of the Common Stock for the ten (10) trading day period ending on the trading day prior to the date that notice of exercise is received by the Warrant Agent from the holder of such Warrants or its securities broker or intermediary. The date that notice of cashless exercise is received by the Warrant Agent shall be conclusively determined by the Warrant Agent. In connection with the "cashless exercise" of a Public Warrant, the Company shall, upon request, provide the Warrant Agent with an opinion of counsel for the Company (which shall be an outside law firm with securities law experience) stating that (i) the exercise of the Warrants on a cashless basis in accordance with this subsection 7.4.1 is not required to be registered under the Securities Act and (ii) the shares of Common Stock issued upon such exercise shall be freely tradable under United States federal securities laws by anyone who is not an affiliate (as such term is defined in Rule 144 under the Securities Act (or any successor rule)) of the Company and, accordingly, shall not be required to bear a restrictive legend. Except as provided in subsection 7.4.2, for the avoidance of any doubt, unless and until all of the Warrants have been exercised or have expired, the Company shall continue to be obligated to comply with its registration obligations under the first three sentences of this subsection 7.4.1.

7.4.2 Cashless Exercise at Company's Option . If the Common Stock is at the time of any exercise of a Warrant not listed on a national securities exchange such that it satisfies the definition of a "covered security" under Section 18(b)(1) of the Securities Act (or any successor rule), the Company may, at its option, require holders of Public Warrants who exercise Public Warrants to exercise such Public Warrants on a "cashless basis" in accordance with Section 3(a)(9) of the Securities Act (or any successor rule) as described in subsection 7.4.1 and (i) in the event the Company so elects, the Company shall not be required to file or maintain in effect a registration statement for the registration, under the Securities Act, of the Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants, notwithstanding anything in this Agreement to the contrary or (ii) if the Company does not so elect, the Company agrees to use its best efforts to register or qualify for sale the Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Public Warrants under the blue sky laws of the state of residence of the exercising Public Warrant holder to the extent an exemption is not available.

## 8. Concerning the Warrant Agent and Other Matters .

8.1 Payment of Taxes . The Company shall from time to time promptly pay all taxes and charges that may be imposed upon the Company or the Warrant Agent in respect of the issuance or delivery of shares of Common Stock upon the exercise of the Warrants, but the Company shall not be obligated to pay any transfer taxes in respect of the Warrants or such shares of Common Stock.

## 8.2 Resignation, Consolidation, or Merger of Warrant Agent .

8.2.1 Appointment of Successor Warrant Agent . The Warrant Agent, or any successor to it hereafter appointed, may resign its duties and be discharged from all further duties and liabilities hereunder after giving sixty (60) days' notice in writing to the Company. If the office of the Warrant Agent becomes vacant by resignation or incapacity to act or otherwise, the Company shall appoint in writing a successor Warrant Agent in place of the Warrant Agent. If the Company shall fail to make such appointment within a period of thirty (30) days after it has been notified in writing of such resignation or incapacity by the Warrant Agent or by the holder of a Warrant (who shall, with such notice, submit his, her or its Warrant for inspection by the Company), then the holder of any Warrant may apply to the Supreme Court of the State of New York for the County of New York for the appointment of a successor Warrant Agent at the Company's cost. Any successor Warrant Agent, whether appointed by the Company or by such court, shall be a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of New York, in good standing and having its principal office in the Borough of Manhattan, City and State of New York, and authorized under such laws to exercise corporate trust powers and subject to supervision or examination by federal or state authority. After appointment, any successor Warrant Agent shall be vested with all the authority, powers, rights, immunities, duties, and obligations of its predecessor Warrant Agent with like effect as if originally named as Warrant Agent hereunder, without any further act or deed; but if for any reason it becomes necessary or appropriate, the predecessor Warrant Agent shall execute and deliver, at the expense of the Company, an instrument transferring to such successor Warrant Agent all the authority, powers, and rights of such predecessor Warrant Agent hereunder; and upon request of any successor Warrant Agent the Company shall make, execute, acknowledge, and deliver any and all instruments in writing for more fully and effectually vesting in and confirming to such successor Warrant Agent all such authority, powers, rights, immunities, duties, and obligations.



8.2.2 Notice of Successor Warrant Agent. In the event a successor Warrant Agent shall be appointed, the Company shall give notice thereof to the predecessor Warrant Agent and the Transfer Agent for the Common Stock not later than the effective date of any such appointment.

8.2.3 Merger or Consolidation of Warrant Agent. Any corporation into which the Warrant Agent may be merged or with which it may be consolidated or any corporation resulting from any merger or consolidation to which the Warrant Agent shall be a party shall be the successor Warrant Agent under this Agreement without any further act.

### 8.3 Fees and Expenses of Warrant Agent.

8.3.1 Remuneration. The Company agrees to pay the Warrant Agent reasonable remuneration for its services as such Warrant Agent hereunder and shall, pursuant to its obligations under this Agreement, reimburse the Warrant Agent upon demand for all expenditures that the Warrant Agent may reasonably incur in the execution of its duties hereunder.

8.3.2 Further Assurances. The Company agrees to perform, execute, acknowledge, and deliver or cause to be performed, executed, acknowledged, and delivered all such further and other acts, instruments, and assurances as may reasonably be required by the Warrant Agent for the carrying out or performing of the provisions of this Agreement.

### 8.4 Liability of Warrant Agent.

8.4.1 Reliance on Company Statement. Whenever in the performance of its duties under this Agreement, the Warrant Agent shall deem it necessary or desirable that any fact or matter be proved or established by the Company prior to taking or suffering any action hereunder, such fact or matter (unless other evidence in respect thereof be herein specifically prescribed) may be deemed to be conclusively proved and established by a statement signed by the Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, President, Executive Vice President, Vice President, Secretary or Chairman of the Board of the Company and delivered to the Warrant Agent. The Warrant Agent may rely upon such statement for any action taken or suffered in good faith by it pursuant to the provisions of this Agreement.

8.4.2 Indemnity. The Warrant Agent shall be liable hereunder only for its own gross negligence, willful misconduct or bad faith. The Company agrees to indemnify the Warrant Agent and save it harmless against any and all liabilities, including judgments, costs and reasonable counsel fees, for anything done or omitted by the Warrant Agent in the execution of this Agreement, except as a result of the Warrant Agent's gross negligence, willful misconduct or bad faith.

8.4.3 Exclusions. The Warrant Agent shall have no responsibility with respect to the validity of this Agreement or with respect to the validity or execution of any Warrant (except its countersignature thereof). The Warrant Agent shall not be responsible for any breach by the Company of any covenant or condition contained in this Agreement or in any Warrant. The Warrant Agent shall not be responsible to make any adjustments required under the provisions of Section 4 hereof or responsible for the manner, method, or amount of any such adjustment or the ascertaining of the existence of facts that would require any such adjustment; nor shall it by any act hereunder be deemed to make any representation or warranty as to the authorization or reservation of any shares of Common Stock to be issued pursuant to this Agreement or any Warrant or as to whether any shares of Common Stock shall, when issued, be valid and fully paid and non-assessable.

8.5 Acceptance of Agency. The Warrant Agent hereby accepts the agency established by this Agreement and agrees to perform the same upon the terms and conditions herein set forth and among other things, shall account promptly to the Company with respect to Warrants exercised and concurrently account for, and pay to the Company, all monies received by the Warrant Agent for the purchase of shares of Common Stock through the exercise of the Warrants.

8.6 Waiver. The Warrant Agent has no right of set-off or any other right, title, interest or claim of any kind (“ **Claim** ”) in, or to any distribution of, the Trust Account (as defined in that certain Investment Management Trust Agreement, dated as of the date hereof, by and between the Company and the Warrant Agent as trustee thereunder) and hereby agrees not to seek recourse, reimbursement, payment or satisfaction for any Claim against the Trust Account for any reason whatsoever. The Warrant Agent hereby waives any and all Claims against the Trust Account and any and all rights to seek access to the Trust Account.

9. Miscellaneous Provisions .

9.1 Successors. All the covenants and provisions of this Agreement by or for the benefit of the Company or the Warrant Agent shall bind and inure to the benefit of their respective successors and assigns.

9.2 Notices. Any notice, statement or demand authorized by this Agreement to be given or made by the Warrant Agent or by the holder of any Warrant to or on the Company shall be sufficiently given when so delivered if by hand or overnight delivery or if sent by certified mail or private courier service within five (5) days after deposit of such notice, postage prepaid, addressed (until another address is filed in writing by the Company with the Warrant Agent), as follows:

B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II  
299 Park Avenue, 21<sup>st</sup> Floor  
New York, New York 10171  
Attention: Kenneth Young

Any notice, statement or demand authorized by this Agreement to be given or made by the holder of any Warrant or by the Company to or on the Warrant Agent shall be sufficiently given when so delivered if by hand or overnight delivery or if sent by certified mail or private courier service within five (5) days after deposit of such notice, postage prepaid, addressed (until another address is filed in writing by the Warrant Agent with the Company), as follows:

Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company  
1 State Street, 30th Floor  
New York, New York 10004  
Attention: Compliance Department

with a copy in each case to:

Winston & Strawn LLP  
200 Park Avenue  
New York, New York 10166  
Attn: Joel L. Rubinstein, Esq.

and

B. Riley FBR, Inc.  
299 Park Avenue, 21<sup>st</sup> Floor  
New York, New York 10171  
Attention: Jonathan Mitchell

and

Ellenoff Grossman & Schole LLP  
1345 Avenue of the Americas  
New York, New York 10105  
Attn: Stuart Neuhauser, Esq.

9.3 Applicable Law. The validity, interpretation, and performance of this Agreement and of the Warrants shall be governed in all respects by the laws of the State of New York, without giving effect to conflicts of law principles that would result in the application of the substantive laws of another jurisdiction. The Company hereby agrees that any action, proceeding or claim against it arising out of or relating in any way to this Agreement shall be brought and enforced in the courts of the State of New York or the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York, and irrevocably submits to such jurisdiction, which jurisdiction shall be exclusive. The Company hereby waives any objection to such exclusive jurisdiction and that such courts represent an inconvenient forum.

9.4 Persons Having Rights under this Agreement. Nothing in this Agreement shall be construed to confer upon, or give to, any person or corporation other than the parties hereto and the Registered Holders of the Warrants any right, remedy, or claim under or by reason of this Agreement or of any covenant, condition, stipulation, promise, or agreement hereof. All covenants, conditions, stipulations, promises, and agreements contained in this Agreement shall be for the sole and exclusive benefit of the parties hereto and their successors and assigns and of the Registered Holders of the Warrants.

9.5 Examination of the Warrant Agreement. A copy of this Agreement shall be available at all reasonable times at the office of the Warrant Agent in the Borough of Manhattan, City and State of New York, for inspection by the Registered Holder of any Warrant. The Warrant Agent may require any such holder to submit such holder's Warrant for inspection by the Warrant Agent.

9.6 Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in any number of original or facsimile counterparts and each of such counterparts shall for all purposes be deemed to be an original, and all such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

9.7 Effect of Headings. The section headings herein are for convenience only and are not part of this Agreement and shall not affect the interpretation thereof.

9.8 Amendments. This Agreement may be amended by the parties hereto without the consent of any Registered Holder (i) for the purpose of curing any ambiguity, or curing, correcting or supplementing any defective provision contained herein or adding or changing any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Agreement as the parties may deem necessary or desirable and that the parties deem shall not adversely affect the interest of the Registered Holders, and (ii) to provide for the delivery of Alternative Issuance pursuant to Section 4.4. All other modifications or amendments, including any modification or amendment to increase the Warrant Price or shorten the Exercise Period, shall require the vote or written consent of the Registered Holders of 50% of the number of the then outstanding Public Warrants and, solely with respect to any amendment to the terms of the Private Placement Warrants, Forward Purchase Warrants or Working Capital Warrants or any provision of this Agreement with respect to the Private Placement Warrants, Forward Purchase Warrants or Working Capital Warrants, 50% of the number of then outstanding Private Placement Warrants, Forward Purchase Warrants and Working Capital Warrants. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company may lower the Warrant Price or extend the duration of the Exercise Period pursuant to Sections 3.1 and 3.2, respectively, without the consent of the Registered Holders.

9.9 Severability. This Agreement shall be deemed severable, and the invalidity or unenforceability of any term or provision hereof shall not affect the validity or enforceability of this Agreement or of any other term or provision hereof. Furthermore, in lieu of any such invalid or unenforceable term or provision, the parties hereto intend that there shall be added as a part of this Agreement a provision as similar in terms to such invalid or unenforceable provision as may be possible and be valid and enforceable.

[ Signature Page Follows ]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Agreement to be duly executed as of the date first above written.

B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: Daniel Shribman

Title: Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer

CONTINENTAL STOCK TRANSFER &  
TRUST COMPANY, as Warrant Agent

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: Vice President

[ *Signature Page to Warrant Agreement* ]

---

EXHIBIT A

FORM OF WARRANT CERTIFICATE

[FACE]

Number

Warrants

THIS WARRANT SHALL BE VOID IF NOT EXERCISED PRIOR TO  
THE EXPIRATION OF THE EXERCISE PERIOD PROVIDED FOR  
IN THE WARRANT AGREEMENT DESCRIBED BELOW

B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II

*Incorporated Under the Laws of the State of Delaware*

CUSIP \_\_\_\_\_

Warrant Certificate

***This Warrant Certificate certifies that***, or registered assigns, is the registered holder of warrant(s) evidenced hereby (the “***Warrants***” and each, a “***Warrant***”) to purchase shares of Class A common stock, \$0.0001 par value per share (“***Class A Common Stock***”), of B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II, a Delaware corporation (the “***Company***”). Each whole Warrant entitles the holder, upon exercise during the Exercise Period set forth in the Warrant Agreement referred to below, to receive from the Company that number of fully paid and non-assessable shares of Class A Common Stock as set forth below, at the exercise price (the “***Warrant Price***”) as determined pursuant to the Warrant Agreement, payable in lawful money (or through “***cashless exercise***” as provided for in the Warrant Agreement) of the United States of America upon surrender of this Warrant Certificate and payment of the Warrant Price at the office or agency of the Warrant Agent referred to below, subject to the conditions set forth herein and in the Warrant Agreement. Defined terms used in this Warrant Certificate but not defined herein shall have the meanings given to them in the Warrant Agreement.

Each whole Warrant is initially exercisable for one fully paid and non-assessable share of Class A Common Stock. No fractional shares will be issued upon exercise of any Warrant. If, upon the exercise of Warrants, a holder would be entitled to receive a fractional interest in a share of Class A Common Stock, the Company will, upon exercise, round down to the nearest whole number the number of shares of Class A Common Stock to be issued to the Warrant holder. The number of shares of Class A Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants is subject to adjustment upon the occurrence of certain events as set forth in the Warrant Agreement.

The initial Warrant Price per share of Class A Common Stock for any Warrant is equal to \$11.50 per share. The Warrant Price is subject to adjustment upon the occurrence of certain events set forth in the Warrant Agreement.

Subject to the conditions set forth in the Warrant Agreement, the Warrants may be exercised only during the Exercise Period and to the extent not exercised by the end of such Exercise Period, such Warrants shall become void.

Reference is hereby made to the further provisions of this Warrant Certificate set forth on the reverse hereof and such further provisions shall for all purposes have the same effect as though fully set forth at this place.

This Warrant Certificate shall not be valid unless countersigned by the Warrant Agent, as such term is used in the Warrant Agreement.

---

This Warrant Certificate shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the internal laws of the State of New York, without regard to conflicts of laws principles thereof.

B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

CONTINENTAL STOCK TRANSFER & TRUST  
COMPANY, as Warrant Agent

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

---

[Form of Warrant Certificate]

[Reverse]

The Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate are part of a duly authorized issue of Warrants entitling the holder on exercise to receive shares of Class A Common Stock and are issued or to be issued pursuant to a Warrant Agreement dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 2020 (the “**Warrant Agreement**”), duly executed and delivered by the Company to Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, a New York corporation, as warrant agent (the “**Warrant Agent**”), which Warrant Agreement is hereby incorporated by reference in and made a part of this instrument and is hereby referred to for a description of the rights, limitation of rights, obligations, duties and immunities thereunder of the Warrant Agent, the Company and the holders (the words “**holders**” or “**holder**” meaning the Registered Holders or Registered Holder, respectively) of the Warrants. A copy of the Warrant Agreement may be obtained by the holder hereof upon written request to the Company. Defined terms used in this Warrant Certificate but not defined herein shall have the meanings given to them in the Warrant Agreement.

Warrants may be exercised at any time during the Exercise Period set forth in the Warrant Agreement. The holder of Warrants evidenced by this Warrant Certificate may exercise them by surrendering this Warrant Certificate, with the form of election to purchase set forth hereon properly completed and executed, together with payment of the Warrant Price as specified in the Warrant Agreement (or through “cashless exercise” as provided for in the Warrant Agreement) at the principal corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent. In the event that upon any exercise of Warrants evidenced hereby the number of Warrants exercised shall be less than the total number of Warrants evidenced hereby, there shall be issued to the holder hereof or his, her or its assignee, a new Warrant Certificate evidencing the number of Warrants not exercised.

Notwithstanding anything else in this Warrant Certificate or the Warrant Agreement, no Warrant may be exercised unless at the time of exercise (i) a registration statement covering the shares of Class A Common Stock to be issued upon exercise is effective under the Securities Act and (ii) a prospectus thereunder relating to the shares of Class A Common Stock is current, except through “cashless exercise” as provided for in the Warrant Agreement.

The Warrant Agreement provides that upon the occurrence of certain events the number of shares of Class A Common Stock issuable upon the exercise of the Warrants set forth on the face hereof may, subject to certain conditions, be adjusted. If, upon exercise of a Warrant, the holder thereof would be entitled to receive a fractional interest in a share of Class A Common Stock, the Company shall, upon exercise, round down to the nearest whole number of shares of Class A Common Stock to be issued to the holder of the Warrant.

Warrant Certificates, when surrendered at the principal corporate trust office of the Warrant Agent by the Registered Holder thereof in person or by legal representative or attorney duly authorized in writing, may be exchanged, in the manner and subject to the limitations provided in the Warrant Agreement, but without payment of any service charge, for another Warrant Certificate or Warrant Certificates of like tenor evidencing in the aggregate a like number of Warrants.

Upon due presentation for registration of transfer of this Warrant Certificate at the office of the Warrant Agent a new Warrant Certificate or Warrant Certificates of like tenor and evidencing in the aggregate a like number of Warrants shall be issued to the transferee(s) in exchange for this Warrant Certificate, subject to the limitations provided in the Warrant Agreement, without charge except for any tax or other governmental charge imposed in connection therewith.

The Company and the Warrant Agent may deem and treat the Registered Holder(s) hereof as the absolute owner(s) of this Warrant Certificate (notwithstanding any notation of ownership or other writing hereon made by anyone), for the purpose of any exercise hereof, of any distribution to the holder(s) hereof, and for all other purposes, and neither the Company nor the Warrant Agent shall be affected by any notice to the contrary. Neither the Warrants nor this Warrant Certificate entitles any holder hereof to any rights of a stockholder of the Company.

---

Election to Purchase

(To Be Executed Upon Exercise of Warrant)

The undersigned hereby irrevocably elects to exercise the right, represented by this Warrant Certificate, to receive \_\_\_\_\_ shares of Class A Common Stock and herewith tenders payment for such shares of Class A Common Stock to the order of B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II (the “**Company**” ) in the amount of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ in accordance with the terms hereof. The undersigned requests that a certificate for such shares of Class A Common Stock be registered in the name of \_\_\_\_\_, whose address is \_\_\_\_\_ and that such shares of Class A Common Stock be delivered to whose address is \_\_\_\_\_. If said number of shares of Class A Common Stock is less than all of the shares of Class A Common Stock purchasable hereunder, the undersigned requests that a new Warrant Certificate representing the remaining balance of such shares of Class A Common Stock be registered in the name of \_\_\_\_\_, whose address is \_\_\_\_\_ and that such Warrant Certificate be delivered to \_\_\_\_\_, whose address is \_\_\_\_\_.

In the event that the Warrant has been called for redemption by the Company pursuant to Section 6 of the Warrant Agreement and the Company has required cashless exercise pursuant to Section 6.3 of the Warrant Agreement, the number of shares of Class A Common Stock that this Warrant is exercisable for shall be determined in accordance with subsection 3.3.1(b) and Section 6.3 of the Warrant Agreement.

In the event that the Warrant is a Private Placement Warrant, a Working Capital Warrant or a Forward Purchase Warrant that is to be exercised on a “cashless” basis pursuant to subsection 3.3.1(c) of the Warrant Agreement, the number of shares of Class A Common Stock that this Warrant is exercisable for shall be determined in accordance with subsection 3.3.1(c) of the Warrant Agreement.

In the event that the Warrant is to be exercised on a “cashless” basis pursuant to Section 7.4 of the Warrant Agreement, the number of shares of Class A Common Stock that this Warrant is exercisable for shall be determined in accordance with Section 7.4 of the Warrant Agreement.

In the event that the Warrant may be exercised, to the extent allowed by the Warrant Agreement, through cashless exercise (i) the number of shares of Class A Common Stock that this Warrant is exercisable for would be determined in accordance with the relevant section of the Warrant Agreement which allows for such cashless exercise and (ii) the holder hereof shall complete the following: The undersigned hereby irrevocably elects to exercise the right, represented by this Warrant Certificate, through the cashless exercise provisions of the Warrant Agreement, to receive shares of Class A Common Stock. If said number of shares of Class A Common Stock is less than all of the shares of Class A Common Stock purchasable hereunder (after giving effect to the cashless exercise), the undersigned requests that a new Warrant Certificate representing the remaining balance of such shares of Class A Common Stock be registered in the name of \_\_\_\_\_, whose address is \_\_\_\_\_ and that such Warrant Certificate be delivered to \_\_\_\_\_, whose address is \_\_\_\_\_.

[ Signature Page Follows ]

---



Date: \_\_\_\_\_, 20

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature)

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
(Address)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Tax Identification Number)

Signature Guaranteed:

\_\_\_\_\_

THE SIGNATURE(S) SHOULD BE GUARANTEED BY AN ELIGIBLE GUARANTOR INSTITUTION (BANKS, STOCKBROKERS, SAVINGS AND LOAN ASSOCIATIONS AND CREDIT UNIONS WITH MEMBERSHIP IN AN APPROVED SIGNATURE GUARANTEE MEDALLION PROGRAM, PURSUANT TO SEC RULE 17Ad-15 UNDER THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934, AS AMENDED (OR ANY SUCCESSOR RULE)).

\_\_\_\_\_

**EXHIBIT B**

**LEGEND**

“THE SECURITIES REPRESENTED BY THIS CERTIFICATE HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED, OR ANY STATE SECURITIES LAWS, AND MAY NOT BE OFFERED, SOLD, TRANSFERRED OR OTHERWISE DISPOSED OF UNLESS REGISTERED UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED, AND ANY APPLICABLE STATE SECURITIES LAWS OR AN EXEMPTION FROM REGISTRATION IS AVAILABLE. IN ADDITION, SUBJECT TO ANY ADDITIONAL LIMITATIONS ON TRANSFER DESCRIBED IN THE LETTER AGREEMENT BY AND AMONG B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II (THE “COMPANY”), B. RILEY PRINCIPAL SPONSOR CO. II, LLC AND THE OTHER PARTIES THERETO, THE SECURITIES REPRESENTED BY THIS CERTIFICATE MAY NOT BE SOLD OR TRANSFERRED PRIOR TO THE DATE THAT IS THIRTY (30) DAYS AFTER THE DATE UPON WHICH THE COMPANY COMPLETES ITS INITIAL BUSINESS COMBINATION (AS DEFINED IN SECTION 3 OF THE WARRANT AGREEMENT REFERRED TO HEREIN) EXCEPT TO A PERMITTED TRANSFEREE (AS DEFINED IN SECTION 2 OF THE WARRANT AGREEMENT) WHO AGREES IN WRITING WITH THE COMPANY TO BE SUBJECT TO SUCH TRANSFER PROVISIONS.

SECURITIES EVIDENCED BY THIS CERTIFICATE AND SHARES OF COMMON STOCK OF THE COMPANY ISSUED UPON EXERCISE OF SUCH SECURITIES SHALL BE ENTITLED TO REGISTRATION RIGHTS UNDER A REGISTRATION RIGHTS AGREEMENT TO BE EXECUTED BY THE COMPANY.”

---



North America Europe Asia

200 Park Avenue  
New York, NY 10166  
T +1 212 294 6700  
F +1 212 294 4700

April 28, 2020

B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II  
299 Park Avenue, 21st Floor  
New York, New York 10171

Re: Form S-1 Registration Statement

Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have acted as special counsel to B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II, a Delaware corporation (the "Company"), in connection with the preparation of the Company's registration statement on Form S-1 (Registration No. 333-237812) initially filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the "Commission") on April 23, 2020 (the "Registration Statement"), under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act").

The Registration Statement relates to the registration of the offer and sale of up to 23,000,000 Units of the Company (the "Units") (including up to 3,000,000 Units subject to the Underwriters' (as defined below) over-allotment option), with each Unit consisting of (i) one share of the Company's common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the "Common Stock" and the Common Stock underlying the Units, the "Shares"), for an aggregate of up to 23,000,000 Shares (including up to 3,000,000 Shares included in the Units subject to the Underwriters' over-allotment option) and (ii) one-half of one redeemable warrant (a "Warrant"), with each whole Warrant entitling the holder to purchase one share of Common Stock, for an aggregate of up to 11,500,000 Warrants (including up to 1,500,000 Warrants included in the Units subject to the Underwriters' over-allotment option) to be issued under a warrant agreement (the "Warrant Agreement") to be entered into by the Company and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, as Warrant Agent, pursuant to the terms of an underwriting agreement (the "Underwriting Agreement") to be executed by the Company and B. Riley FBR, Inc., as representative of the underwriters named therein (the "Underwriters").

This opinion letter is being furnished in accordance with the requirements of Item 601(b)(5) of Regulation S-K promulgated under the Securities Act.

In rendering the opinions set forth below, we examined and relied upon such certificates, corporate records, agreements, instruments and other documents, and examined such matters of law, that we considered necessary or appropriate as a basis for the opinions. In rendering the opinions set forth below, we have examined and are familiar with originals or copies, certified or otherwise identified to our satisfaction, of (i) the Second Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation of the Company, as in effect on the date hereof, (ii) the By Laws of the Company, as in effect on the date hereof, (iii) the Registration Statement, (iv) the Underwriting Agreement, (v) resolutions of the Board of Directors of the Company relating to, among other matters, the issuance of the Units, the Shares and the Warrants and the filing of the Registration Statement and (vi) such other documents as we have deemed necessary or appropriate as a basis for the opinions set forth below. In our examination, we have assumed the legal capacity of all natural persons, the genuineness of all signatures, the authenticity of all documents submitted to us as originals, the conformity to original documents of all documents submitted to us as certified or photostatic copies, the authenticity of the originals of such latter documents, that all parties to such documents (other than the Company) had the power, corporate or other, to enter into and perform all obligations thereunder and all such documents have been duly authorized by all requisite action, corporate or other, and duly executed and delivered by all parties thereto (other than the Company). As to any facts material to the opinions expressed herein that we did not independently establish or verify, we have relied upon oral or written statements and representations of officers and other representatives of the Company and others. In rendering the opinions set forth below, we have further assumed that, before the issuance of the Units, the Shares and the Warrants, (i) the Registration Statement will have become effective under the Securities Act and (ii) the conditions to consummating the transactions contemplated by the Underwriting Agreement will have been satisfied or duly waived and such transactions are consummated.

Based upon the foregoing and subject to the assumptions, qualifications and limitations set forth herein, we are of the opinion that:

1. When the Units are delivered to the Underwriters against payment of the agreed consideration therefor in accordance with the Underwriting Agreement, each Unit will be a valid and binding agreement of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with its terms.

2. Each Share included in the Units has been duly authorized and, when the Units are delivered to the Underwriters against payment of the agreed consideration therefor in accordance with the Underwriting Agreement, each Share included in the Units will be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable.

3. When the Units are delivered to the Underwriters against payment of the agreed consideration therefor in accordance with the Underwriting Agreement, each Warrant included in the Units will be a valid and binding agreement of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with its terms.

The opinions expressed herein are based upon and limited to the laws of the State of New York and the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware, including the statutory provisions, all applicable provisions of the Delaware Constitution and reported judicial decisions interpreting the foregoing. We express no opinion herein as to any other laws, statutes, regulations or ordinances. The opinions expressed herein that are based on the laws of the State of New York are limited to the laws generally applicable in transactions of the type covered by the Registration Statement.

We hereby consent to the filing of this opinion letter as Exhibit 5.1 to the Registration Statement and to the reference to our firm under the caption "Legal Matters" in the prospectus included in the Registration Statement. In giving such consent, we do not thereby admit that we are experts within the meaning of the Securities Act or the rules and regulations of the Commission or that this consent is required by Section 7 of the Securities Act.

Very truly yours,

/s/ Winston & Strawn LLP

---

B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II  
299 Park Avenue, 21<sup>st</sup> Floor  
New York, New York 10017

B. Riley FBR, Inc.  
299 Park Avenue, 21<sup>st</sup> Floor  
New York, New York 10017

Re: Initial Public Offering

Ladies and Gentlemen:

This letter (this “**Letter Agreement**”) is being delivered to you in accordance with the Underwriting Agreement (the “**Underwriting Agreement**”) entered into by and among B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II, a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), and B. Riley FBR, Inc., as representative (the “**Representative**”) of the several underwriters (each, an “**Underwriter**” and collectively, the “**Underwriters**”), relating to an underwritten initial public offering (the “**Public Offering**”), of 23,000,000 of the Company’s units (including up to 3,000,000 units that may be purchased to cover over-allotments, if any) (the “**Units**”), each comprised of one share of the Company’s Class A common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the “**Class A Common Stock**”), and one-half of one redeemable warrant. Each whole warrant (each, a “**Warrant**”) entitles the holder thereof to purchase one share of Class A Common Stock at a price of \$11.50 per share, subject to adjustment as described in the Prospectus (as defined below). The Units will be sold in the Public Offering pursuant to a registration statement on Form S-1 and prospectus (the “**Prospectus**”) filed by the Company with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the “**Commission**”) and the Company has applied to have the Units listed on the New York Stock Exchange. Certain capitalized terms used herein are defined in paragraph 11 hereof.

In order to induce the Company and the Underwriters to enter into the Underwriting Agreement and to proceed with the Public Offering and for other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, each of B. Riley Principal Sponsor Co. II, LLC (the “**Sponsor**”) and the undersigned individuals, each of whom is a member of the Company’s board of directors and/or management team (each, an “**Insider**” and collectively, the “**Insiders**”), hereby agrees with the Company as follows:

1. The Sponsor and each Insider agrees that if the Company seeks stockholder approval of a proposed Business Combination, then in connection with such proposed Business Combination, it, he or she shall (i) vote any shares of Common Stock (as defined below) owned by it, him or her in favor of any proposed Business Combination and (ii) not redeem any shares of Common Stock owned by it, him or her in connection with such stockholder approval. If the Company seeks to consummate a proposed Business Combination by engaging in a tender offer, the Sponsor and each Insider agrees that it, he or she will not sell or tender any shares of Common Stock owned by it, him or her in connection therewith.
  2. The Sponsor and each Insider hereby agrees that in the event that the Company fails to consummate a Business Combination within 24 months from the closing of the Public Offering, or such later period approved by the Company’s stockholders in accordance with the Company’s second amended and restated certificate of incorporation (as it may be amended from time to time, the “**Charter**”), the Sponsor and each Insider shall take all reasonable steps to cause the Company to (i) cease all operations except for the purpose of winding up, (ii) as promptly as reasonably possible but not more than 10 business days thereafter, subject to lawfully available funds therefor, redeem 100% of the shares of Class A Common Stock sold as part of the Units in the Public Offering (the “**Offering Shares**”), at a per-share price, payable in cash, equal to the aggregate amount then on deposit in the Trust Account (as defined below), including interest earned on the funds held in the Trust Account and not previously released to the Company to pay its franchise and income taxes (less up to \$100,000 of interest to pay dissolution expenses), divided by the number of then outstanding Offering Shares, which redemption will completely extinguish all Public Stockholders’ rights as stockholders (including the right to receive further liquidating distributions, if any), subject to applicable law, and (iii) as promptly as reasonably possible following such redemption, subject to the approval of the Company’s remaining stockholders and the Company’s board of directors, liquidate and dissolve, subject in each case to the Company’s obligations under Delaware law to provide for claims of creditors and other requirements of applicable law. The Sponsor and each Insider agrees to not propose any amendment to the Charter to modify the substance or timing of the Company’s obligation to redeem 100% of the Offering Shares if the Company does not complete a Business Combination within the required time period set forth in the Charter, unless the Company provides its public stockholders with the opportunity to redeem their Offering Shares upon approval of any such amendment at a per-share price, payable in cash, equal to the aggregate amount then on deposit in the Trust Account, including interest earned on the funds held in the Trust Account and not previously released to the Company to pay its franchise and income taxes, divided by the number of then outstanding Offering Shares.
-

The Sponsor and each Insider acknowledges that it, he or she has no right, title, interest or claim of any kind in or to any monies held in the Trust Account or any other asset of the Company as a result of any liquidation of the Company with respect to the Founder Shares held by it, him or her. The Sponsor and each Insider hereby further waives, with respect to any shares of Common Stock held by it, him or her, if any, any redemption rights it, he or she may have in connection with the consummation of a Business Combination, including, without limitation, any such rights available in the context of a stockholder vote to approve such Business Combination or a stockholder vote to approve an amendment to the Charter to modify the substance or timing of the Company's obligation to redeem 100% of the Offering Shares if the Company has not consummated a Business Combination within the time period set forth in the Charter or in the context of a tender offer made by the Company to purchase Offering Shares (although the Sponsor, the Insiders and their respective affiliates shall be entitled to redemption and liquidation rights with respect to any Offering Shares it or they hold if the Company fails to consummate a Business Combination within the time period set forth in the Charter).

3. During the period commencing on the effective date of the Underwriting Agreement and ending 180 days after such date, the Sponsor and each Insider shall not, without the prior written consent of the Representative, (i) sell, offer to sell, contract or agree to sell, hypothecate, pledge, grant any option to purchase or otherwise dispose of or agree to dispose of, directly or indirectly, or establish or increase a put equivalent position or liquidate or decrease a call equivalent position within the meaning of Section 16 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "**Exchange Act**"), and the rules and regulations of the Commission promulgated thereunder, with respect to any Units, shares of Common Stock (including, but not limited to, Founder Shares), Warrants or any securities convertible into, or exercisable, or exchangeable for, shares of Common Stock owned by it, him or her, (ii) enter into any swap or other arrangement that transfers to another, in whole or in part, any of the economic consequences of ownership of any Units, shares of Common Stock (including, but not limited to, Founder Shares), Warrants or any securities convertible into, or exercisable, or exchangeable for, shares of Common Stock owned by it, him or her, whether any such transaction is to be settled by delivery of such securities, in cash or otherwise, or (iii) publicly announce any intention to effect any transaction specified in clause (i) or (ii). Each of the Insiders and the Sponsor acknowledges and agrees that, prior to the effective date of any release or waiver, of the restrictions set forth in this paragraph 3 or paragraph 7 below, the Company shall announce the impending release or waiver by press release through a major news service at least two business days before the effective date of the release or waiver. Any release or waiver granted shall only be effective two business days after the publication date of such press release. The provisions of this paragraph will not apply if the release or waiver is effected solely to permit a transfer not for consideration and the transferee has agreed in writing to be bound by the same terms described in this Letter Agreement to the extent and for the duration that such terms remain in effect at the time of the transfer.

4. In the event of the liquidation of the Trust Account upon the failure of the Company to consummate its initial Business Combination within the time period set forth in the Charter, the Sponsor (the “ **Indemnitor** ”) agrees to indemnify and hold harmless the Company against any and all loss, liability, claim, damage and expense whatsoever (including, but not limited to, any and all legal or other expenses reasonably incurred in investigating, preparing or defending against any litigation, whether pending or threatened) to which the Company may become subject as a result of any claim by (i) any third party for services rendered or products sold to the Company or (ii) any prospective target business with which the Company has entered into a written letter of intent, confidentiality or other similar agreement or Business Combination agreement (a “ **Target** ”); provided, however, that such indemnification of the Company by the Indemnitor (x) shall apply only to the extent necessary to ensure that such claims by a third party or a Target do not reduce the amount of funds in the Trust Account to below the lesser of (i) \$10.00 per Offering Share and (ii) the actual amount per Offering Share held in the Trust Account as of the date of the liquidation of the Trust Account, if less than \$10.00 per Offering Share is then held in the Trust Account due to reductions in the value of the trust assets, less interest earned on the Trust Account which may be withdrawn to pay taxes, (y) shall not apply to any claims by a third party or a Target which executed a waiver of any and all rights to the monies held in the Trust Account (whether or not such waiver is enforceable) and (z) shall not apply to any claims under the Company’s indemnity of the Underwriters against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “ **Securities Act** ”). The Indemnitor shall have the right to defend against any such claim with counsel of its choice reasonably satisfactory to the Company if, within 15 days following written receipt of notice of the claim to the Indemnitor, the Indemnitor notifies the Company in writing that it shall undertake such defense.
5. To the extent that the Underwriters do not exercise their over-allotment option to purchase up to an additional 3,000,000 Units within 45 days from the date of the Prospectus (and as further described in the Prospectus), the Sponsor agrees to forfeit, at no cost, a number of Founder Shares in the aggregate equal to 750,000 multiplied by a fraction, (i) the numerator of which is 3,000,000 minus the number of Units purchased by the Underwriters upon the exercise of their over-allotment option, and (ii) the denominator of which is 3,000,000. The forfeiture will be adjusted to the extent that the over-allotment option is not exercised in full by the Underwriters so that the Initial Stockholders will own an aggregate of 20.0% of the Company’s issued and outstanding shares of Class A Common Stock after the Public Offering (not including shares of Class A Common Stock underlying the Private Placement Units (as defined below)).
6. (a) The Sponsor and each Insider that is an officer of the Company hereby agrees not to participate in the formation of, or become an officer or director of, any other any other special purpose acquisition company conducting a public offering pursuant to the Securities Act or with a class of securities registered under the Exchange Act until the Company has entered into a definitive agreement regarding an initial Business Combination or unless the Company has failed to complete a Business Combination within the time period set forth in the Charter.  
  
(b) The Sponsor and each Insider hereby agrees and acknowledges that: (i) the Underwriters and the Company would be irreparably injured in the event of a breach by such Sponsor or an Insider of its, his or her obligations under paragraphs 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6(a), 7(a), and 7(b), as applicable, of this Letter Agreement (ii) monetary damages may not be an adequate remedy for such breach and (iii) the non-breaching party shall be entitled to injunctive relief, in addition to any other remedy that such party may have in law or in equity, in the event of such breach.
7. (a) The Sponsor and each Insider agrees that it, he or she shall not Transfer any Founder Shares (or any shares of Class A Common Stock issuable upon conversion thereof) until the earlier of (A) one year after the completion of the Company’s initial Business Combination or (B) subsequent to the Business Combination, (x) if the last sale price of the Class A Common Stock equals or exceeds \$12.00 per share (as adjusted for stock splits, stock dividends, reorganizations, recapitalizations and the like) for any 20 trading days within any 30-trading day period commencing at least 150 days after the Company’s initial Business Combination or (y) the date on which the Company completes a liquidation, merger, capital stock exchange, reorganization or other similar transaction that results in all of the Company’s stockholders having the right to exchange their shares of Class A Common Stock for cash, securities or other property (the “ **Founder Shares Lock-up Period** ”).

(b) The Sponsor and each Insider agrees that it, he or she shall not Transfer any Private Placement Units (or any securities underlying the Private Placement Units), until 30 days after the completion of a Business Combination (the “ **Private Placement Units Lock-up Period** ”, together with the Founder Shares Lock-up Period, the “ **Lock-up Periods** ”).

(c) Notwithstanding the provisions set forth in paragraphs 7(a) and (b), Transfers of the Founder Shares, Private Placement Units and securities underlying the Private Placement Units that are held by the Sponsor, any Insider or any of their permitted transferees (that have complied with this paragraph 7(c)), are permitted (a) to the Company’s officers or directors, any affiliate or family member of any of the Company’s officers or directors, any members of the Sponsor or any affiliate of the Sponsor; (b) in the case of an individual, by gift to a member of such individual’s immediate family or to a trust, the beneficiary of which is a member of such individual’s immediate family, an affiliate of such individual or to a charitable organization; (c) in the case of an individual, by virtue of laws of descent and distribution upon death of such individual; (d) in the case of an individual, pursuant to a qualified domestic relations order; (e) by private sales or transfers made in connection with the consummation of an initial Business Combination at prices no greater than the price at which the securities were originally purchased; (f) in the event of the Company’s liquidation prior to the completion of an initial Business Combination; (g) by virtue of the laws of the State of Delaware or the Sponsor’s limited liability company agreement upon dissolution of the Sponsor; or (h) in the event of the Company’s liquidation, merger, capital stock exchange, reorganization or other similar transaction which results in all of the Company’s stockholders having the right to exchange their shares of Class A Common Stock for cash, securities or other property subsequent to the Company’s completion of an initial Business Combination; provided, however, that in the case of clauses (a) through (e) or (g), these permitted transferees must enter into a written agreement with the Company agreeing to be bound by the transfer restrictions herein.

8. The Sponsor and each Insider represents and warrants that it, he or she has never been suspended or expelled from membership in any securities or commodities exchange or association or had a securities or commodities license or registration denied, suspended or revoked. Each Insider’s biographical information furnished to the Company (including any such information included in the Prospectus) is true and accurate in all respects and does not omit any material information with respect to the Insider’s background. Each Insider’s questionnaire furnished to the Company is true and accurate in all respects. Each Insider represents and warrants that: it, he or she is not subject to or a respondent in any legal action for, any injunction, cease-and-desist order or order or stipulation to desist or refrain from any act or practice relating to the offering of securities in any jurisdiction; it, he or she has never been convicted of, or pleaded guilty to, any crime (i) involving fraud, (ii) relating to any financial transaction or handling of funds of another person, or (iii) pertaining to any dealings in any securities and it, he or she is not currently a defendant in any such criminal proceeding.
9. Except as disclosed in the Prospectus, neither the Sponsor nor any officer, nor any affiliate of the Sponsor or any officer, nor any director of the Company, shall receive from the Company any finder’s fee, reimbursement, consulting fee, non-cash payments, monies in respect of any repayment of a loan or other compensation prior to, or in connection with any services rendered in order to effectuate, the consummation of the Company’s initial Business Combination (regardless of the type of transaction that it is), other than the following, none of which will be made from the proceeds held in the Trust Account prior to the completion of the initial Business Combination: repayment of a loan and advances up to an aggregate of \$300,000 made to the Company by the Sponsor; payment to an affiliate of the Sponsor for certain office space, utilities and secretarial and administrative support as may be reasonably required by the Company for a total of \$10,000 per month; cash compensation to the Representative, or another affiliate of the Sponsor, for acting as placement agent for a private placement or for services in connection with the initial Business Combination that are in addition to the services required to be performed pursuant to the Business Combination Marketing Agreement, entered into by and between the Company and the Representative, that are payable to Representative, contingent on the closing of the initial Business Combination, in amounts consistent with market standards for comparable services; reimbursement for any reasonable out-of-pocket expenses related to identifying, investigating and consummating an initial Business Combination, and repayment of loans, if any, and on such terms as to be determined by the Company from time to time, made by the Sponsor or any of the Company’s officers or directors to finance transaction costs in connection with an intended initial Business Combination, provided, that, if the Company does not consummate an initial Business Combination, a portion of the working capital held outside the Trust Account may be used by the Company to repay such loaned amounts so long as no proceeds from the Trust Account are used for such repayment. Up to \$1,500,000 of such loans may be convertible into units at a price of \$10.00 per unit at the option of the lender. Such units would be identical to the Private Placement Units (as defined below), including as to exercise price, exercisability and exercise period of the underlying warrants.



10. The Sponsor and each Insider has full right and power, without violating any agreement to which it is bound (including, without limitation, any non-competition or non-solicitation agreement with any employer or former employer), to enter into this Letter Agreement and, as applicable, to serve as a director on the board of directors of the Company and hereby consents to being named in the Prospectus as a director of the Company.
11. As used herein, (i) “ **Business Combination** ” shall mean a merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or similar business combination, involving the Company and one or more businesses; (ii) “ **Common Stock** ” shall mean the Class A common stock and Class B common stock; (iii) “ **Founder Shares** ” shall mean the 5,750,000 shares of Class B common stock issued and outstanding (up to 750,000 Shares of which are subject to complete or partial forfeiture by the Sponsor if the over-allotment option is not exercised by the Underwriters); (iii) “ **Initial Stockholders** ” shall mean the Sponsor and any Insider that holds Founder Shares; (iv) “ **Private Placement Units** ” shall mean the 575,000 units (or 635,000 units if the over-allotment option is exercised in full) that the Sponsor has agreed to purchase for an aggregate purchase price of \$5,750,000 (or \$6,350,000 if the over-allotment option is exercised in full), or \$10.00 per unit, in a private placement that shall occur simultaneously with the consummation of the Public Offering; (v) “ **Public Stockholders** ” shall mean the holders of securities issued in the Public Offering; (vi) “ **Trust Account** ” shall mean the trust fund into which a portion of the net proceeds of the Public Offering shall be deposited; and (vii) “ **Transfer** ” shall mean the (a) sale of, offer to sell, contract or agreement to sell, hypothecate, pledge, grant of any option to purchase or otherwise dispose of or agreement to dispose of, directly or indirectly, or establishment or increase of a put equivalent position or liquidation with respect to or decrease of a call equivalent position within the meaning of Section 16 of the Exchange Act, and the rules and regulations of the Commission promulgated thereunder with respect to, any security, (b) entry into any swap or other arrangement that transfers to another, in whole or in part, any of the economic consequences of ownership of any security, whether any such transaction is to be settled by delivery of such securities, in cash or otherwise, or (c) public announcement of any intention to effect any transaction specified in clause (a) or (b).
12. The Company will maintain an insurance policy or policies providing directors’ and officers’ liability insurance, and each Director shall be covered by such policy or policies, in accordance with its or their terms, to the maximum extent of the coverage available for any of the Company’s directors or officers.
13. This Letter Agreement constitutes the entire agreement and understanding of the parties hereto in respect of the subject matter hereof and supersedes all prior understandings, agreements, or representations by or among the parties hereto, written or oral, to the extent they relate in any way to the subject matter hereof or the transactions contemplated hereby. This Letter Agreement may not be changed, amended, modified or waived (other than to correct a typographical error) as to any particular provision, except by a written instrument executed by all parties hereto.
14. No party hereto may assign either this Letter Agreement or any of its rights, interests, or obligations hereunder without the prior written consent of the other parties. Any purported assignment in violation of this paragraph shall be void and ineffectual and shall not operate to transfer or assign any interest or title to the purported assignee. This Letter Agreement shall be binding on the Sponsor and each Insider and their respective successors, heirs and assigns and permitted transferees.

15. Nothing in this Letter Agreement shall be construed to confer upon, or give to, any person or corporation other than the parties hereto any right, remedy or claim under or by reason of this Letter Agreement or of any covenant, condition, stipulation, promise or agreement hereof. All covenants, conditions, stipulations, promises and agreements contained in this Letter Agreement shall be for the sole and exclusive benefit of the parties hereto and their successors, heirs, personal representatives and assigns and permitted transferees.
16. This Letter Agreement may be executed in any number of original or facsimile counterparts and each of such counterparts shall for all purposes be deemed to be an original, and all such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.
17. This Letter Agreement shall be deemed severable, and the invalidity or unenforceability of any term or provision hereof shall not affect the validity or enforceability of this Letter Agreement or of any other term or provision hereof. Furthermore, in lieu of any such invalid or unenforceable term or provision, the parties hereto intend that there shall be added as a part of this Letter Agreement a provision as similar in terms to such invalid or unenforceable provision as may be possible and be valid and enforceable.
18. This Letter Agreement shall be governed by and construed and enforced in accordance with the laws of the State of New York, without giving effect to conflicts of law principles that would result in the application of the substantive laws of another jurisdiction. The parties hereto (i) all agree that any action, proceeding, claim or dispute arising out of, or relating in any way to, this Letter Agreement shall be brought and enforced in the courts of New York City, in the State of New York, and irrevocably submit to such jurisdiction and venue, which jurisdiction and venue shall be exclusive and (ii) waive any objection to such exclusive jurisdiction and venue or that such courts represent an inconvenient forum.
19. Any notice, consent or request to be given in connection with any of the terms or provisions of this Letter Agreement shall be in writing and shall be sent by express mail or similar private courier service, by certified mail (return receipt requested), by hand delivery or facsimile transmission.
20. This Letter Agreement shall terminate on the earlier of (i) the expiration of the Lock-up Periods or (ii) the liquidation of the Company; provided, however, that this Letter Agreement shall earlier terminate in the event that the Public Offering is not consummated and closed by December 31, 2020; provided further that paragraph 4 of this Letter Agreement shall survive such liquidation.

[ Signature Page Follows ]

Sincerely,

**B. RILEY PRINCIPAL SPONSOR CO. II, LLC**

By: \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name:  
Title:

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: Daniel Shribman

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: Bryant R. Riley

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: Kenneth Young

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: Patrick J. Bartels, Jr.

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: James L. Kempner

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: Timothy M. Presutti

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: Robert Suss

Acknowledged and Agreed:

**B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II**

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: Daniel Shribman  
Title: Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer

**B. RILEY FBR, INC.**

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name:  
Title:

[ Signature page to Letter Agreement ]

---

THIS PROMISSORY NOTE ("NOTE") HAS NOT BEEN REGISTERED UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED (THE "SECURITIES ACT"). THIS NOTE HAS BEEN ACQUIRED FOR INVESTMENT ONLY AND MAY NOT BE SOLD, TRANSFERRED OR ASSIGNED IN THE ABSENCE OF REGISTRATION OF THE RESALE THEREOF UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OR AN OPINION OF COUNSEL REASONABLY SATISFACTORY IN FORM, SCOPE AND SUBSTANCE TO THE COMPANY THAT SUCH REGISTRATION IS NOT REQUIRED.

### PROMISSORY NOTE

Principal Amount: \$300,000

Dated as of 4, 2020

B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II, a Delaware corporation (the "**Maker**"), promises to pay to the order of B. Riley Principal Sponsor Co. II, LLC or its registered assigns or successors in interest (the "**Payee**"), or order, the principal sum of Three Hundred Thousand Dollars (\$300,000) or such lesser amount as shall have been advanced to Payee to Maker and shall remain unpaid under this Note on the Maturity Date (as defined below) in lawful money of the United States of America, on the terms and conditions described below. All payments on this Note shall be made by check or wire transfer of immediately available funds or as otherwise determined by the Maker to such account as the Payee may from time to time designate by written notice in accordance with the provisions of this Note.

**1. Principal.** The entire unpaid principal balance of this Note shall be payable on the earlier of: (i) December 31, 2020 or (ii) the date on which Maker consummates an initial public offering of its securities (such earlier date, the "**Maturity Date**"). The principal balance may be prepaid at any time. Under no circumstances shall any individual, including but not limited to any officer, director, employee or stockholder of the Maker, be obligated personally for any obligations or liabilities of the Maker hereunder.

**2. Drawdown Requests.** Maker and Payee agree that Maker may request, from time to time, up to Three Hundred Thousand Dollars (\$300,000) in drawdowns under this Note to be used for costs and expenses related to Maker's formation and the proposed initial public offering of its securities (the "**IPO**"). Principal of this Note may be drawn down from time to time prior to the Maturity Date upon written request from Maker to Payee (each, a "**Drawdown Request**"). Each Drawdown Request must state the amount to be drawn down, and must not be an amount less than Ten Thousand Dollars (\$10,000). Payee shall fund each Drawdown Request no later than three (3) business days after receipt of a Drawdown Request; provided, however, that the maximum amount of drawdowns outstanding under this Note at any time may not exceed Three Hundred Thousand Dollars (\$300,000). No fees, payments or other amounts shall be due to Payee in connection with, or as a result of, any Drawdown Request by Maker.

**3. Interest.** No interest shall accrue on the unpaid principal balance of this Note.

**4. Application of Payments.** All payments shall be applied first to payment in full of any costs incurred in the collection of any sum due under this Note, including (without limitation) reasonable attorney's fees, then to the payment in full of any late charges and finally to the reduction of the unpaid principal balance of this Note.

**5. Events of Default.** The following shall constitute an event of default ("**Event of Default**"):

(a) Failure to Make Required Payments. Failure by Maker to pay the principal amount due pursuant to this Note within five (5) business days of the date specified above.

(b) Voluntary Bankruptcy, Etc.. The commencement by Maker of a voluntary case under any applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, rehabilitation or other similar law, or the consent by it to the appointment of or taking possession by a receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, custodian, sequestrator (or other similar official) of Maker or for any substantial part of its property, or the making by it of any assignment for the benefit of creditors, or the failure of Maker generally to pay its debts as such debts become due, or the taking of corporate action by Maker in furtherance of any of the foregoing.

---

(c) Involuntary Bankruptcy, Etc. The entry of a decree or order for relief by a court having jurisdiction in the premises in respect of Maker in an involuntary case under any applicable bankruptcy, insolvency or other similar law, or appointing a receiver, liquidator, assignee, custodian, trustee, sequestrator (or similar official) of Maker or for any substantial part of its property, or ordering the winding-up or liquidation of its affairs, and the continuance of any such decree or order unstayed and in effect for a period of 60 consecutive days.

## 6. Remedies.

(a) Upon the occurrence of an Event of Default specified in Section 4(a) hereof, Payee may, by written notice to Maker, declare this Note to be due immediately and payable, whereupon the unpaid principal amount of this Note, and all other amounts payable thereunder, shall become immediately due and payable without presentment, demand, protest or other notice of any kind, all of which are hereby expressly waived, anything contained herein or in the documents evidencing the same to the contrary notwithstanding.

(b) Upon the occurrence of an Event of Default specified in Sections 5(b) or 5(c), the unpaid principal balance of this Note, and all other sums payable with regard to this Note, shall automatically and immediately become due and payable, in all cases without any action on the part of Payee.

7. **Waivers.** Maker and all endorsers and guarantors of, and sureties for, this Note waive presentment for payment, demand, notice of dishonor, protest, and notice of protest with regard to the Note, all errors, defects and imperfections in any proceedings instituted by Payee under the terms of this Note, and all benefits that might accrue to Maker by virtue of any present or future laws exempting any property, real or personal, or any part of the proceeds arising from any sale of any such property, from attachment, levy or sale under execution, or providing for any stay of execution, exemption from civil process, or extension of time for payment; and Maker agrees that any real estate that may be levied upon pursuant to a judgment obtained by virtue hereof, on any writ of execution issued hereon, may be sold upon any such writ in whole or in part in any order desired by Payee.

8. **Unconditional Liability.** Maker hereby waives all notices in connection with the delivery, acceptance, performance, default, or enforcement of the payment of this Note, and agrees that its liability shall be unconditional, without regard to the liability of any other party, and shall not be affected in any manner by any indulgence, extension of time, renewal, waiver or modification granted or consented to by Payee, and consents to any and all extensions of time, renewals, waivers, or modifications that may be granted by Payee with respect to the payment or other provisions of this Note, and agrees that additional makers, endorsers, guarantors, or sureties may become parties hereto without notice to Maker or affecting Maker's liability hereunder.

9. **Notices.** All notices, statements or other documents which are required or contemplated by this Agreement shall be: (i) in writing and delivered personally or sent by first class registered or certified mail, overnight courier service or facsimile or electronic transmission to the address designated in writing, (ii) by facsimile to the number most recently provided to such party or such other address or fax number as may be designated in writing by such party and (iii) by electronic mail, to the electronic mail address most recently provided to such party or such other electronic mail address as may be designated in writing by such party. Any notice or other communication so transmitted shall be deemed to have been given on the day of delivery, if delivered personally, on the business day following receipt of written confirmation, if sent by facsimile or electronic transmission, one (1) business day after delivery to an overnight courier service or five (5) days after mailing if sent by mail.

10. **Construction.** THIS NOTE SHALL BE CONSTRUED AND ENFORCED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE LAWS OF NEW YORK, WITHOUT REGARD TO CONFLICT OF LAW PROVISIONS THEREOF.

11. **Severability.** Any provision contained in this Note which is prohibited or unenforceable in any jurisdiction shall, as to such jurisdiction, be ineffective to the extent of such prohibition or unenforceability without invalidating the remaining provisions hereof, and any such prohibition or unenforceability in any jurisdiction shall not invalidate or render unenforceable such provision in any other jurisdiction.

12. **Trust Waiver.** Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, the Payee hereby waives any and all right, title, interest or claim of any kind (“**Claim**”) in or to any distribution of or from the trust account to be established in which the proceeds of the IPO conducted by the Maker (including the deferred underwriters discounts and commissions) and the proceeds of the sale of the warrants issued in a private placement to occur prior to the consummation of the IPO are to be deposited, as described in greater detail in the registration statement and prospectus to be filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission in connection with the IPO, and hereby agrees not to seek recourse, reimbursement, payment or satisfaction for any Claim against the trust account for any reason whatsoever.

13. **Amendment; Waiver.** Any amendment hereto or waiver of any provision hereof may be made with, and only with, the written consent of the Maker and the Payee.

14. **Assignment.** No assignment or transfer of this Note or any rights or obligations hereunder may be made by any party hereto (by operation of law or otherwise) without the prior written consent of the other party hereto and any attempted assignment without the required consent shall be void.

[ *Signature page follows* ]

**IN WITNESS WHEREOF** , Maker, intending to be legally bound hereby, has caused this Note to be duly executed by the undersigned as of the day and year first above written.

**B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II**  
a Delaware corporation

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: Daniel Shribman  
Title: Chief Financial Officer

[ *Signature Page to Promissory Note* ]

---

## FORM OF INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT TRUST AGREEMENT

This Investment Management Trust Agreement (this “**Agreement**”) is made effective as of [ ], 2020 by and between B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II, a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, a New York corporation (the “**Trustee**”).

WHEREAS, the Company’s registration statement on Form S-1, File No. 333-[ ] (the “**Registration Statement**”) and prospectus (the “**Prospectus**”) for the initial public offering (the “**Offering**”) of the Company’s units (the “**Units**”), each of which consists of one share of the Company’s Class A common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the “**Common Stock**”), and one-half of one redeemable warrant, has been declared effective as of the date hereof by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission; and

WHEREAS, the Company has entered into an Underwriting Agreement (the “**Underwriting Agreement**”) with B. Riley FBR, Inc., as representative (the “**Representative**”) of the several underwriters (the “**Underwriters**”) named therein; and

WHEREAS, as described in the Prospectus, \$200,000,000 of the gross proceeds of the Offering and sale of the Private Placement Units (as defined in the Underwriting Agreement) (or \$230,000,000 if the Underwriters’ over-allotment option is exercised in full) will be delivered to the Trustee to be deposited and held in a segregated trust account located at all times in the United States (the “**Trust Account**”) for the benefit of the Company and the holders of the Common Stock included in the Units issued in the Offering as hereinafter provided (the amount to be delivered to the Trustee (and any interest subsequently earned thereon) is referred to herein as the “**Property**,” the stockholders for whose benefit the Trustee shall hold the Property will be referred to as the “**Public Stockholders**,” and the Public Stockholders and the Company will be referred to together as the “**Beneficiaries**”); and

WHEREAS, the Company and the Trustee desire to enter into this Agreement to set forth the terms and conditions pursuant to which the Trustee shall hold the Property.

NOW THEREFORE, IT IS AGREED:

1. Agreements and Covenants of Trustee. The Trustee hereby agrees and covenants to:

(a) Hold the Property in trust for the Beneficiaries in accordance with the terms of this Agreement in the Trust Account established by the Trustee in the United States at J.P. Morgan Chase Bank, N.A., (or at another U.S. chartered commercial bank with consolidated assets of \$100 billion or more) in the United States, maintained by the Trustee and at a brokerage institution selected by the Trustee that is reasonably satisfactory to the Company;

(b) Manage, supervise and administer the Trust Account subject to the terms and conditions set forth herein;

(c) In a timely manner, upon the written instruction of the Company, invest and reinvest the Property solely in United States government securities within the meaning of Section 2(a)(16) of the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended, having a maturity of 185 days or less, or in money market funds meeting the conditions of paragraphs (d)(1), (d)(2), (d)(3) and (d)(4) of Rule 2a-7 promulgated under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (or any successor rule), which invest only in direct U.S. government treasury obligations, as determined by the Company; it being understood that the Trust Account will earn no interest while account funds are uninvested awaiting the Company’s instructions hereunder and the Trustee may earn bank credits or other consideration;

(d) Collect and receive, when due, all interest or other income arising from the Property, which shall become part of the “Property,” as such term is used herein;

(e) Promptly notify the Company and the Representative of all communications received by the Trustee with respect to any Property requiring action by the Company;

---



(f) Supply any necessary information or documents as may be requested by the Company (or its authorized agents) in connection with the Company's preparation of the tax returns relating to assets held in the Trust Account;

(g) Participate in any plan or proceeding for protecting or enforcing any right or interest arising from the Property if, as and when instructed by the Company to do so;

(h) Render to the Company monthly written statements of the activities of, and amounts in, the Trust Account reflecting all receipts and disbursements of the Trust Account;

(i) Commence liquidation of the Trust Account only after and promptly after (x) receipt of, and only in accordance with, the terms of a letter from the Company (" **Termination Letter** ") in a form substantially similar to that attached hereto as either Exhibit A or Exhibit B, as applicable, signed on behalf of the Company by its Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, President, Executive Vice President, Vice President, Secretary or Chairman of the board of directors of the Company (the " **Board** ") or other authorized officer of the Company, and, in the case of Exhibit A, acknowledged and agreed to by the Representative, and complete the liquidation of the Trust Account and distribute the Property in the Trust Account, including interest not previously released to the Company to pay its franchise and income taxes (less up to \$100,000 of interest that may be released to the Company to pay dissolution expenses), only as directed in the Termination Letter and the other documents referred to therein, or (y) upon the date which is, the later of (1) 24 months after the closing of the Offering and (2) such later date as may be approved by the Company's stockholders in accordance with the Company's amended and restated certificate of incorporation if a Termination Letter has not been received by the Trustee prior to such date, in which case the Trust Account shall be liquidated in accordance with the procedures set forth in the Termination Letter attached as Exhibit B and the Property in the Trust Account, including interest not previously released to the Company to pay its franchise and income taxes (less up to \$100,000 of interest that may be released to the Company to pay dissolution expenses) shall be distributed to the Public Stockholders of record as of such date;

(j) Upon written request from the Company, which may be given from time to time in a form substantially similar to that attached hereto as Exhibit C, withdraw from the Trust Account and distribute to the Company the amount of interest earned on the Property requested by the Company to cover any income or franchise tax obligation owed by the Company as a result of assets of the Company or interest or other income earned on the Property, which amount shall be delivered directly to the Company by electronic funds transfer or other method of prompt payment, and the Company shall forward such payment to the relevant taxing authority; provided, however, that to the extent there is not sufficient cash in the Trust Account to pay such tax obligation, the Trustee shall liquidate such assets held in the Trust Account as shall be designated by the Company in writing to make such distribution, so long as there is no reduction in the principal amount initially deposited in the Trust Account (it being acknowledged and agreed that any such amount in excess of interest income earned on the Property shall not be payable from the Trust Account). The written request of the Company referenced above shall constitute presumptive evidence that the Company is entitled to said funds, and the Trustee shall have no responsibility to look beyond said request;

(k) Upon written request from the Company, which may be given from time to time in a form substantially similar to that attached hereto as Exhibit D, the Trustee shall distribute on behalf of the Company the amount requested by the Company to be used to redeem shares of Common Stock from Public Stockholders properly submitted in connection with a stockholder vote to approve an amendment to the Company's amended and restated certificate of incorporation to modify the substance or timing of the Company's obligation to redeem 100% of its public shares of Common Stock if the Company has not consummated an initial Business Combination within such time as is described in the Company's amended and restated certificate of incorporation. The written request of the Company referenced above shall constitute presumptive evidence that the Company is entitled to distribute said funds, and the Trustee shall have no responsibility to look beyond said request; and

(l) Not make any withdrawals or distributions from the Trust Account other than pursuant to Section 1(i), (j) or (k) above.

2. Agreements and Covenants of the Company. The Company hereby agrees and covenants to:

(a) Give all instructions to the Trustee hereunder in writing, signed by the Company's Chairman of the Board, Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, President, Executive Vice President, Vice President or Secretary. In addition, except with respect to its duties under Sections 1(i), 1(j), and 1(k) hereof, the Trustee shall be entitled to rely on, and shall be protected in relying on, any verbal or telephonic advice or instruction which it, in good faith and with reasonable care, believes to be given by any one of the persons authorized above to give written instructions, provided that the Company shall promptly confirm such instructions in writing;

(b) Subject to Section 4 hereof, hold the Trustee harmless and indemnify the Trustee from and against any and all expenses, including reasonable counsel fees and disbursements, or losses suffered by the Trustee in connection with any action taken by it hereunder and in connection with any action, suit or other proceeding brought against the Trustee involving any claim, or in connection with any claim or demand, which in any way arises out of or relates to this Agreement, the services of the Trustee hereunder, or the Property or any interest earned on the Property, except for expenses and losses resulting from the Trustee's gross negligence, fraud or willful misconduct. Promptly after the receipt by the Trustee of notice of demand or claim or the commencement of any action, suit or proceeding, pursuant to which the Trustee intends to seek indemnification under this Section 2(b), it shall notify the Company in writing of such claim (hereinafter referred to as the "**Indemnified Claim**"). The Trustee shall have the right to conduct and manage the defense against such Indemnified Claim; provided that the Trustee shall obtain the consent of the Company with respect to the selection of counsel, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Trustee may not agree to settle any Indemnified Claim without the prior written consent of the Company, which such consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Company may participate in such action with its own counsel;

(c) Pay the Trustee the fees set forth on Schedule A hereto, including an initial acceptance fee, annual administration fee, and transaction processing fee which fees shall be subject to modification by the parties from time to time. It is expressly understood that the Property shall not be used to pay such fees unless and until it is distributed to the Company pursuant to Sections 1(i)-1(k) upon consummation of a Business Combination. The Company shall pay the Trustee the initial acceptance fee and the first annual administration fee at the consummation of the Offering. The Company shall not be responsible for any other fees or charges of the Trustee except as set forth in this Section 2(c), Schedule A and as may be provided in Section 2(b) hereof;

(d) In connection with any vote of the Company's stockholders regarding a merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or similar business combination involving the Company and one or more businesses (the "**Business Combination**"), provide to the Trustee an affidavit or certificate of the inspector of elections for the stockholder meeting verifying the vote of such stockholders regarding such Business Combination;

(e) Provide the Representative with a copy of any Termination Letter(s) and/or any other correspondence that is sent to the Trustee with respect to any proposed withdrawal from the Trust Account promptly after it issues the same;

(f) Instruct the Trustee to make only those distributions that are permitted under this Agreement, and refrain from instructing the Trustee to make any distributions that are not permitted under this Agreement; and

3. Limitations of Liability. The Trustee shall have no responsibility or liability to:

(a) Imply obligations, perform duties, inquire or otherwise be subject to the provisions of any agreement or document other than this Agreement and that which is expressly set forth herein;

(b) Take any action with respect to the Property, other than as directed in Section 1 hereof, and the Trustee shall have no liability to any third party except for liability arising out of the Trustee's gross negligence, fraud or willful misconduct;

(c) Institute any proceeding for the collection of any principal and income arising from, or institute, appear in or defend any proceeding of any kind with respect to, any of the Property unless and until it shall have received instructions from the Company given as provided herein to do so and the Company shall have advanced or guaranteed to it funds sufficient to pay any expenses incident thereto;

(d) Refund any depreciation in principal of any Property;

(e) Assume that the authority of any person designated by the Company to give instructions hereunder shall not be continuing unless provided otherwise in such designation, or unless the Company shall have delivered a written revocation of such authority to the Trustee;

(f) The other parties hereto or to anyone else for any action taken or omitted by it, or any action suffered by it to be taken or omitted, in good faith and in the Trustee's best judgment, except for the Trustee's gross negligence, fraud or willful misconduct. The Trustee may rely conclusively and shall be protected in acting upon any order, notice, demand, certificate, opinion or advice of counsel (including counsel chosen by the Trustee, which counsel may be the Company's counsel), statement, instrument, report or other paper or document (not only as to its due execution and the validity and effectiveness of its provisions, but also as to the truth and acceptability of any information therein contained) which the Trustee believes, in good faith and with reasonable care, to be genuine and to be signed or presented by the proper person or persons. The Trustee shall not be bound by any notice or demand, or any waiver, modification, termination or rescission of this Agreement or any of the terms hereof, unless evidenced by a written instrument delivered to the Trustee, signed by the proper party or parties and, if the duties or rights of the Trustee are affected, unless it shall give its prior written consent thereto;

(g) Verify the accuracy of the information contained in the Registration Statement;

(h) Provide any assurance that any Business Combination entered into by the Company or any other action taken by the Company is as contemplated by the Registration Statement;

(i) File information returns with respect to the Trust Account with any local, state or federal taxing authority or provide periodic written statements to the Company documenting the taxes payable by the Company, if any, relating to any interest income earned on the Property;

(j) Prepare, execute and file tax reports, income or other tax returns and pay any taxes with respect to any income generated by, and activities relating to, the Trust Account, regardless of whether such tax is payable by the Trust Account or the Company, including, but not limited to, franchise and income tax obligations, except pursuant to Section 1(j) hereof; or

(k) Verify calculations, qualify or otherwise approve the Company's written requests for distributions pursuant to Sections 1(i), 1(j) or 1(k) hereof.

4. Trust Account Waiver. The Trustee has no right of set-off or any right, title, interest or claim of any kind (" **Claim** ") to, or to any monies in, the Trust Account, and hereby irrevocably waives any Claim to, or to any monies in, the Trust Account that it may have now or in the future. In the event the Trustee has any Claim against the Company under this Agreement, including, without limitation, under Section 2(b) or Section 2(c) hereof, the Trustee shall pursue such Claim solely against the Company and its assets outside the Trust Account and not against the Property or any monies in the Trust Account.

5. Termination. This Agreement shall terminate as follows:

(a) If the Trustee gives written notice to the Company that it desires to resign under this Agreement, the Company shall use its reasonable efforts to locate a successor trustee, pending which the Trustee shall continue to act in accordance with this Agreement. At such time that the Company notifies the Trustee that a successor trustee has been appointed and has agreed to become subject to the terms of this Agreement, the Trustee shall transfer the management of the Trust Account to the successor trustee, including but not limited to the transfer of copies of the reports and statements relating to the Trust Account, whereupon this Agreement shall terminate; provided, however, that in the event that the Company does not locate a successor trustee within ninety (90) days of receipt of the resignation notice from the Trustee, the Trustee may submit an application to have the Property deposited with any court in the State of New York or with the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York and upon such deposit, the Trustee shall be immune from any liability whatsoever; or

(b) At such time that the Trustee has completed the liquidation of the Trust Account and its obligations in accordance with the provisions of Section 1(i) hereof and distributed the Property in accordance with the provisions of the Termination Letter, this Agreement shall terminate except with respect to Section 2(b).

#### 6. Miscellaneous.

(a) The Company and the Trustee each acknowledge that the Trustee will follow the security procedures set forth below with respect to funds transferred from the Trust Account. The Company and the Trustee will each restrict access to confidential information relating to such security procedures to authorized persons. Each party must notify the other party immediately if it has reason to believe unauthorized persons may have obtained access to such confidential information, or of any change in its authorized personnel. In executing funds transfers, the Trustee shall rely upon all information supplied to it by the Company, including, account names, account numbers, and all other identifying information relating to a Beneficiary, Beneficiary's bank or intermediary bank. Except for any liability arising out of the Trustee's gross negligence, fraud or willful misconduct, the Trustee shall not be liable for any loss, liability or expense resulting from any error in the information or transmission of the funds.

(b) This Agreement shall be governed by and construed and enforced in accordance with the laws of the State of New York, without giving effect to conflicts of law principles that would result in the application of the substantive laws of another jurisdiction. Subject to Section 6(d) hereof, this Agreement may be executed in several original or facsimile counterparts, each one of which shall constitute an original, and together shall constitute but one instrument.

(c) This Agreement contains the entire agreement and understanding of the parties hereto with respect to the subject matter hereof. This Agreement or any provision hereof may only be changed, amended or modified (other than to correct a typographical error) by a writing signed by each of the parties hereto.

(d) This Agreement or any provision hereof may only be changed, amended or modified pursuant to Section 6(c) hereof with the Consent of the Stockholders. For purposes of this Section 6(d), the "Consent of the Stockholders" means receipt by the Trustee of a certificate from the inspector of elections of the stockholder meeting certifying that the Company's stockholders of record as of a record date established in accordance with Section 213(a) of the Delaware General Corporation Law, as amended ("DGCL") (or any successor rule), who hold sixty-five percent (65%) or more of all then outstanding shares of the Common Stock and Class B common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, of the Company voting together as a single class, have voted in favor of such change, amendment or modification. No such amendment will affect any Public Stockholder who has otherwise indicated his election to redeem his shares of Common Stock in connection with a stockholder vote sought to amend this Agreement to modify the substance or timing of the Company's obligation to redeem 100% of the Common Stock if the Company does not complete its initial Business Combination within the time frame specified in the Company's amended and restated certificate of incorporation. Except for any liability arising out of the Trustee's gross negligence, fraud or willful misconduct, the Trustee may rely conclusively on the certification from the inspector or elections referenced above and shall be relieved of all liability to any party for executing the proposed amendment in reliance thereon.

(e) The parties hereto consent to the jurisdiction and venue of any state or federal court located in the City of New York, State of New York, for purposes of resolving any disputes hereunder. AS TO ANY CLAIM, CROSS-CLAIM OR COUNTERCLAIM IN ANY WAY RELATING TO THIS AGREEMENT, EACH PARTY WAIVES THE RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY.

(f) Any notice, consent or request to be given in connection with any of the terms or provisions of this Agreement shall be in writing and shall be sent by express mail or similar private courier service, by certified mail (return receipt requested), by hand delivery or by electronic mail:

if to the Trustee, to:

Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company  
1 State Street, 30<sup>th</sup> Floor  
New York, New York 10004  
Attn: Francis Wolf & Celeste Gonzalez  
Email: fwolf@continentalstock.com  
Email: cgonzalez@continentalstock.com

if to the Company, to:

B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II  
299 Park Avenue  
21<sup>st</sup> Floor  
New York, New York 10171  
Attn: Daniel Shribman, Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer  
Email: dshribman@brileyfin.com

in each case, with copies to:

Winston & Strawn LLP  
200 Park Avenue  
New York, New York 10166  
Attn: Joel L. Rubinstein  
Email: jrubinstein@winston.com

and

B. Riley FBR, Inc.  
299 Park Avenue  
21<sup>st</sup> Floor  
New York, New York 10171  
Attn: Jonathan Mitchell  
Email: jmitchell@brileyfbr.com

and

Ellenoff Grossman & Schole LLP  
1345 Avenue of the Americas  
New York, New York 10105  
Attn: Stuart Neuhauser, Esq.

(g) Each of the Company and the Trustee hereby represents that it has the full right and power and has been duly authorized to enter into this Agreement and to perform its respective obligations as contemplated hereunder. The Trustee acknowledges and agrees that it shall not make any claims or proceed against the Trust Account, including by way of set-off, and shall not be entitled to any funds in the Trust Account under any circumstance.

(h) This Agreement is the joint product of the Trustee and the Company and each provision hereof has been subject to the mutual consultation, negotiation and agreement of such parties and shall not be construed for or against any party hereto.

(i) This Agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which shall be deemed to be an original, but all such counterparts shall together constitute one and the same instrument. Delivery of a signed counterpart of this Agreement by facsimile or electronic transmission shall constitute valid and sufficient delivery thereof.

(j) Each of the Company and the Trustee hereby acknowledges and agrees that B. Riley FBR, Inc. on behalf of the Underwriters is a third-party beneficiary of this Agreement.

(k) Except as specified herein, no party to this Agreement may assign its rights or delegate its obligations hereunder to any other person or entity.

[ Signature Page Follows ]

[ Signature Page to Investment Management Trust Agreement ]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF , the parties have duly executed this Investment Management Trust Agreement as of the date first written above.

**CONTINENTAL STOCK TRANSFER & TRUST  
COMPANY , as Trustee**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: Francis Wolf  
Title: Vice President & Assistant Secretary – Trust &  
Corporate Action Services

**B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: Daniel Shribman  
Title: Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial  
Officer

[ Signature Page to Investment Management Trust Agreement ]

---

SCHEDULE A

<b>Fee Item</b>	<b>Time and method of payment</b>	<b>Amount</b>
Initial set-up fee.	Initial closing of Offering by wire transfer.	\$ 3,500
Trustee administration fee	Payable annually. First year fee payable, at initial closing of Offering by wire transfer, thereafter by wire transfer or check.	\$ 10,000.00
Transaction processing fee for disbursements to Company under <u>Sections 1 and 2</u>	Deduction by Trustee from accumulated income following disbursement made to Company under <u>Section 1 and 2</u>	\$ 250.00
Paying Agent services as required pursuant to <u>Section 1(i) and 1(k)</u> .	Billed to Company upon delivery of service pursuant to <u>Section 1(i) and 1(k)</u> .	Prevailing rates

---

EXHIBIT A

[Letterhead of Company]

[Insert date]

Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company  
1 State Street, 30th Floor  
New York, New York 10004  
Attn: Francis Wolf & Celeste Gonzalez

Re: Trust Account No. Termination Letter

Ladies and Gentlemen:

Pursuant to Section 1(i) of the Investment Management Trust Agreement between B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II (the “**Company**”) and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company (“**Trustee**”), dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 2020 (the “**Trust Agreement**”), this is to advise you that the Company has entered into an agreement with \_\_\_\_\_ (the “**Target Business**”) to consummate a business combination with Target Business (the “**Business Combination**”) on or about **[insert date]**. The Company shall notify you at least seventy-two (72) hours in advance of the actual date (or such shorter period as you may agree) of the consummation of the Business Combination (the “**Consummation Date**”). Capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings set forth in the Trust Agreement.

In accordance with the terms of the Trust Agreement, we hereby authorize you to commence to liquidate all of the assets of the Trust Account on **[insert date]**, and to transfer the proceeds to a segregated account held by you on behalf of the Beneficiaries to the effect that, on the Consummation Date, all of the funds held in the Trust Account will be immediately available for transfer to the account or accounts that the Company shall direct on the Consummation Date.

On the Consummation Date (i) counsel for the Company shall deliver to you written notification that the Business Combination has been consummated, or will be consummated concurrently with your transfer of funds to the accounts as directed by the Company (the “**Notification**”), and (ii) the Company shall deliver to you (a) a certificate of the Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, Co-Executive Chairman or Vice Chairman, which verifies that the Business Combination has been approved by a vote of the Company’s stockholders, if a vote is held and (b) a joint written instruction signed by the Company and the Representative with respect to the transfer of the funds held in the Trust Account, including payment of amounts owed to public stockholders who have properly exercised their redemption rights and payment of the such amounts to the Representative payable pursuant to that certain business combination marketing agreement between the Company and the Representative (the “**Marketing Fee**”) from the Trust Account (the “**Instruction Letter**”). You are hereby directed and authorized to transfer the funds held in the Trust Account immediately upon your receipt of the Notification and the Instruction Letter, in accordance with the terms of the Instruction Letter. In the event that certain deposits held in the Trust Account may not be liquidated by the Consummation Date without penalty, you will notify the Company in writing of the same and the Company shall direct you as to whether such funds should remain in the Trust Account and be distributed after the Consummation Date to the Company. Upon the distribution of all the funds, net of any payments necessary for reasonable unreimbursed expenses related to liquidating the Trust Account, your obligations under the Trust Agreement shall be terminated.

In the event that the Business Combination is not consummated on the Consummation Date described in the notice thereof and we have not notified you on or before the original Consummation Date of a new Consummation Date, then upon receipt by the Trustee of written instructions from the Company, the funds held in the Trust Account shall be reinvested as provided in Section 1(c) of the Trust Agreement on the business day immediately following the Consummation Date as set forth in such notice as soon thereafter as possible.

---



Very truly yours,

B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

Agreed and acknowledged by:

B. Riley FBR, Inc.

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

\_\_\_\_\_

EXHIBIT B

[Letterhead of Company]

[Insert date]

Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company  
1 State Street, 30th Floor  
New York, New York 10004  
Attn: Francis Wolf & Celeste Gonzalez

Re: Trust Account No. Termination Letter

Ladies and Gentlemen:

Pursuant to Section 1(i) of the Investment Management Trust Agreement between B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II (the “*Company*”) and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company (the “*Trustee*”), dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 2020 (the “*Trust Agreement*”), this is to advise you that the Company has been unable to effect a business combination with a Target Business (the “*Business Combination*”) within the time frame specified in the Company’s Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation, as described in the Company’s Prospectus relating to the Offering. Capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings set forth in the Trust Agreement.

In accordance with the terms of the Trust Agreement, we hereby authorize you to liquidate all of the assets in the Trust Account on \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_ and to transfer the total proceeds into a segregated account held by you on behalf of the Beneficiaries to await distribution to the Public Stockholders. The Company has selected \_\_\_\_\_<sup>1</sup> as the effective date for the purpose of determining when the Public Stockholders will be entitled to receive their share of the liquidation proceeds. You agree to be the Paying Agent of record and, in your separate capacity as Paying Agent, agree to distribute said funds directly to the Company’s Public Stockholders in accordance with the terms of the Trust Agreement and the Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation of the Company. Upon the distribution of all the funds, net of any payments necessary for reasonable unreimbursed expenses related to liquidating the Trust Account, your obligations under the Trust Agreement shall be terminated, except to the extent otherwise provided in Section 1(j) of the Trust Agreement.

Very truly yours,

B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name:

Title:

cc: B. Riley FBR, Inc.

---

<sup>1</sup> 24 months from the closing of the Offering or such later date as may be approved by the Company’s stockholders in accordance with the Company’s amended and restated certificate of incorporation.

---

EXHIBIT C

[Letterhead of Company]

[Insert date]

Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company  
1 State Street, 30th Floor  
New York, New York 10004  
Attn: Francis Wolf & Celeste Gonzalez

Re: Trust Account No. Tax Payment Withdrawal Instruction

Ladies and Gentlemen:

Pursuant to Section 1(j) of the Investment Management Trust Agreement between B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II (the "**Company**") and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company (the "**Trustee**"), dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 2020 (the "**Trust Agreement**"), the Company hereby requests that you deliver to the Company \$\_\_\_\_\_ of the interest income earned on the Property as of the date hereof. Capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings set forth in the Trust Agreement.

The Company needs such funds to pay for the tax obligations as set forth on the attached tax return or tax statement. In accordance with the terms of the Trust Agreement, you are hereby directed and authorized to transfer (via wire transfer) such funds promptly upon your receipt of this letter to the Company's operating account at:

[WIRE INSTRUCTION INFORMATION]

Very truly yours,

B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name:

Title:

cc: B. Riley FBR, Inc.

---

EXHIBIT D

[Letterhead of Company]

[Insert date]

Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company  
1 State Street, 30th Floor  
New York, New York 10004  
Attn: Francis Wolf & Celeste Gonzalez

Re: Trust Account No. Stockholder Redemption Withdrawal Instruction

Ladies and Gentlemen:

Pursuant to Section 1(k) of the Investment Management Trust Agreement between B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II (the “**Company**”) and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company (the “**Trustee**”), dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 2020 (the “**Trust Agreement**”), the Company hereby requests that you deliver to the redeeming Public Stockholders of the Company \$\_\_\_\_\_ of the principal and interest income earned on the Property as of the date hereof to a segregated account held by you on behalf of the Beneficiaries. Capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings set forth in the Trust Agreement.

The Company needs such funds to pay its Public Stockholders who have properly elected to have their shares of Common Stock redeemed by the Company in connection with a stockholder vote to approve an amendment to the Company’s amended and restated certificate of incorporation to modify the substance or timing of the Company’s obligation to redeem 100% of public shares of Common Stock if the Company has not consummated an initial Business Combination within such time as is described in the Company’s amended and restated certificate of incorporation. As such, you are hereby directed and authorized to transfer (via wire transfer) such funds promptly upon your receipt of this letter to a segregated account held by you on behalf of the Beneficiaries.

Very truly yours,

B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name:

Title:

cc: B. Riley FBR, Inc.

---

## FORM OF REGISTRATION RIGHTS AGREEMENT

THIS REGISTRATION RIGHTS AGREEMENT (this “**Agreement**”), dated as of [ ], 2020, is made and entered into by and among B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II, a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), B. Riley Principal Sponsor Co. II, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company (the “**Sponsor**”) and each of the undersigned individuals (together with the Sponsor and any person or entity who hereafter becomes a party to this Agreement pursuant to Section 5.2 of this Agreement, a “**Holder**” and collectively the “ **Holders**”).

## RECITALS

**WHEREAS**, the Company has 5,750,000 shares of the Company’s Class B common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the “**Founder Shares**”), issued and outstanding, up to 750,000 of which will be forfeited to the Company for no consideration depending on the extent to which the underwriters of the Company’s initial public offering exercise their over-allotment option;

**WHEREAS**, the Founder Shares are convertible into shares of the Company’s Class A common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the “**Common Stock**”), on the terms and conditions provided in the Company’s second amended and restated certificate of incorporation;

**WHEREAS**, on [ ], 2020, the Company and the Sponsor entered into that certain Private Placement Units Purchase Agreement (the “**Private Placement Units Purchase Agreement**”), pursuant to which the Sponsor agreed to purchase an aggregate of 575,000 private placement units (or up to 635,000 units to the extent that the over-allotment option in connection with the Company’s initial public offering is exercised) (the “**Private Placement Units**”) in a private placement transaction occurring simultaneously with the closing of the Company’s initial public offering;

**WHEREAS**, on [ ], 2020, the Company and B. Riley Principal Investments, LLC (the “**Forward Purchaser**”) entered into that certain Forward Purchase Agreement (the “**Forward Purchase Agreement**”), pursuant to which the Forward Purchaser agreed to purchase an aggregate of 2,500,000 forward purchase units (the “**Forward Purchase Units**”) in a private placement transaction to close concurrently with the closing of the initial Business Combination (as defined below);

**WHEREAS**, in order to finance the Company’s transaction costs in connection with its search for and consummation of an initial Business Combination, the Sponsor or an affiliate of the Sponsor or certain of the Company’s officers and directors may loan to the Company funds as the Company may require, of which up to \$1,500,000 of such loans may be convertible into private placement-equivalent units (“**Working Capital Units**”) at a price of \$10.00 per unit at the option of the lender; and

**WHEREAS**, the Company and the Holders desire to enter into this Agreement, pursuant to which the Company shall grant the Holders certain registration rights with respect to certain securities of the Company, as set forth in this Agreement.

**NOW, THEREFORE**, in consideration of the representations, covenants and agreements contained herein, and certain other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, the parties hereto, intending to be legally bound, hereby agree as follows:

ARTICLE I  
DEFINITIONS

1.1 Definitions. The terms defined in this Article I shall, for all purposes of this Agreement, have the respective meanings set forth below:

“**Adverse Disclosure**” shall mean any public disclosure of material non-public information, which disclosure, in the good faith judgment of the Chief Executive Officer or principal financial officer of the Company, after consultation with counsel to the Company, (i) would be required to be made in any Registration Statement or Prospectus in order for the applicable Registration Statement or Prospectus not to contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements contained therein (in the case of any prospectus and any preliminary prospectus, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made) not misleading, (ii) would not be required to be made at such time if the Registration Statement were not being filed, and (iii) the Company has a bona fide business purpose for not making such information public.

---

“ **Agreement** ” shall have the meaning given in the Preamble.

“ **Board** ” shall mean the Board of Directors of the Company.

“ **Business Combination** ” shall mean any merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or other similar business combination with one or more businesses, involving the Company.

“ **Commission** ” shall mean the Securities and Exchange Commission.

“ **Common Stock** ” shall have the meaning given in the Recitals hereto.

“ **Company** ” shall have the meaning given in the Preamble.

“ **Demand Registration** ” shall have the meaning given in subsection 2.1.1.

“ **Demanding Holder** ” shall have the meaning given in subsection 2.1.1.

“ **Exchange Act** ” shall mean the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as it may be amended from time to time.

“ **Form S-1** ” shall have the meaning given in subsection 2.1.1.

“ **Form S-3** ” shall have the meaning given in subsection 2.3.

“ **Forward Purchase Agreement** ” shall have the meaning given in the Recitals hereto.

“ **Forward Purchaser** ” shall have the meaning given in the Recitals hereto.

“ **Forward Purchase Units** ” shall have the meaning given in the Recitals hereto.

“ **Founder Shares** ” shall have the meaning given in the Recitals hereto and shall be deemed to include the shares of Common Stock issuable upon conversion thereof.

“ **Founder Shares Lock-up Period** ” shall mean, with respect to the Founder Shares, the period ending on the earlier of (A) one year after the completion of the Company’s initial Business Combination or (B) subsequent to the Business Combination, (x) if the last sale price of the Common Stock equals or exceeds \$12.00 per share (as adjusted for stock splits, stock dividends, reorganizations, recapitalizations and the like) for any 20 trading days within any 30-trading day period commencing at least 150 days after the Company’s initial Business Combination or (y) the date on which the Company completes a liquidation, merger, capital stock exchange, reorganization or other similar transaction that results in all of the Company’s stockholders having the right to exchange their shares of Common Stock for cash, securities or other property.

“ **Holders** ” shall have the meaning given in the Preamble.

“ **Insider Letter** ” shall mean that certain letter agreement, dated as of [ ], 2020, by and among the Company, the Sponsor and each of the Company’s officers, directors and director nominees.

“ **Maximum Number of Securities** ” shall have the meaning given in subsection 2.1.4.

“ **Misstatement** ” shall mean an untrue statement of a material fact or an omission to state a material fact required to be stated in a Registration Statement or Prospectus, or necessary to make the statements in a Registration Statement or Prospectus (in the light of the circumstances under which they were made) not misleading.

“ **Permitted Transferees** ” shall mean any person or entity to whom a Holder of Registrable Securities is permitted to transfer such Registrable Securities prior to the expiration of the Founder Shares Lock-up Period, Private Placement Lock-up Period or any other lock-up period, as the case may be, under the Insider Letter, the Private Placement Units Purchase Agreement, the Forward Purchase Agreement, this Agreement and any other applicable agreement between such Holder and the Company, and to any transferee thereafter.

“ **Piggyback Registration** ” shall have the meaning given in subsection 2.2.1.

“ **Private Placement Lock-up Period** ” shall mean, with respect to Private Placement Units that are held by the initial purchasers of such Private Placement Units or their Permitted Transferees, the private placement shares, private placement warrants and shares of Common Stock issuable upon the exercise of the private placement warrants, and that are held by the initial purchasers of the Private Placement Units or their Permitted Transferees, the period ending 30 days after the completion of the Company’s initial Business Combination.

“ **Private Placement Units** ” shall have the meaning given in the Recitals hereto.

“ **Private Placement Units Purchase Agreement** ” shall have the meaning given in the Recitals hereto.

“ **Pro Rata** ” shall have the meaning given in subsection 2.1.4.

“ **Prospectus** ” shall mean the prospectus included in any Registration Statement, as supplemented by any and all prospectus supplements and as amended by any and all post-effective amendments and including all material incorporated by reference in such prospectus.

“ **Registrable Security** ” shall mean (a) the Founder Shares and the shares of Common Stock issued or issuable upon the conversion of the Founder Shares, (b) the Private Placement Units (including any shares of Common Stock and private placement warrants included in such Private Placement Units and any shares of Common Stock issued or issuable upon the exercise of the private placement warrants underlying the Private Placement Units), (c) the Forward Purchase Units (including any shares of Common Stock and private placement warrants included in such Forward Purchase Units and any shares of Common Stock issued or issuable upon the exercise of the private placement warrants underlying the Forward Purchase Units) (d) any outstanding shares of Common Stock or any other equity security (including the shares of Common Stock issued or issuable upon the exercise of any other equity security) of the Company held by a Holder as of the date of this Agreement, (e) any equity securities (including the shares of Common Stock issued or issuable upon the exercise of any such equity security) of the Company issuable upon conversion of any working capital loans in an amount up to \$1,500,000 made to the Company by a Holder (including the Working Capital Units, any shares of Common Stock underlying the Working Capital Units, the private placement warrants underlying the Working Capital Units and shares of Common Stock issued or issuable upon the exercise of the private placement warrants underlying the Working Capital Units) and (f) any other equity security of the Company issued or issuable with respect to any such share of Common Stock by way of a stock dividend or stock split or in connection with a combination of shares, recapitalization, merger, consolidation or reorganization; provided, however, that, as to any particular Registrable Security, such securities shall cease to be Registrable Securities when: (A) a Registration Statement with respect to the sale of such securities shall have become effective under the Securities Act and such securities shall have been sold, transferred, disposed of or exchanged in accordance with such Registration Statement; (B) such securities shall have been otherwise transferred, new certificates for such securities not bearing a legend restricting further transfer shall have been delivered by the Company and subsequent public distribution of such securities shall not require registration under the Securities Act; (C) such securities shall have ceased to be outstanding; (D) such securities may be sold without registration pursuant to Rule 144 promulgated under the Securities Act (or any successor rule promulgated thereafter by the Commission) (but with no volume or other restrictions or limitations); or (E) such securities have been sold to, or through, a broker, dealer or underwriter in a public distribution or other public securities transaction.

“ **Registration** ” shall mean a registration effected by preparing and filing a registration statement or similar document in compliance with the requirements of the Securities Act, and the applicable rules and regulations promulgated thereunder, and such registration statement becoming effective.

“ **Registration Expenses** ” shall mean the out-of-pocket expenses of a Registration, including, without limitation, the following:

(A) all registration and filing fees (including fees with respect to filings required to be made with the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc.) and any securities exchange on which the Common Stock is then listed;

(B) fees and expenses of compliance with securities or blue sky laws (including reasonable fees and disbursements of counsel for the Underwriters in connection with blue sky qualifications of Registrable Securities);

(C) printing, messenger, telephone and delivery expenses;

(D) reasonable fees and disbursements of counsel for the Company;

(E) reasonable fees and disbursements of all independent registered public accountants of the Company incurred specifically in connection with such Registration; and

(F) reasonable fees and expenses of one (1) legal counsel selected by the majority-in-interest of the Demanding Holders initiating a Demand Registration to be registered for offer and sale in the applicable Registration.

“ **Registration Statement** ” shall mean any registration statement that covers the Registrable Securities pursuant to the provisions of this Agreement, including the Prospectus included in such registration statement, amendments (including post-effective amendments) and supplements to such registration statement, and all exhibits to and all material incorporated by reference in such registration statement.

“ **Requesting Holder** ” shall have the meaning given in subsection 2.1.1.

“ **Securities Act** ” shall mean the Securities Act of 1933, as amended from time to time.

“ **Sponsor** ” shall have the meaning given in the Recitals hereto.

“ **Working Capital Units** ” shall have the meaning given in the Recitals hereto.

“ **Underwriter** ” shall mean a securities dealer who purchases any Registrable Securities as principal in an Underwritten Offering and not as part of such dealer’s market-making activities.

“ **Underwritten Registration** ” or “ **Underwritten Offering** ” shall mean a Registration in which securities of the Company are sold to an Underwriter in a firm commitment underwriting for distribution to the public.



## ARTICLE II REGISTRATIONS

### 2.1 Demand Registration.

2.1.1 Request for Registration. Subject to the provisions of subsection 2.1.4 and Section 2.4 hereof, at any time and from time to time on or after the date the Company consummates the Business Combination, the Holders of at least fifteen percent (15%) of the then-outstanding number of Registrable Securities (the “**Demanding Holders**”) may make a written demand for Registration of all or part of their Registrable Securities, which written demand shall describe the amount and type of securities to be included in such Registration and the intended method(s) of distribution thereof (such written demand a “**Demand Registration**”). The Company shall, within ten (10) days of the Company’s receipt of the Demand Registration, notify, in writing, all other Holders of Registrable Securities of such demand, and each Holder of Registrable Securities who thereafter wishes to include all or a portion of such Holder’s Registrable Securities in a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration (each such Holder that includes all or a portion of such Holder’s Registrable Securities in such Registration, a “**Requesting Holder**”) shall so notify the Company, in writing, within five (5) days after the receipt by the Holder of the notice from the Company. Upon receipt by the Company of any such written notification from a Requesting Holder(s) to the Company, such Requesting Holder(s) shall be entitled to have their Registrable Securities included in a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration and the Company shall effect, as soon thereafter as practicable, but not more than forty five (45) days immediately after the Company’s receipt of the Demand Registration, the Registration of all Registrable Securities requested by the Demanding Holders and Requesting Holders pursuant to such Demand Registration. Under no circumstances shall the Company be obligated to effect more than an aggregate of three (3) Registrations pursuant to a Demand Registration under this subsection 2.1.1 with respect to any or all Registrable Securities; provided, however, that a Registration shall not be counted for such purposes unless a Form S-1 or any similar long-form registration statement that may be available at such time (“**Form S-1**”) has become effective and all of the Registrable Securities requested by the Requesting Holders to be registered on behalf of the Requesting Holders in such Form S-1 Registration have been sold, in accordance with Section 3.1 of this Agreement.

2.1.2 Effective Registration. Notwithstanding the provisions of subsection 2.1.1 above or any other part of this Agreement, a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration shall not count as a Registration unless and until (i) the Registration Statement filed with the Commission with respect to a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration has been declared effective by the Commission and (ii) the Company has complied with all of its obligations under this Agreement with respect thereto; provided, further, that if, after such Registration Statement has been declared effective, an offering of Registrable Securities in a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration is subsequently interfered with by any stop order or injunction of the Commission, federal or state court or any other governmental agency the Registration Statement with respect to such Registration shall be deemed not to have been declared effective, unless and until, (i) such stop order or injunction is removed, rescinded or otherwise terminated, and (ii) a majority-in-interest of the Demanding Holders initiating such Demand Registration thereafter affirmatively elect to continue with such Registration and accordingly notify the Company in writing, but in no event later than five (5) days, of such election; and provided, further, that the Company shall not be obligated or required to file another Registration Statement until the Registration Statement that has been previously filed with respect to a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration becomes effective or is subsequently terminated.

2.1.3 Underwritten Offering. Subject to the provisions of subsection 2.1.4 and Section 2.4 hereof, if a majority-in-interest of the Demanding Holders so advise the Company as part of their Demand Registration that the offering of the Registrable Securities pursuant to such Demand Registration shall be in the form of an Underwritten Offering, then the right of such Demanding Holder or Requesting Holder (if any) to include its Registrable Securities in such Registration shall be conditioned upon such Holder’s participation in such Underwritten Offering and the inclusion of such Holder’s Registrable Securities in such Underwritten Offering to the extent provided herein. All such Holders proposing to distribute their Registrable Securities through an Underwritten Offering under this subsection 2.1.3 shall enter into an underwriting agreement in customary form with the Underwriter(s) selected for such Underwritten Offering by the majority-in-interest of the Demanding Holders initiating the Demand Registration.

**2.1.4 Reduction of Underwritten Offering.** If the managing Underwriter or Underwriters in an Underwritten Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration, in good faith, advises the Company, the Demanding Holders and the Requesting Holders (if any) in writing that the dollar amount or number of Registrable Securities that the Demanding Holders and the Requesting Holders (if any) desire to sell, taken together with all other Common Stock or other equity securities that the Company desires to sell and the Common Stock, if any, as to which a Registration has been requested pursuant to separate written contractual piggy-back registration rights held by any other stockholders who desire to sell, exceeds the maximum dollar amount or maximum number of equity securities that can be sold in the Underwritten Offering without adversely affecting the proposed offering price, the timing, the distribution method, or the probability of success of such offering (such maximum dollar amount or maximum number of such securities, as applicable, the “**Maximum Number of Securities**”), then the Company shall include in such Underwritten Offering, as follows: (i) first, the Registrable Securities of the Demanding Holders and the Requesting Holders (if any) (pro rata based on the respective number of Registrable Securities that each Demanding Holder and Requesting Holder (if any) has requested be included in such Underwritten Registration and the aggregate number of Registrable Securities that the Demanding Holders and Requesting Holders have requested be included in such Underwritten Registration (such proportion is referred to herein as “**Pro Rata**”)) that can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities; (ii) second, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Securities has not been reached under the foregoing clause (i), the Registrable Securities of Holders (Pro Rata, based on the respective number of Registrable Securities that each Holder has so requested) exercising their rights to register their Registrable Securities pursuant to subsection 2.2.1 hereof, without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities; and (iii) third, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Securities has not been reached under the foregoing clauses (i) and (ii), the Common Stock or other equity securities that the Company desires to sell, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities; and (iv) fourth, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Securities has not been reached under the foregoing clauses (i), (ii) and (iii), the Common Stock or other equity securities of other persons or entities that the Company is obligated to register in a Registration pursuant to separate written contractual arrangements with such persons and that can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities.

**2.1.5 Demand Registration Withdrawal.** A majority-in-interest of the Demanding Holders initiating a Demand Registration or a majority-in-interest of the Requesting Holders (if any), pursuant to a Registration under subsection 2.1.1 shall have the right to withdraw from a Registration pursuant to such Demand Registration for any or no reason whatsoever upon written notification to the Company and the Underwriter or Underwriters (if any) of their intention to withdraw from such Registration prior to the effectiveness of the Registration Statement filed with the Commission with respect to the Registration of their Registrable Securities pursuant to such Demand Registration. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Agreement, the Company shall be responsible for the Registration Expenses incurred in connection with a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration prior to its withdrawal under this subsection 2.1.5.

## **2.2 Piggyback Registration.**

**2.2.1 Piggyback Rights.** If, at any time on or after the date the Company consummates a Business Combination, the Company proposes to file a Registration Statement under the Securities Act with respect to an offering of equity securities, or securities or other obligations exercisable or exchangeable for, or convertible into equity securities, for its own account or for the account of stockholders of the Company (or by the Company and by the stockholders of the Company including, without limitation, pursuant to Section 2.1 hereof), other than a Registration Statement (i) filed in connection with any employee stock option or other benefit plan, (ii) for an exchange offer or offering of securities solely to the Company’s existing stockholders, (iii) for an offering of debt that is convertible into equity securities of the Company or (iv) for a dividend reinvestment plan, then the Company shall give written notice of such proposed filing to all of the Holders of Registrable Securities as soon as practicable but not less than ten (10) days before the anticipated filing date of such Registration Statement, which notice shall (A) describe the amount and type of securities to be included in such offering, the intended method(s) of distribution, and the name of the proposed managing Underwriter or Underwriters, if any, in such offering, and (B) offer to all of the Holders of Registrable Securities the opportunity to register the sale of such number of Registrable Securities as such Holders may request in writing within five (5) days after receipt of such written notice (such Registration a “**Piggyback Registration**”). The Company shall, in good faith, cause such Registrable Securities to be included in such Piggyback Registration and shall use its best efforts to cause the managing Underwriter or Underwriters of a proposed Underwritten Offering to permit the Registrable Securities requested by the Holders pursuant to this subsection 2.2.1 to be included in a Piggyback Registration on the same terms and conditions as any similar securities of the Company included in such Registration and to permit the sale or other disposition of such Registrable Securities in accordance with the intended method(s) of distribution thereof. All such Holders proposing to distribute their Registrable Securities through an Underwritten Offering under this subsection 2.2.1 shall enter into an underwriting agreement in customary form with the Underwriter(s) selected for such Underwritten Offering by the Company.

2.2.2 Reduction of Piggyback Registration . If the managing Underwriter or Underwriters in an Underwritten Registration that is to be a Piggyback Registration, in good faith, advises the Company and the Holders of Registrable Securities participating in the Piggyback Registration in writing that the dollar amount or number of the Common Stock that the Company desires to sell, taken together with (i) the Common Stock, if any, as to which Registration has been demanded pursuant to separate written contractual arrangements with persons or entities other than the Holders of Registrable Securities hereunder (ii) the Registrable Securities as to which registration has been requested pursuant to Section 2.2 hereof, and (iii) the Common Stock, if any, as to which Registration has been requested pursuant to separate written contractual piggy-back registration rights of other stockholders of the Company, exceeds the Maximum Number of Securities, then:

(a) If the Registration is undertaken for the Company's account, the Company shall include in any such Registration (A) first, the Common Stock or other equity securities that the Company desires to sell, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities; (B) second, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Securities has not been reached under the foregoing clause (A), the Registrable Securities of Holders exercising their rights to register their Registrable Securities pursuant to subsection 2.2.1 hereof, Pro Rata, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities; and (C) third, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Securities has not been reached under the foregoing clauses (A) and (B), the Common Stock, if any, as to which Registration has been requested pursuant to written contractual piggy-back registration rights of other stockholders of the Company, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities;

(b) If the Registration is pursuant to a request by persons or entities other than the Holders of Registrable Securities, then the Company shall include in any such Registration (A) first, the Common Stock or other equity securities, if any, of such requesting persons or entities, other than the Holders of Registrable Securities, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities; (B) second, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Securities has not been reached under the foregoing clause (A), the Registrable Securities of Holders exercising their rights to register their Registrable Securities pursuant to subsection 2.2.1, pro rata based on the number of Registrable Securities that each Holder has requested be included in such Registration and the aggregate number of Registrable Securities that the Holders have requested to be included in such Registration, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities; (C) third, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Securities has not been reached under the foregoing clauses (A) and (B), the Common Stock or other equity securities that the Company desires to sell, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities; and (D) fourth, to the extent that the Maximum Number of Securities has not been reached under the foregoing clauses (A), (B) and (C), the Common Stock or other equity securities for the account of other persons or entities that the Company is obligated to register pursuant to separate written contractual arrangements with such persons or entities, which can be sold without exceeding the Maximum Number of Securities.

2.2.3 Piggyback Registration Withdrawal . Any Holder of Registrable Securities shall have the right to withdraw from a Piggyback Registration for any or no reason whatsoever upon written notification to the Company and the Underwriter or Underwriters (if any) of his, her or its intention to withdraw from such Piggyback Registration prior to the effectiveness of the Registration Statement filed with the Commission with respect to such Piggyback Registration. The Company (whether on its own good faith determination or as the result of a request for withdrawal by persons pursuant to separate written contractual obligations) may withdraw a Registration Statement filed with the Commission in connection with a Piggyback Registration at any time prior to the effectiveness of such Registration Statement. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Agreement, the Company shall be responsible for the Registration Expenses incurred in connection with the Piggyback Registration prior to its withdrawal under this subsection 2.2.3 .

2.2.4 Unlimited Piggyback Registration Rights . For purposes of clarity, any Registration effected pursuant to Section 2.2 hereof shall not be counted as a Registration pursuant to a Demand Registration effected under Section 2.1 hereof.

2.3 Registrations on Form S-3 . The Holders of Registrable Securities may at any time, and from time to time, request in writing that the Company, pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act (or any successor rule promulgated thereafter by the Commission), register the resale of any or all of their Registrable Securities on Form S-3 or any similar short form registration statement that may be available at such time ( " **Form S-3** " ); provided, however, that the Company shall not be obligated to effect such request through an Underwritten Offering. Within five (5) days of the Company's receipt of a written request from a Holder or Holders of Registrable Securities for a Registration on Form S-3, the Company shall promptly give written notice of the proposed Registration on Form S-3 to all other Holders of Registrable Securities, and each Holder of Registrable Securities who thereafter wishes to include all or a portion of such Holder's Registrable Securities in such Registration on Form S-3 shall so notify the Company, in writing, within ten (10) days after the receipt by the Holder of the notice from the Company. As soon as practicable thereafter, but not more than twelve (12) days after the Company's initial receipt of such written request for a Registration on Form S-3, the Company shall register all or such portion of such Holder's Registrable Securities as are specified in such written request, together with all or such portion of Registrable Securities of any other Holder or Holders joining in such request as are specified in the written notification given by such Holder or Holders; provided, however, that the Company shall not be obligated to effect any such Registration pursuant to Section 2.3 hereof if (i) a Form S-3 is not available for such offering; or (ii) the Holders of Registrable Securities, together with the Holders of any other equity securities of the Company entitled to inclusion in such Registration, propose to sell the Registrable Securities and such other equity securities (if any) at any aggregate price to the public of less than \$10,000,000.

2.4 Restrictions on Registration Rights. If (A) during the period starting with the date sixty (60) days prior to the Company's good faith estimate of the date of the filing of, and ending on a date one hundred and twenty (120) days after the effective date of, a Company initiated Registration and provided that the Company has delivered written notice to the Holders prior to receipt of a Demand Registration pursuant to subsection 2.1.1 and it continues to actively employ, in good faith, all reasonable efforts to cause the applicable Registration Statement to become effective; (B) the Holders have requested an Underwritten Registration and the Company and the Holders are unable to obtain the commitment of underwriters to firmly underwrite the offer; or (C) in the good faith judgment of the Board such Registration would be seriously detrimental to the Company and the Board concludes as a result that it is essential to defer the filing of such Registration Statement at such time, then in each case the Company shall furnish to such Holders a certificate signed by the Chairman of the Board stating that in the good faith judgment of the Board it would be seriously detrimental to the Company for such Registration Statement to be filed in the near future and that it is therefore essential to defer the filing of such Registration Statement. In such event, the Company shall have the right to defer such filing for a period of not more than thirty (30) days; provided, however, that the Company shall not defer its obligation in this manner more than once in any 12-month period.

### **ARTICLE III COMPANY PROCEDURES**

3.1 General Procedures. If at any time on or after the date the Company consummates a Business Combination the Company is required to effect the Registration of Registrable Securities, the Company shall use its best efforts to effect such Registration to permit the sale of such Registrable Securities in accordance with the intended plan of distribution thereof, and pursuant thereto the Company shall, as expeditiously as possible:

3.1.1 prepare and file with the Commission as soon as practicable a Registration Statement with respect to such Registrable Securities and use its reasonable best efforts to cause such Registration Statement to become effective and remain effective until all Registrable Securities covered by such Registration Statement have been sold;

3.1.2 prepare and file with the Commission such amendments and post-effective amendments to the Registration Statement, and such supplements to the Prospectus, as may be requested by the Holders or any Underwriter of Registrable Securities or as may be required by the rules, regulations or instructions applicable to the registration form used by the Company or by the Securities Act or rules and regulations thereunder to keep the Registration Statement effective until all Registrable Securities covered by such Registration Statement are sold in accordance with the intended plan of distribution set forth in such Registration Statement or supplement to the Prospectus;

3.1.3 prior to filing a Registration Statement or prospectus, or any amendment or supplement thereto, furnish without charge to the Underwriters, if any, and the Holders of Registrable Securities included in such Registration, and such Holders' legal counsel, copies of such Registration Statement as proposed to be filed, each amendment and supplement to such Registration Statement (in each case including all exhibits thereto and documents incorporated by reference therein), the Prospectus included in such Registration Statement (including each preliminary Prospectus), and such other documents as the Underwriters and the Holders of Registrable Securities included in such Registration or the legal counsel for any such Holders may request in order to facilitate the disposition of the Registrable Securities owned by such Holders;

3.1.4 prior to any public offering of Registrable Securities, use its best efforts to (i) register or qualify the Registrable Securities covered by the Registration Statement under such securities or “blue sky” laws of such jurisdictions in the United States as the Holders of Registrable Securities included in such Registration Statement (in light of their intended plan of distribution) may request and (ii) take such action necessary to cause such Registrable Securities covered by the Registration Statement to be registered with or approved by such other governmental authorities as may be necessary by virtue of the business and operations of the Company and do any and all other acts and things that may be necessary or advisable to enable the Holders of Registrable Securities included in such Registration Statement to consummate the disposition of such Registrable Securities in such jurisdictions; provided, however, that the Company shall not be required to qualify generally to do business in any jurisdiction where it would not otherwise be required to qualify or take any action to which it would be subject to general service of process or taxation in any such jurisdiction where it is not then otherwise so subject;

3.1.5 cause all such Registrable Securities to be listed on each securities exchange or automated quotation system on which similar securities issued by the Company are then listed;

3.1.6 provide a transfer agent or warrant agent, as applicable, and registrar for all such Registrable Securities no later than the effective date of such Registration Statement;

3.1.7 advise each seller of such Registrable Securities, promptly after it shall receive notice or obtain knowledge thereof, of the issuance of any stop order by the Commission suspending the effectiveness of such Registration Statement or the initiation or threatening of any proceeding for such purpose and promptly use its reasonable best efforts to prevent the issuance of any stop order or to obtain its withdrawal if such stop order should be issued;

3.1.8 at least five (5) days prior to the filing of any Registration Statement or Prospectus or any amendment or supplement to such Registration Statement or Prospectus or any document that is to be incorporated by reference into such Registration Statement or Prospectus, furnish a copy thereof to each seller of such Registrable Securities and its counsel, including, without limitation, providing copies promptly upon receipt of any comment letters received with respect to any such Registration Statement or Prospectus;

3.1.9 notify the Holders at any time when a Prospectus relating to such Registration Statement is required to be delivered under the Securities Act, of the happening of any event as a result of which the Prospectus included in such Registration Statement, as then in effect, includes a Misstatement, and then to correct such Misstatement as set forth in Section 3.4 hereof;

3.1.10 permit a representative of the Holders (such representative to be selected by a majority of the participating Holders), the Underwriters, if any, and any attorney or accountant retained by such Holders or Underwriter to participate, at each such person’s own expense, in the preparation of the Registration Statement, and cause the Company’s officers, directors and employees to supply all information reasonably requested by any such representative, Underwriter, attorney or accountant in connection with the Registration; provided, however, that such representatives or Underwriters enter into a confidentiality agreement, in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Company, prior to the release or disclosure of any such information; and provided further, the Company may not include the name of any Holder or Underwriter or any information regarding any Holder or Underwriter in any Registration Statement or Prospectus, any amendment or supplement to such Registration Statement or Prospectus, any document that is to be incorporated by reference into such Registration Statement or Prospectus, or any response to any comment letter, without the prior written consent of such Holder or Underwriter and providing each such Holder or Underwriter a reasonable amount of time to review and comment on such applicable document, which comments the Company shall include unless contrary to applicable law;

3.1.11 obtain a “cold comfort” letter from the Company’s independent registered public accountants in the event of an Underwritten Registration which the participating Holders may rely on, in customary form and covering such matters of the type customarily covered by “cold comfort” letters as the managing Underwriter may reasonably request, and reasonably satisfactory to a majority-in-interest of the participating Holders;

3.1.12 on the date the Registrable Securities are delivered for sale pursuant to such Registration, obtain an opinion, dated such date, of counsel representing the Company for the purposes of such Registration, addressed to the Holders, the placement agent or sales agent, if any, and the Underwriters, if any, covering such legal matters with respect to the Registration in respect of which such opinion is being given as the Holders, placement agent, sales agent, or Underwriter may reasonably request and as are customarily included in such opinions and negative assurance letters, and reasonably satisfactory to a majority in interest of the participating Holders;

3.1.13 in the event of any Underwritten Offering, enter into and perform its obligations under an underwriting agreement, in usual and customary form, with the managing Underwriter of such offering;

3.1.14 make available to its security holders, as soon as reasonably practicable, an earnings statement covering the period of at least twelve (12) months beginning with the first day of the Company 's first full calendar quarter after the effective date of the Registration Statement which satisfies the provisions of Section 11(a) of the Securities Act and Rule 158 thereunder (or any successor rule promulgated thereafter by the Commission);

3.1.15 if the Registration involves the Registration of Registrable Securities involving gross proceeds in excess of \$25,000,000, use its reasonable efforts to make available senior executives of the Company to participate in customary "road show" presentations that may be reasonably requested by the Underwriter in any Underwritten Offering; and

3.1.16 otherwise, in good faith, cooperate reasonably with, and take such customary actions as may reasonably be requested by the Holders, in connection with such Registration.

3.2 Registration Expenses. The Registration Expenses of all Registrations shall be borne by the Company. It is acknowledged by the Holders that the Holders shall bear all incremental selling expenses relating to the sale of Registrable Securities, such as Underwriters' commissions and discounts, brokerage fees, Underwriter marketing costs and, other than as set forth in the definition of "Registration Expenses," all reasonable fees and expenses of any legal counsel representing the Holders.

3.3 Requirements for Participation in Underwritten Offerings. No person may participate in any Underwritten Offering for equity securities of the Company pursuant to a Registration initiated by the Company hereunder unless such person (i) agrees to sell such person's securities on the basis provided in any underwriting arrangements approved by the Company and (ii) completes and executes all customary questionnaires, powers of attorney, indemnities, lock-up agreements, underwriting agreements and other customary documents as may be reasonably required under the terms of such underwriting arrangements.

3.4 Suspension of Sales; Adverse Disclosure. Upon receipt of written notice from the Company that a Registration Statement or Prospectus contains a Misstatement, each of the Holders shall forthwith discontinue disposition of Registrable Securities until he, she or it has received copies of a supplemented or amended Prospectus correcting the Misstatement (it being understood that the Company hereby covenants to prepare and file such supplement or amendment as soon as practicable after the time of such notice), or until he, she or it is advised in writing by the Company that the use of the Prospectus may be resumed. If the filing, initial effectiveness or continued use of a Registration Statement in respect of any Registration at any time would require the Company to make an Adverse Disclosure or would require the inclusion in such Registration Statement of financial statements that are unavailable to the Company for reasons beyond the Company's control, the Company may, upon giving prompt written notice of such action to the Holders, delay the filing or initial effectiveness of, or suspend use of, such Registration Statement for the shortest period of time, but in no event more than thirty (30) days, determined in good faith by the Company to be necessary for such purpose. In the event the Company exercises its rights under the preceding sentence, the Holders agree to suspend, immediately upon their receipt of the notice referred to above, their use of the Prospectus relating to any Registration in connection with any sale or offer to sell Registrable Securities. The Company shall immediately notify the Holders of the expiration of any period during which it exercised its rights under this Section 3.4.

3.5 Reporting Obligations. As long as any Holder shall own Registrable Securities, the Company, at all times while it shall be a reporting company under the Exchange Act, covenants to file timely (or obtain extensions in respect thereof and file within the applicable grace period) all reports required to be filed by the Company after the date hereof pursuant to Sections 13(a), or 15(d) of the Exchange Act and to promptly furnish the Holders with true and complete copies of all such filings. The Company further covenants that it shall take such further action as any Holder may reasonably request, all to the extent required from time to time to enable such Holder to sell shares of Common Stock held by such Holder without registration under the Securities Act within the limitation of the exemptions provided by Rule 144 promulgated under the Securities Act (or any successor rule promulgated thereafter by the Commission), including providing any legal opinions. Upon the request of any Holder, the Company shall deliver to such Holder a written certification of a duly authorized officer as to whether it has complied with such requirements.

3.6 Limitations on Registration Rights. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, (i) the Sponsor may not exercise its rights under Section 2.1 and 2.2 hereunder after five (5) and seven (7) years, respectively, after the effective date of the registration statement relating to the Company's initial public offering and (ii) the Sponsor may not exercise its rights under Section 2.1 more than one time.

## ARTICLE IV INDEMNIFICATION AND CONTRIBUTION

### 4.1 Indemnification.

4.1.1 The Company agrees to indemnify, to the extent permitted by law, each Holder of Registrable Securities, its officers and directors and each person who controls such Holder (within the meaning of the Securities Act) against all losses, claims, damages, liabilities and expenses (including attorneys' fees) caused by any untrue or alleged untrue statement of material fact contained in any Registration Statement, Prospectus or preliminary Prospectus or any amendment thereof or supplement thereto or any omission or alleged omission of a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, except insofar as the same are caused by or contained in any information furnished in writing to the Company by such Holder expressly for use therein. The Company shall indemnify the Underwriters, their officers and directors and each person who controls such Underwriters (within the meaning of the Securities Act) to the same extent as provided in the foregoing with respect to the indemnification of the Holder.

4.1.2 In connection with any Registration Statement in which a Holder of Registrable Securities is participating, such Holder shall furnish to the Company in writing such information and affidavits as the Company reasonably requests for use in connection with any such Registration Statement or Prospectus and, to the extent permitted by law, shall indemnify the Company, its directors and officers and agents and each person who controls the Company (within the meaning of the Securities Act) against any losses, claims, damages, liabilities and expenses (including without limitation reasonable attorneys' fees) resulting from any untrue statement of material fact contained in the Registration Statement, Prospectus or preliminary Prospectus or any amendment thereof or supplement thereto or any omission of a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, but only to the extent that such untrue statement or omission is contained in any information or affidavit so furnished in writing by such Holder expressly for use therein; provided, however, that the obligation to indemnify shall be several, not joint and several, among such Holders of Registrable Securities, and the liability of each such Holder of Registrable Securities shall be in proportion to and limited to the net proceeds received by such Holder from the sale of Registrable Securities pursuant to such Registration Statement. The Holders of Registrable Securities shall indemnify the Underwriters, their officers, directors and each person who controls such Underwriters (within the meaning of the Securities Act) to the same extent as provided in the foregoing with respect to indemnification of the Company.

4.1.3 Any person entitled to indemnification herein shall (i) give prompt written notice to the indemnifying party of any claim with respect to which it seeks indemnification (provided that the failure to give prompt notice shall not impair any person's right to indemnification hereunder to the extent such failure has not materially prejudiced the indemnifying party) and (ii) unless in such indemnified party's reasonable judgment a conflict of interest between such indemnified and indemnifying parties may exist with respect to such claim, permit such indemnifying party to assume the defense of such claim with counsel reasonably satisfactory to the indemnified party. If such defense is assumed, the indemnifying party shall not be subject to any liability for any settlement made by the indemnified party without its consent (but such consent shall not be unreasonably withheld). An indemnifying party who is not entitled to, or elects not to, assume the defense of a claim shall not be obligated to pay the fees and expenses of more than one counsel (plus local counsel) for all parties indemnified by such indemnifying party with respect to such claim, unless in the reasonable judgment of any indemnified party a conflict of interest may exist between such indemnified party and any other of such indemnified parties with respect to such claim. No indemnifying party shall, without the consent of the indemnified party, consent to the entry of any judgment or enter into any settlement which cannot be settled in all respects by the payment of money (and such money is so paid by the indemnifying party pursuant to the terms of such settlement) or which settlement does not include as an unconditional term thereof the giving by the claimant or plaintiff to such indemnified party of a release from all liability in respect to such claim or litigation.

4.1.4 The indemnification provided for under this Agreement shall remain in full force and effect regardless of any investigation made by or on behalf of the indemnified party or any officer, director or controlling person of such indemnified party and shall survive the transfer of securities. The Company and each Holder of Registrable Securities participating in an offering also agrees to make such provisions as are reasonably requested by any indemnified party for contribution to such party in the event the Company 's or such Holder 's indemnification is unavailable for any reason.

4.1.5 If the indemnification provided under Section 4.1 hereof from the indemnifying party is unavailable or insufficient to hold harmless an indemnified party in respect of any losses, claims, damages, liabilities and expenses referred to herein, then the indemnifying party, in lieu of indemnifying the indemnified party, shall contribute to the amount paid or payable by the indemnified party as a result of such losses, claims, damages, liabilities and expenses in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect the relative fault of the indemnifying party and the indemnified party, as well as any other relevant equitable considerations. The relative fault of the indemnifying party and indemnified party shall be determined by reference to, among other things, whether any action in question, including any untrue or alleged untrue statement of a material fact or omission or alleged omission to state a material fact, was made by, or relates to information supplied by, such indemnifying party or indemnified party, and the indemnifying party 's and indemnified party 's relative intent, knowledge, access to information and opportunity to correct or prevent such action; provided, however, that the liability of any Holder under this subsection 4.1.5 shall be limited to the amount of the net proceeds received by such Holder in such offering giving rise to such liability. The amount paid or payable by a party as a result of the losses or other liabilities referred to above shall be deemed to include, subject to the limitations set forth in subsections 4.1.1, 4.1.2 and 4.1.3 above, any legal or other fees, charges or expenses reasonably incurred by such party in connection with any investigation or proceeding. The parties hereto agree that it would not be just and equitable if contribution pursuant to this subsection 4.1.5 were determined by pro rata allocation or by any other method of allocation, which does not take account of the equitable considerations referred to in this subsection 4.1.5. No person guilty of fraudulent misrepresentation (within the meaning of Section 11(f) of the Securities Act) shall be entitled to contribution pursuant to this subsection 4.1.5 from any person who was not guilty of such fraudulent misrepresentation.

## **ARTICLE V MISCELLANEOUS**

5.1 Notices. Any notice or communication under this Agreement must be in writing and given by (i) deposit in the United States mail, addressed to the party to be notified, postage prepaid and registered or certified with return receipt requested, (ii) delivery in person or by courier service providing evidence of delivery, or (iii) transmission by hand delivery, electronic mail, telecopy, telegram or facsimile. Each notice or communication that is mailed, delivered, or transmitted in the manner described above shall be deemed sufficiently given, served, sent, and received, in the case of mailed notices, on the third business day following the date on which it is mailed and, in the case of notices delivered by courier service, hand delivery, electronic mail, telecopy, telegram or facsimile, at such time as it is delivered to the addressee (with the delivery receipt or the affidavit of messenger) or at such time as delivery is refused by the addressee upon presentation. Any notice or communication under this Agreement must be addressed, if to the Company, to: 299 Park Avenue, 21st Floor, New York, New York 10171, and, if to any Holder, at such Holder 's address or contact information as set forth in the Company 's books and records. Any party may change its address for notice at any time and from time to time by written notice to the other parties hereto, and such change of address shall become effective thirty (30) days after delivery of such notice as provided in this Section 5.1.



5.2 Assignment; No Third Party Beneficiaries.

5.2.1 This Agreement and the rights, duties and obligations of the Company hereunder may not be assigned or delegated by the Company in whole or in part.

5.2.2 Prior to the expiration of the Founder Shares Lock-up Period or the Private Placement Lock-up Period, as the case may be, no Holder may assign or delegate such Holder ' s rights, duties or obligations under this Agreement, in whole or in part, except in connection with a transfer of Registrable Securities by such Holder to a Permitted Transferee but only if such Permitted Transferee agrees to become bound by the transfer restrictions set forth in this Agreement.

5.2.3 This Agreement and the provisions hereof shall be binding upon and shall inure to the benefit of each of the parties and its successors and the permitted assigns of the Holders, which shall include Permitted Transferees.

5.2.4 This Agreement shall not confer any rights or benefits on any persons that are not parties hereto, other than as expressly set forth in this Agreement and Section 5.2 hereof.

5.2.5 No assignment by any party hereto of such party ' s rights, duties and obligations hereunder shall be binding upon or obligate the Company unless and until the Company shall have received (i) written notice of such assignment as provided in Section 5.1 hereof and (ii) the written agreement of the assignee, in a form reasonably satisfactory to the Company, to be bound by the terms and provisions of this Agreement (which may be accomplished by an addendum or certificate of joinder to this Agreement). Any transfer or assignment made other than as provided in this Section 5.2 shall be null and void.

5.3 Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in multiple counterparts (including facsimile or PDF counterparts), each of which shall be deemed an original, and all of which together shall constitute the same instrument, but only one of which need be produced.

5.4 Governing Law; Venue. NOTWITHSTANDING THE PLACE WHERE THIS AGREEMENT MAY BE EXECUTED BY ANY OF THE PARTIES HERETO, THE PARTIES EXPRESSLY AGREE THAT (I) THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE GOVERNED BY AND CONSTRUED UNDER THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK AS APPLIED TO AGREEMENTS AMONG NEW YORK RESIDENTS ENTERED INTO AND TO BE PERFORMED ENTIRELY WITHIN NEW YORK, WITHOUT REGARD TO THE CONFLICT OF LAW PROVISIONS OF SUCH JURISDICTION AND (II) THE VENUE FOR ANY ACTION TAKEN WITH RESPECT TO THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE ANY STATE OR FEDERAL COURT IN NEW YORK COUNTY IN THE STATE OF NEW YORK.

5.5 Amendments and Modifications. Upon the written consent of the Company and the Holders of at least a majority in interest of the Registrable Securities at the time in question, compliance with any of the provisions, covenants and conditions set forth in this Agreement may be waived, or any of such provisions, covenants or conditions may be amended or modified; provided, however, that notwithstanding the foregoing, any amendment hereto or waiver hereof that adversely affects one Holder, solely in his, her or its capacity as a holder of the shares of capital stock of the Company, in a manner that is materially different from the other Holders (in such capacity) shall require the consent of the Holder so affected. No course of dealing between any Holder or the Company and any other party hereto or any failure or delay on the part of a Holder or the Company in exercising any rights or remedies under this Agreement shall operate as a waiver of any rights or remedies of any Holder or the Company. No single or partial exercise of any rights or remedies under this Agreement by a party shall operate as a waiver or preclude the exercise of any other rights or remedies hereunder or thereunder by such party.

5.6 Other Registration Rights. The Company represents and warrants that no person, other than a Holder of Registrable Securities, has any right to require the Company to register any securities of the Company for sale or to include such securities of the Company in any Registration filed by the Company for the sale of securities for its own account or for the account of any other person. Further, the Company represents and warrants that this Agreement supersedes any other registration rights agreement or agreement with similar terms and conditions and in the event of a conflict between any such agreement or agreements and this Agreement, the terms of this Agreement shall prevail.

5.7 Term. This Agreement shall terminate upon the earlier of (i) the tenth anniversary of the date of this Agreement or (ii) the date as of which (A) all of the Registrable Securities have been sold pursuant to a Registration Statement (but in no event prior to the applicable period referred to in Section 4(a)(3) of the Securities Act and Rule 174 thereunder (or any successor rule promulgated thereafter by the Commission)) or (B) the Holders of all Registrable Securities are permitted to sell the Registrable Securities without registration pursuant to Rule 144 (or any similar provision) under the Securities Act with no volume or other restrictions or limitations. The provisions of Section 3.5 and Article IV shall survive any termination.

[ Signature Page Follows ]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the undersigned have caused this Agreement to be executed as of the date first written above.

**COMPANY:**

**B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II**, a Delaware corporation

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: Daniel Shribman  
Title: Chief Financial Officer

**HOLDERS:**

**B. Riley Principal Sponsor Co. II, LLC**, a Delaware limited liability company

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: Patrick J. Bartels, Jr.

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: James L. Kempner

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: Timothy M. Presutti

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: Robert Suss

[ Signature Page to Registration Rights Agreement ]

---

## PRIVATE PLACEMENT UNITS PURCHASE AGREEMENT

This PRIVATE PLACEMENT UNITS PURCHASE AGREEMENT (this “**Agreement**”) is made as of the [ ]th day of April 2020, by and between B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II, a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), and B. Riley Principal Sponsor Co. II, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company (the “**Subscriber**”), each with a principal place of business at 299 Park Avenue, 21st Floor New York, New York 10171.

WHEREAS, the Company desires to sell to Subscriber on a private placement basis (the “**Offering**”) an aggregate of 575,000 units (the “**Initial Units**”) of the Company and up to an additional 60,000 units (the “**Additional Units**” and, together with the Initial Units the “**Units**”) of the Company in the event that the underwriters’ over-allotment option (the “**Over-Allotment Option**”) in connection with the IPO (as defined below) is exercised in full or in part, each Unit comprised of one share of Class A common stock of the Company, par value \$0.0001 per share (“**Common Stock**”), and one-half of one warrant (“**Warrant**”), for a purchase price of \$5,750,000 (or \$6,350,000 if the Over-Allotment Option is exercised in full), or \$10.00 per Unit. The shares of Common Stock underlying the Warrants are hereinafter referred to as the “**Warrant Shares**”. The shares of Common Stock underlying the Units (excluding the Warrant Shares) are hereinafter referred to as the “**Placement Shares**.” The Warrants underlying the Units are hereinafter referred to as the “**Placement Warrants**.” The Units, Placement Shares, Placement Warrants and Warrant Shares, collectively, are hereinafter referred to as the “**Securities**.” Each whole Placement Warrant is exercisable to purchase one share of Common Stock at an exercise price of \$11.50 per share during the period commencing on the later of (i) twelve (12) months from the date of the closing of the Company’s initial public offering of units (the “**IPO**”) and (ii) 30 days following the consummation of the Company’s initial business combination (the “**Business Combination**”), as such term is defined in the registration statement in connection with the IPO, as amended at the time it becomes effective (the “**Registration Statement**”), and expiring on the fifth anniversary of the consummation of the Business Combination; and

WHEREAS, Subscriber wishes to purchase 575,000 Units (or 635,000 Units if the Over-Allotment Option is exercised in full) for a purchase price of \$5,750,000 (or \$6,350,000 if the Over-Allotment Option is exercised in full) and the Company wishes to accept such subscription from Subscriber.

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the premises and the mutual covenants hereinafter set forth and other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, the Company and Subscriber hereby agree as follows:

1. *Agreement to Subscribe*

1.1. Purchase and Issuance of the Units. Upon the terms and subject to the conditions of this Agreement, Subscriber hereby agrees to purchase from the Company, and the Company hereby agrees to sell to Subscriber, on the Closing Date (as defined below) the Initial Units in consideration of the payment of the Initial Purchase Price (as defined below). On the Closing Date, the Company shall deliver (via book entry) to Subscriber the Securities purchased. Subscriber hereby agrees to purchase up to an additional 60,000 Additional Units at \$10.00 per Additional Unit for a purchase price of up to \$600,000. The purchase and issuance of the Additional Units shall occur only in the event that the Over-Allotment Option is exercised in full or in part. The total number of Additional Units to be purchased hereunder shall be in the same proportion as the proportion of the Over-Allotment Option that is exercised. Each purchase of Additional Units shall occur simultaneously with the consummation of any portion of the Over-Allotment Option.

1.2. Purchase Price. As payment in full for the Initial Units being purchased under this Agreement, Subscriber shall pay an aggregate of \$5,750,000 (the “**Initial Purchase Price**”) by wire transfer of immediately available funds or by such other method as may be reasonably acceptable to the Company, to the trust account (the “**Trust Account**”) at a financial institution to be chosen by the Company, maintained by Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, acting as trustee (“**Continental**”), no later than one (1) business day prior to the date of effectiveness of the Registration Statement. As payment in full for the Additional Units being purchased under this Agreement, Subscriber shall pay \$10.00 per Additional Unit being purchased by wire transfer of immediately available funds or by such other method as may be reasonably acceptable to the Company, to the Trust Account at a financial institution to be chosen by the Company, maintained by Continental, one (1) business day prior to the Closing Date of the Over-Allotment Option.

1.3. Closing. The closing of the purchase and sale of the Initial Units shall take place simultaneously with the closing of the IPO and the closing of the purchase and sale of Additional Units shall take place simultaneously with the closing of the Over-Allotment Option (each, a “**Closing Date**”). The closing of the purchase and sale of the Units shall take place at the offices of Winston & Strawn LLP, 200 Park Avenue, New York, New York, 10166, or such other place as may be agreed upon by the parties hereto.

---

1.4 Termination. This Agreement and each of the obligations of the undersigned shall be null and void and without effect if the IPO does not close prior to December 31, 2020.

## 2. Representations and Warranties of Subscriber

Subscriber represents and warrants to the Company that:

2.1. No Government Recommendation or Approval. Subscriber understands that no federal or state agency has passed upon or made any recommendation or endorsement of the Company or the Offering of the Securities.

2.2. Accredited Investor. Subscriber represents that it is an “accredited investor” as such term is defined in Rule 501(a) of Regulation D under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “**Securities Act**”), and acknowledges that the sale contemplated hereby is being made in reliance, among other things, on a private placement exemption to “accredited investors” under the Securities Act and similar exemptions under state law.

2.3. Intent. Subscriber is purchasing the Securities solely for investment purposes, for Subscriber’s own account (and/or for the account or benefit of its members or affiliates, as permitted, pursuant to the terms of an agreement (the “**Insider Letter**”) to be entered into with respect to the Securities between, among others, Subscriber and the Company, as described in the Registration Statement), and not with a view to the distribution thereof and Subscriber has no present arrangement to sell the Securities to or through any person or entity except as may be permitted under the Insider Letter. Subscriber shall not engage in hedging transactions with regard to the Securities unless in compliance with the Securities Act.

2.4. Restrictions on Transfer. Subscriber acknowledges and understands the Units are being offered in a transaction not involving a public offering in the United States within the meaning of the Securities Act. The Securities have not been registered under the Securities Act and, if in the future Subscriber decides to offer, resell, pledge or otherwise transfer the Securities, such Securities may be offered, resold, pledged or otherwise transferred only (A) pursuant to an effective registration statement filed under the Securities Act, (B) pursuant to an exemption from registration under Rule 144 promulgated under the Securities Act, if available, or (C) pursuant to any other available exemption from the registration requirements of the Securities Act, and in each case in accordance with any applicable securities laws of any state or any other jurisdiction. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Subscriber acknowledges and understands the Securities are subject to transfer restrictions as described in Section 8 hereof. Subscriber agrees that if any transfer of its Securities or any interest therein is proposed to be made, as a condition precedent to any such transfer, Subscriber may be required to deliver to the Company an opinion of counsel satisfactory to the Company with respect to such transfer. Absent registration or another available exemption from registration, Subscriber agrees it will not resell the Securities (unless otherwise permitted pursuant to the Insider Letter, as described in the Registration Statement). Subscriber further acknowledges that because the Company is a shell company, Rule 144 may not be available to Subscriber for the resale of the Securities until the one-year anniversary following consummation of the Business Combination of the Company, despite technical compliance with the requirements of Rule 144 and the release or waiver of any contractual transfer restrictions.

### 2.5. Sophisticated Investor.

(i) Subscriber is sophisticated in financial matters and is able to evaluate the risks and benefits of the investment in the Securities.

(ii) Subscriber is aware that an investment in the Securities is highly speculative and subject to substantial risks because, among other things, the Securities are subject to transfer restrictions and have not been registered under the Securities Act and therefore cannot be sold unless subsequently registered under the Securities Act or an exemption from such registration is available. Subscriber is able to bear the economic risk of its investment in the Securities for an indefinite period of time.

2.6. Independent Investigation. Subscriber, in making the decision to purchase the Units, has relied upon an independent investigation of the Company and has not relied upon any information or representations made by any third parties or upon any oral or written representations or assurances from the Company, its officers, directors or employees or any other representatives or agents of the Company, other than as set forth in this Agreement. Subscriber is familiar with the business, operations and financial condition of the Company and has had an opportunity to ask questions of, and receive answers from the Company’s officers and directors concerning the Company and the terms and conditions of the offering of the Units and has had full access to such other information concerning the Company as Subscriber has requested. Subscriber confirms that all documents that it has requested have been made available and that Subscriber has been supplied with all of the additional information concerning this investment which Subscriber has requested.

2.7 Organization and Authority. Subscriber is duly organized, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of the State of Delaware and it possesses all requisite power and authority necessary to carry out the transactions contemplated by this Agreement.

2.8. Authority. This Agreement has been validly authorized, executed and delivered by Subscriber and is a valid and binding agreement enforceable in accordance with its terms, subject to the general principles of equity and to bankruptcy or other laws affecting the enforcement of creditors' rights generally.

2.9. No Conflicts. The execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement and the consummation by Subscriber of the transactions contemplated hereby do not violate, conflict with or constitute a default under (i) Subscriber's charter documents, (ii) any agreement or instrument to which Subscriber is a party or (iii) any law, statute, rule or regulation to which Subscriber is subject, or any agreement, order, judgment or decree to which Subscriber is subject.

2.10. No Legal Advice from Company. Subscriber acknowledges it has had the opportunity to review this Agreement and the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and the other agreements entered into between the parties hereto with Subscriber's own legal counsel and investment and tax advisors. Except for any statements or representations of the Company made in this Agreement and the other agreements entered into between the parties hereto, Subscriber is relying solely on such counsel and advisors and not on any statements or representations of the Company or any of its representatives or agents for legal, tax or investment advice with respect to this investment, the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or the securities laws of any jurisdiction.

2.11. Reliance on Representations and Warranties. Subscriber understands the Units are being offered and sold to Subscriber in reliance on exemptions from the registration requirements under the Securities Act, and analogous provisions in the laws and regulations of various states, and that the Company is relying upon the truth and accuracy of the representations, warranties, agreements, acknowledgments and understandings of Subscriber set forth in this Agreement in order to determine the applicability of such provisions.

2.12. No General Solicitation. Subscriber is not subscribing for the Units as a result of or subsequent to any general solicitation or general advertising, including but not limited to any advertisement, article, notice or other communication published in any newspaper, magazine, or similar media or broadcast over television or radio, or presented at any seminar or meeting or in a registration statement with respect to the IPO filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC").

2.13. Legend. Subscriber acknowledges and agrees the certificates evidencing each of the Securities shall bear a restrictive legend (the "Legend"), in form and substance substantially as set forth in Section 4 hereof.

### 3. Representations, Warranties and Covenants of the Company

The Company represents and warrants to, and agrees with, Subscriber that:

3.1. Valid Issuance of Capital Stock. The total number of shares of all classes of capital stock which the Company has authority to issue is 126,000,000 shares of common stock, including 100,000,000 shares of Class A Common Stock and 25,000,000 shares of Class B common stock, \$0.0001 par value per share ("Class B Common Stock"), and 1,000,000 shares of preferred stock, \$0.0001 par value per share ("Preferred Stock"). As of the date hereof, the Company has issued and outstanding 5,750,000 shares of Class B Common Stock (of which up to 750,000 shares are subject to forfeiture as described in the Registration Statement), no shares of Class A Common Stock and no shares of Preferred Stock. All of the issued shares of capital stock of the Company have been duly authorized, validly issued, and are fully paid and non-assessable.

3.2 Title to Securities. Upon issuance in accordance with, and payment pursuant to, the terms hereof and that certain warrant agreement to be entered into between the Company and Continental, as warrant agent (the "Warrant Agreement"), each of the Units, Placement Shares, Placement Warrants and Warrant Shares will be duly and validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable. On the date of issuance of the Units, the Warrant Shares shall have been reserved for issuance. Upon issuance in accordance with, and payment pursuant to, the terms hereof and the Warrant Agreement, Subscriber will have or receive good title to the Units, Placement Shares and Placement Warrants, free and clear of all liens, claims and encumbrances of any kind, other than (i) transfer restrictions hereunder and pursuant to the Insider Letter and (ii) transfer restrictions under federal and state securities laws.

3.3. Organization and Qualification. The Company is a corporation duly incorporated, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of the State of Delaware and has the requisite corporate power to own its properties and assets and to carry on its business as now being conducted.

3.4. Authorization; Enforcement. (i) The Company has the requisite corporate power and authority to enter into and perform its obligations under this Agreement and to issue the Securities in accordance with the terms hereof, (ii) the execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement by the Company and the consummation by it of the transactions contemplated hereby have been duly authorized by all necessary corporate action, and no further consent or authorization of the Company or its Board of Directors or stockholders is required, (iii) this Agreement constitutes valid and binding obligations of the Company enforceable against the Company in accordance with its terms, except as such enforceability may be limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, fraudulent conveyance, moratorium, reorganization, or similar laws relating to, or affecting generally the enforcement of, creditors' rights and remedies or by equitable principles of general application and except as enforcement of rights to indemnity and contribution may be limited by federal and state securities laws or principles of public policy, (iv) the Units, when issued and delivered in the manner set forth herein, will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms, except as such enforceability may be limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, fraudulent conveyance, moratorium, reorganization, or similar laws relating to, or affecting generally the enforcement of, creditors' rights and remedies or by equitable principles of general application and except as enforcement of rights to indemnity and contribution may be limited by federal and state securities laws or principles of public policy and (v) the Placement Warrants, when issued and delivered in the manner set forth herein, will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms, except as such enforceability may be limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, fraudulent conveyance, moratorium, reorganization, or similar laws relating to, or affecting generally the enforcement of, creditors' rights and remedies or by equitable principles of general application and except as enforcement of rights to indemnity and contribution may be limited by federal and state securities laws or principles of public policy.

3.5. No Conflicts. The execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement and the consummation by the Company of the transactions contemplated hereby do not (i) result in a violation of the Company's certificate of incorporation or by-laws, (ii) conflict with, or constitute a default under any agreement or instrument to which the Company is a party or (iii) any law statute, rule or regulation to which the Company is subject or any agreement, order, judgment or decree to which the Company is subject. Other than any SEC or state securities filings which may be required to be made by the Company subsequent to the closing of the IPO, and any registration statement which may be filed pursuant thereto, the Company is not required under federal, state or local law, rule or regulation to obtain any consent, authorization or order of, or make any filing or registration with, any court or governmental agency or self-regulatory entity in order for it to perform any of its obligations under this Agreement or issue the Units, Placement Shares, Placement Warrants or the Warrant Shares in accordance with the terms hereof.

#### 4. Legends

4.1. Legend. The Company will issue the Units, Placement Shares and Placement Warrants, and when issued, the Warrant Shares, purchased by Subscriber in the name of Subscriber. The Securities will bear the following Legend and appropriate "stop transfer" instructions:

"THE SECURITIES REPRESENTED HEREBY HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED (THE "SECURITIES ACT"), OR ANY STATE SECURITIES LAWS AND NEITHER THE SECURITIES NOR ANY INTEREST THEREIN MAY BE OFFERED, SOLD, TRANSFERRED, PLEDGED OR OTHERWISE DISPOSED OF EXCEPT PURSUANT TO AN EFFECTIVE REGISTRATION STATEMENT UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OR SUCH LAWS OR AN EXEMPTION FROM REGISTRATION UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT AND SUCH LAWS WHICH, IN THE OPINION OF COUNSEL FOR THIS CORPORATION, IS AVAILABLE."

"THE SECURITIES REPRESENTED BY THIS CERTIFICATE ARE SUBJECT TO LOCKUP PURSUANT TO AN INSIDER LETTER BETWEEN, AMONG OTHERS, B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II AND B. RILEY PRINCIPAL SPONSOR CO. II, LLC AND MAY ONLY BE OFFERED, SOLD, TRANSFERRED, PLEDGED OR OTHERWISE DISPOSED DURING THE TERM OF THE LOCKUP PURSUANT TO THE TERMS SET FORTH IN THE INSIDER LETTER."

4.2. Subscriber's Compliance. Nothing in this Section 4 shall affect in any way Subscriber's obligations and agreements to comply with all applicable securities laws upon resale of the Securities.

4.3. **Company's Refusal to Register Transfer of the Securities.** The Company shall refuse to register any transfer of the Securities, if in the sole judgment of the Company such purported transfer would not be made (i) pursuant to an effective registration statement filed under the Securities Act, or pursuant to an available exemption from the registration requirements of the Securities Act and (ii) in compliance herewith and with the Insider Letter.

4.4 **Registration Rights.** Subscriber will be entitled to certain registration rights which will be governed by a registration rights agreement ("**Registration Rights Agreement**") to be entered into between, among others, Subscriber and the Company, on or prior to the effective date of the Registration Statement.

#### 5. *Waiver of Liquidation Distributions.*

In connection with the Securities purchased pursuant to this Agreement, Subscriber hereby waives any and all right, title, interest or claim of any kind in or to any distributions of the amounts in the Trust Account with respect to the Securities, whether (i) in connection with the exercise of redemption rights if the Company consummates the Business Combination, (ii) in connection with any tender offer conducted by the Company prior to a Business Combination, (iii) upon the Company's redemption of shares of Common Stock sold in the Company's IPO upon the Company's failure to timely complete the Business Combination or (iv) in connection with a stockholder vote to approve an amendment to the Company's amended and restated certificate of incorporation (A) to modify the substance or timing of the Company's obligation to redeem 100% of the Company's public shares if the Company does not timely complete the Business Combination or (B) with respect to any other provision relating to stockholders' rights or pre-Business Combination activity. In the event Subscriber purchases shares of Common Stock in the IPO or in the aftermarket, any additional shares so purchased shall be eligible to receive the redemption value of such shares of Common Stock upon the same terms offered to all other purchasers of Common Stock in the IPO in the event the Company fails to consummate the Business Combination.

#### 6. *Terms of Placement Warrants .*

6.1 **Terms.** Each Placement Warrant shall have the terms set forth in the Warrant Agreement.

6.2 **Failure to Consummate Business Combination.** The Placement Warrants shall be terminated upon the dissolution of the Company or in the event that the Company does not consummate the Business Combination within 24 months from the consummation of the IPO, unless otherwise extended by the Company.

6.3 **Termination of Rights as Holder.** If the Placement Warrants are terminated in accordance with Section 6.1, then after such time Subscriber (or its successor in interest) shall no longer have any rights as a holder of such Placement Warrants and the Company shall take such action as is appropriate to cancel such Placement Warrants. Subscriber hereby irrevocably grants the Company a limited power of attorney for the purpose of effectuating the foregoing and agrees to take any and all measures reasonably requested by the Company necessary to effect the foregoing.

#### 7. *Rescission Right Waiver and Indemnification .*

7.1. Subscriber understands and acknowledges an exemption from the registration requirements of the Securities Act requires there be no general solicitation of purchasers of the Units. In this regard, if the IPO were deemed to be a general solicitation with respect to the Units, the offer and sale of such Units may not be exempt from registration and, if not, Subscriber may have a right to rescind its purchase of the Units. In order to facilitate the completion of the Offering and in order to protect the Company, its stockholders and the amounts in the Trust Account from claims that may adversely affect the Company or the interests of its stockholders, Subscriber hereby agrees to waive, to the maximum extent permitted by applicable law, any claims, right to sue or rights in law or arbitration, as the case may be, to seek rescission of its purchase of the Units. Subscriber acknowledges and agrees this waiver is being made in order to induce the Company to sell the Units to Subscriber. Subscriber agrees the foregoing waiver of rescission rights shall apply to any and all known or unknown actions, causes of action, suits, claims or proceedings (collectively, "**Claims**") and related losses, costs, penalties, fees, liabilities and damages, whether compensatory, consequential or exemplary, and expenses in connection therewith, including reasonable attorneys' and expert witness fees and disbursements and all other expenses reasonably incurred in investigating, preparing or defending against any Claims, whether pending or threatened, in connection with any present or future actual or asserted right to rescind the purchase of the Units hereunder or relating to the purchase of the Units and the transactions contemplated hereby.

7.2. Subscriber agrees not to seek recourse against the Trust Account for any reason whatsoever in connection with its purchase of the Units or any Claim that may arise now or in the future.

7.3. Subscriber acknowledges and agrees that the stockholders of the Company are and shall be third-party beneficiaries of this Section 7.

7.4. Subscriber agrees that to the extent any waiver of rights under this Section 7 is ineffective as a matter of law, Subscriber has offered such waiver for the benefit of the Company as an equitable right that shall survive any statutory disqualification or bar that applies to a legal right. Subscriber acknowledges the receipt and sufficiency of consideration received from the Company hereunder in this regard.

#### *8. Terms of the Units and Placement Warrants*

8.1 The Units and their component parts are substantially identical to the units to be offered in the IPO except that: (i) the Units and component parts will be subject to transfer restrictions, except in limited circumstances, until 30 days following the consummation of the Business Combination, (ii) the Placement Warrants will be non-redeemable so long as they are held by Subscriber (or any of its permitted transferees), and may be exercisable on a “cashless” basis if held by Subscriber or its permitted transferees, as further described in the Warrant Agreement, and (iii) the Units and component parts are being purchased pursuant to an exemption from the registration requirements of the Securities Act and will become freely tradable only after the expiration of the lockup described above in clause (i) and they are registered pursuant to the Registration Rights Agreement to be signed on or before the date of the Prospectus or an exemption from registration is available, and the restrictions described above in clause (i) has expired. Additionally, the Subscriber acknowledges and agrees that the Units and their component parts will be deemed underwriting compensation by the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority (“FINRA”) and, pursuant to FINRA Rule 5110(g)(1), may not be sold during the offering, or transferred, assigned, pledged or hypothecated or be the subject of any hedging, short sale, derivative, put or call transaction that would result in the economic disposition of the securities for a period of 180 days immediately following the date of effectiveness or commencement of sales in the IPO, except as provided in FINRA Rule 5110(g)(2).

8.2 Subscriber agrees to vote the Placement Shares in accordance with the terms of the Insider Letter and as otherwise described in the Registration Statement.

#### *9. Governing Law; Jurisdiction ; Waiver of Jury Trial*

This Agreement shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York for agreements made and to be wholly performed within such state, without regards to the conflicts of laws principles thereof. Any suit brought by either party shall be brought in the state or federal courts sitting in New York County in the State of New York. The parties hereto hereby waive any right to a jury trial in connection with any litigation pursuant to this Agreement and the transactions contemplated hereby.

#### *10. Assignment; Entire Agreement; Amendment*

10.1. Assignment. Neither this Agreement nor any rights hereunder may be assigned, in whole or in part, by any party to any other person without the prior written consent of the other party hereto except that Subscriber may assign this Agreement, or any of its rights hereunder, to a person agreeing to be bound by the terms hereof, including the waiver contained in Section 7 hereof.

10.2. Entire Agreement. This Agreement sets forth the entire agreement and understanding between the parties as to the subject matter thereof and merges and supersedes all prior discussions, agreements and understandings of any and every nature among them with respect to such subject matter.

10.3. Amendment. Except as expressly provided in this Agreement, neither this Agreement nor any term hereof may be amended, waived, discharged or terminated other than by a written instrument signed by the party against whom enforcement of any such amendment, waiver, discharge or termination is sought.

10.4. Binding upon Successors. This Agreement shall be binding upon and inure to the benefit of the parties hereto and to their respective successors and permitted assigns.



## 11. Notices

11.1 Notices. Unless otherwise provided herein, any notice or other communication to a party hereunder shall be sufficiently given if in writing and personally delivered or sent by facsimile or other electronic transmission with copy sent in another manner herein provided or sent by courier (which for all purposes of this Agreement shall include Federal Express or other recognized overnight courier) or mailed to said party by certified mail, return receipt requested, at its address provided for herein or such other address as either may designate for itself in such notice to the other. Communications shall be deemed to have been received when delivered personally, on the scheduled arrival date when sent by next day or 2nd-day courier service, or if sent by facsimile upon receipt of confirmation of transmittal or, if sent by mail, then three days after deposit in the mail. If given by electronic transmission, such notice shall be deemed to be delivered when directed to an electronic mail address at which such party has consented to receive notice.

## 12. Counterparts

This Agreement may be executed in one or more counterparts, all of which when taken together shall be considered one and the same agreement and shall become effective when counterparts have been signed by each party and delivered to the other party, it being understood that both parties need not sign the same counterpart. In the event that any signature is delivered by facsimile transmission or by e-mail delivery of a “.pdf” format data file, such signature shall create a valid and binding obligation of the party executing (or on whose behalf such signature is executed) with the same force and effect as if such facsimile or “.pdf” signature page were an original thereof.

## 13. Survival; Severability

13.1. Survival. The representations, warranties, covenants and agreements of the parties hereto shall survive the Closing.

13.2. Severability. In the event that any provision of this Agreement becomes or is declared by a court of competent jurisdiction to be illegal, unenforceable or void, this Agreement shall continue in full force and effect without said provision; provided that no such severability shall be effective if it materially changes the economic benefit of this Agreement to any party.

## 14. Headings.

The titles and subtitles used in this Agreement are used for convenience only and are not to be considered in construing or interpreting this Agreement.

[ Signature Page Follows ]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have executed this Agreement to be effective as of the date first set forth above.

**B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: Daniel Shribman  
Title: Chief Executive and Chief Financial Officer

**B. RILEY PRINCIPAL SPONSOR CO. II, LLC**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

[ *Signature Page to Private Placement Units Subscription Agreement* ]

## FORM OF INDEMNITY AGREEMENT

**THIS INDEMNITY AGREEMENT** (this “ *Agreement* ”) is made as of [ ], 2020, by and between B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II, a Delaware corporation (the “ *Company* ”), and \_\_\_\_\_ (“ *Indemnitee* ”).

**RECITALS**

**WHEREAS** , highly competent persons have become more reluctant to serve publicly-held corporations as directors, officers or in other capacities unless they are provided with adequate protection through insurance or adequate indemnification against inordinate risks of claims and actions against them arising out of their service to and activities on behalf of such corporations;

**WHEREAS** , the board of directors of the Company (the “ *Board* ”) has determined that, in order to attract and retain qualified individuals, the Company will attempt to maintain on an ongoing basis, at its sole expense, liability insurance to protect persons serving the Company and its subsidiaries from certain liabilities;

**WHEREAS** , directors, officers and other persons in service to corporations or business enterprises are being increasingly subjected to expensive and time-consuming litigation relating to, among other things, matters that traditionally would have been brought only against the Company or business enterprise itself.;

**WHEREAS** , the Second Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation (the “ *Charter* ”) and the By Laws (the “ *By Laws* ”) of the Company require indemnification of the officers and directors of the Company. Indemnitee may also be entitled to indemnification pursuant to applicable provisions of the Delaware General Corporation Law (“ *DGCL* ”). The Charter, By Laws and the DGCL expressly provide that the indemnification provisions set forth therein are not exclusive, and thereby contemplate that contracts may be entered into between the Company and members of the Board, officers and other persons with respect to indemnification, hold harmless, exoneration, advancement and reimbursement rights;

**WHEREAS** , the uncertainties relating to such insurance and to indemnification have increased the difficulty of attracting and retaining such persons;

**WHEREAS** , the Board has determined that the increased difficulty in attracting and retaining such persons is detrimental to the best interests of the Company’s stockholders and that the Company should act to assure such persons that there will be increased certainty of such protection in the future;

**WHEREAS** , it is reasonable, prudent and necessary for the Company contractually to obligate itself to indemnify, hold harmless, exonerate and to advance expenses on behalf of, such persons to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law so that they will serve or continue to serve the Company free from undue concern that they will not be so protected against liabilities;

**WHEREAS** , this Agreement is a supplement to and in furtherance of the Charter and By Laws and any resolutions adopted pursuant thereto, and shall not be deemed a substitute therefor, nor to diminish or abrogate any rights of Indemnitee thereunder;

**WHEREAS** , Indemnitee may not be willing to serve as an officer or director, advisor or in another capacity without adequate protection, and the Company desires Indemnitee to serve in such capacity. Indemnitee is willing to serve, continue to serve and to take on additional service for or on behalf of the Company on the condition that Indemnitee be so indemnified; and

**NOW, THEREFORE** , in consideration of the premises and the covenants contained herein, the Company and Indemnitee do hereby covenant and agree as follows:

## TERMS AND CONDITIONS

1. **SERVICES TO THE COMPANY.** Indemnitee will serve or continue to serve as an officer, director, advisor, key employee or in any other capacity of the Company, as applicable, for so long as Indemnitee is duly elected or appointed or retained or until Indemnitee tenders Indemnitee ' s resignation or until Indemnitee is removed. The foregoing notwithstanding, this Agreement shall continue in full force and effect after Indemnitee has ceased to serve as a director, officer, advisor, key employee or in any other capacity of the Company, in each case as provided in Section 17. This Agreement, however, shall not impose any obligation on Indemnitee or the Company to continue Indemnitee ' s service to the Company beyond any period otherwise required by law or by other agreements or commitments of the parties, if any.

2. **DEFINITIONS .** As used in this Agreement:

(a) “ **agent** ” shall mean any person who is or was a director, officer or employee of the Company or a subsidiary of the Company or other person authorized by the Company to act for the Company, to include such person serving in such capacity as a director, officer, employee, fiduciary or other official of another corporation, partnership, limited liability company, joint venture, trust or other enterprise at the request of, for the convenience of, or to represent the interests of the Company or a subsidiary of the Company.

(b) “ **Beneficial Owner** ” and “ **Beneficial Ownership** ” shall have the meanings set forth in Rule 13d-3 promulgated under the Exchange Act (as defined below) as in effect on the date hereof.

(c) “ **Change in Control** ” shall mean the occurrence of the earliest to occur after the date of this Agreement of any of the following events:

(i) Acquisition of Stock by Third Party . Other than B. Riley Principal Sponsor Co. II, LLC (the “ **Sponsor** ” ) or any of its affiliates, any Person (as defined below) is or becomes the Beneficial Owner, directly or indirectly, of securities of the Company representing fifteen percent (15%) or more of the combined voting power of the Company ' s then outstanding securities entitled to vote generally in the election of directors, unless (1) the change in the relative Beneficial Ownership of the Company ' s securities by any Person results solely from a reduction in the aggregate number of outstanding shares of securities entitled to vote generally in the election of directors, or (2) such acquisition was approved in advance by the Continuing Directors (as defined below) and such acquisition would not constitute a Change in Control under part (iii) of this definition;

(ii) Change in Board of Directors . Individuals who, as of the date hereof, constitute the Board, and any new director whose election by the Board or nomination for election by the Company ' s stockholders was approved by a vote of at least two thirds of the directors then still in office who were directors on the date hereof or whose election for nomination for election was previously so approved (collectively, the “ **Continuing Directors** ” ), cease for any reason to constitute at least a majority of the members of the Board;

(iii) Corporate Transactions . The effective date of a merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or similar business combination, involving the Company and one or more businesses (a “ **Business Combination** ” ), in each case, unless, following such Business Combination: (1) all or substantially all of the individuals and entities who were the Beneficial Owners of securities entitled to vote generally in the election of directors immediately prior to such Business Combination beneficially own, directly or indirectly, more than 51% of the combined voting power of the then outstanding securities of the Company entitled to vote generally in the election of directors resulting from such Business Combination (including, without limitation, a corporation which as a result of such transaction owns the Company or all or substantially all of the Company ' s assets either directly or through one or more Subsidiaries (as defined below)) in substantially the same proportions as their ownership immediately prior to such Business Combination, of the securities entitled to vote generally in the election of directors; (2) other than an affiliate of the Sponsor, no Person (excluding any corporation resulting from such Business Combination) is the Beneficial Owner, directly or indirectly, of fifteen percent (15%) or more of the combined voting power of the then outstanding securities entitled to vote generally in the election of directors of the surviving corporation except to the extent that such ownership existed prior to the Business Combination; and (3) at least a majority of the Board of Directors of the corporation resulting from such Business Combination were Continuing Directors at the time of the execution of the initial agreement, or of the action of the Board of Directors, providing for such Business Combination;

(iv) Liquidation. The approval by the stockholders of the Company of a complete liquidation of the Company or an agreement or series of agreements for the sale or disposition by the Company of all or substantially all of the Company's assets, other than factoring the Company's current receivables or escrows due (or, if such stockholder approval is not required, the decision by the Board to proceed with such a liquidation, sale, or disposition in one transaction or a series of related transactions); or

(v) Other Events. There occurs any other event of a nature that would be required to be reported in response to Item 6(e) of Schedule 14A of Regulation 14A (or any successor rule) (or a response to any similar item on any similar schedule or form) promulgated under the Exchange Act (as defined below), whether or not the Company is then subject to such reporting requirement.

(d) "**Corporate Status**" describes the status of a person who is or was a director, officer, trustee, general partner, manager, managing member, fiduciary, employee or agent of the Company or of any other Enterprise (as defined below) which such person is or was serving at the request of the Company.

(e) "**Delaware Court**" shall mean the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware.

(f) "**Disinterested Director**" shall mean a director of the Company who is not and was not a party to the Proceeding (as defined below) in respect of which indemnification is sought by Indemnitee.

(g) "**Enterprise**" shall mean the Company and any other corporation, constituent corporation (including any constituent of a constituent) absorbed in a consolidation or merger to which the Company (or any of its wholly owned subsidiaries) is a party, limited liability company, partnership, joint venture, trust, employee benefit plan or other enterprise of which Indemnitee is or was serving at the request of the Company as a director, officer, trustee, manager, general partner, managing member, fiduciary, employee or agent.

(h) "**Exchange Act**" shall mean the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

(i) "**Expenses**" shall include all direct and indirect costs, fees and expenses of any type or nature whatsoever, including, without limitation, all reasonable attorneys' fees and costs, retainers, court costs, transcript costs, fees of experts, witness fees, travel expenses, fees of private investigators and professional advisors, duplicating costs, printing and binding costs, telephone charges, postage, delivery service fees, fax transmission charges, secretarial services and all other disbursements, obligations or expenses in connection with prosecuting, defending, preparing to prosecute or defend, investigating, being or preparing to be a witness in, settlement or appeal of, or otherwise participating in, a Proceeding (as defined below), including reasonable compensation for time spent by Indemnitee for which he or she is not otherwise compensated by the Company or any third party. "Expenses" also shall include expenses incurred in connection with any appeal resulting from any Proceeding (as defined below), including without limitation the principal, premium, security for, and other costs relating to any cost bond, supersedeas bond, or other appeal bond or its equivalent. "Expenses," however, shall not include amounts paid in settlement by Indemnitee or the amount of judgments or fines against Indemnitee.

(j) "**fines**" shall include any excise tax assessed on Indemnitee with respect to any employee benefit plan.

(k) "**Independent Counsel**" shall mean a law firm or a member of a law firm with significant experience in matters of corporation law and that neither presently is, nor in the past five years has been, retained to represent: (i) the Company or Indemnitee in any matter material to either such party (other than with respect to matters concerning Indemnitee under this Agreement, or of other indemnitees under similar indemnification agreements); or (ii) any other party to the Proceeding (as defined below) giving rise to a claim for indemnification hereunder. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the term "Independent Counsel" shall not include any person who, under the applicable standards of professional conduct then prevailing, would have a conflict of interest in representing either the Company or Indemnitee in an action to determine Indemnitee's rights under this Agreement.

(l) “ **Person** ” shall have the meaning as set forth in Sections 13(d) and 14(d) of the Exchange Act as in effect on the date hereof; provided, however, that “ **Person** ” shall exclude: (i) the Company; (ii) any Subsidiaries (as defined below) of the Company; (iii) any employment benefit plan of the Company or of a Subsidiary (as defined below) of the Company or of any corporation owned, directly or indirectly, by the stockholders of the Company in substantially the same proportions as their ownership of stock of the Company; and (iv) any trustee or other fiduciary holding securities under an employee benefit plan of the Company or of a Subsidiary (as defined below) of the Company or of a corporation owned directly or indirectly by the stockholders of the Company in substantially the same proportions as their ownership of stock of the Company.

(m) “ **Proceeding** ” shall include any threatened, pending or completed action, suit, arbitration, mediation, alternate dispute resolution mechanism, investigation, inquiry, administrative hearing or any other actual, threatened or completed proceeding, whether brought in the right of the Company or otherwise and whether of a civil (including intentional or unintentional tort claims), criminal, administrative or investigative or related nature, in which Indemnitee was, is, will or might be involved as a party or otherwise by reason of the fact that Indemnitee is or was a director or officer of the Company, by reason of any action (or failure to act) taken by Indemnitee or of any action (or failure to act) on Indemnitee ’ s part while acting as a director or officer of the Company, or by reason of the fact that Indemnitee is or was serving at the request of the Company as a director, officer, trustee, general partner, managing member, fiduciary, employee or agent of any other Enterprise, in each case whether or not serving in such capacity at the time any liability or expense is incurred for which indemnification, reimbursement, or advancement of expenses can be provided under this Agreement.

(n) “ **servicing at the request of the Company** ” shall include any service as a director, officer, employee, agent or fiduciary of the Company which imposes duties on, or involves services by, such director, officer, employee, agent or fiduciary with respect to an employee benefit plan, its participants or beneficiaries; and if Indemnitee acted in good faith and in a manner Indemnitee reasonably believed to be in the best interests of the participants and beneficiaries of an employee benefit plan, Indemnitee shall be deemed to have acted in a manner “ **not opposed to the best interests of the Company** ” as referred to in this Agreement.

(o) “ **Subsidiary** , ” with respect to any Person, shall mean any corporation, limited liability company, partnership, joint venture, trust or other entity of which a majority of the voting power of the voting equity securities or equity interest is owned, directly or indirectly, by that Person.

**3. INDEMNITY IN THIRD-PARTY PROCEEDINGS .** To the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, the Company shall indemnify, hold harmless and exonerate Indemnitee in accordance with the provisions of this Section 3 if Indemnitee was, is, or is threatened to be made, a party to or a participant (as a witness, deponent or otherwise) in any Proceeding, other than a Proceeding by or in the right of the Company to procure a judgment in its favor by reason of Indemnitee ’ s Corporate Status. Pursuant to this Section 3, Indemnitee shall be indemnified, held harmless and exonerated against all Expenses, judgments, liabilities, fines, penalties and amounts paid in settlement (including all interest, assessments and other charges paid or payable in connection with or in respect of such Expenses, judgments, liabilities, fines, penalties and amounts paid in settlement) actually, and reasonably incurred by Indemnitee or on Indemnitee ’ s behalf in connection with such Proceeding or any claim, issue or matter therein, if Indemnitee acted in good faith and in a manner he or she reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the Company and, in the case of a criminal Proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe that Indemnitee ’ s conduct was unlawful.

**4. INDEMNITY IN PROCEEDINGS BY OR IN THE RIGHT OF THE COMPANY .** To the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, the Company shall indemnify, hold harmless and exonerate Indemnitee in accordance with the provisions of this Section 4 if Indemnitee was, is, or is threatened to be made, a party to or a participant (as a witness, deponent or otherwise) in any Proceeding by or in the right of the Company to procure a judgment in its favor by reason of Indemnitee ’ s Corporate Status. Pursuant to this Section 4, Indemnitee shall be indemnified, held harmless and exonerated against all Expenses actually and reasonably incurred by Indemnitee or on Indemnitee ’ s behalf in connection with such Proceeding or any claim, issue or matter therein, if Indemnitee acted in good faith and in a manner Indemnitee reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the Company. No indemnification, hold harmless or exoneration for Expenses shall be made under this Section 4 in respect of any claim, issue or matter as to which Indemnitee shall have been finally adjudged by a court to be liable to the Company, unless and only to the extent that any court in which the Proceeding was brought or the Delaware Court shall determine upon application that, despite the adjudication of liability but in view of all the circumstances of the case, Indemnitee is fairly and reasonably entitled to indemnification, to be held harmless or to exoneration.

**5. INDEMNIFICATION FOR EXPENSES OF A PARTY WHO IS WHOLLY OR PARTLY SUCCESSFUL .** Notwithstanding any other provisions of this Agreement except for Section 27, to the extent that Indemnitee was or is, by reason of Indemnitee 's Corporate Status, a party to (or a participant in) and is successful, on the merits or otherwise, in any Proceeding or in defense of any claim, issue or matter therein, in whole or in part, the Company shall, to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, indemnify, hold harmless and exonerate Indemnitee against all Expenses actually and reasonably incurred by Indemnitee in connection therewith. If Indemnitee is not wholly successful in such Proceeding but is successful, on the merits or otherwise, as to one or more but less than all claims, issues or matters in such Proceeding, the Company shall, to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, indemnify, hold harmless and exonerate Indemnitee against all Expenses actually and reasonably incurred by Indemnitee or on Indemnitee 's behalf in connection with each successfully resolved claim, issue or matter. If Indemnitee is not wholly successful in such Proceeding, the Company also shall, to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, indemnify, hold harmless and exonerate Indemnitee against all Expenses reasonably incurred in connection with a claim, issue or matter related to any claim, issue, or matter on which Indemnitee was successful. For purposes of this Section and without limitation, the termination of any claim, issue or matter in such a Proceeding by dismissal, with or without prejudice, shall be deemed to be a successful result as to such claim, issue or matter.

**6. INDEMNIFICATION FOR EXPENSES OF A WITNESS .** Notwithstanding any other provision of this Agreement except for Section 27, to the extent that Indemnitee is, by reason of Indemnitee 's Corporate Status, a witness or deponent in any Proceeding to which Indemnitee was or is not a party or threatened to be made a party, Indemnitee shall, to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, be indemnified, held harmless and exonerated against all Expenses actually and reasonably incurred by Indemnitee or on Indemnitee 's behalf in connection therewith.

**7. ADDITIONAL INDEMNIFICATION, HOLD HARMLESS AND EXONERATION RIGHTS.** Notwithstanding any limitation in Sections 3, 4, or 5 and except for Section 27, the Company shall, to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, indemnify, hold harmless and exonerate Indemnitee if Indemnitee is a party to or threatened to be made a party to any Proceeding (including a Proceeding by or in the right of the Company to procure a judgment in its favor) against all Expenses, judgments, liabilities, fines, penalties and amounts paid in settlement (including all interest, assessments and other charges paid or payable in connection with or in respect of such Expenses, judgments, liabilities, fines, penalties and amounts paid in settlement) actually and reasonably incurred by Indemnitee in connection with the Proceeding. No indemnification, hold harmless or exoneration rights shall be available under this Section 7 on account of Indemnitee 's conduct which constitutes a breach of Indemnitee 's duty of loyalty to the Company or its stockholders or is an act or omission not in good faith or which involves intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of the law.

**8. CONTRIBUTION IN THE EVENT OF JOINT LIABILITY .**

(a) To the fullest extent permissible under applicable law, if the indemnification, hold harmless and/or exoneration rights provided for in this Agreement are unavailable to Indemnitee in whole or in part for any reason whatsoever, the Company, in lieu of indemnifying, holding harmless or exonerating Indemnitee, shall pay, in the first instance, the entire amount incurred by Indemnitee, whether for judgments, liabilities, fines, penalties, amounts paid or to be paid in settlement and/or for Expenses, in connection with any Proceeding without requiring Indemnitee to contribute to such payment, and the Company hereby waives and relinquishes any right of contribution it may have at any time against Indemnitee.

(b) The Company shall not enter into any settlement of any Proceeding in which the Company is jointly liable with Indemnitee (or would be if joined in such Proceeding) unless such settlement provides for a full and final release of all claims asserted against Indemnitee.

(c) The Company hereby agrees to fully indemnify, hold harmless and exonerate Indemnitee from any claims for contribution which may be brought by officers, directors or employees of the Company other than Indemnitee who may be jointly liable with Indemnitee.

**9. EXCLUSIONS .** Notwithstanding any provision in this Agreement, the Company shall not be obligated under this Agreement to make any indemnification, advance expenses, hold harmless or exoneration payment in connection with any claim made against Indemnitee:

(a) for which payment has actually been received by or on behalf of Indemnitee under any insurance policy or other indemnity or advancement provision, except with respect to any excess beyond the amount actually received under any insurance policy, contract, agreement, other indemnity or advancement provision or otherwise;

(b) for an accounting of profits made from the purchase and sale (or sale and purchase) by Indemnitee of securities of the Company within the meaning of Section 16(b) of the Exchange Act (or any successor rule) or similar provisions of state statutory law or common law; or

(c) except as otherwise provided in Sections 14(f)-(g) hereof, prior to a Change in Control, in connection with any Proceeding (or any part of any Proceeding) initiated by Indemnitee, including any Proceeding (or any part of any Proceeding) initiated by Indemnitee against the Company or its directors, officers, employees or other indemnitees, unless (i) the Board authorized the Proceeding (or any part of any Proceeding) prior to its initiation or (ii) the Company provides the indemnification, hold harmless or exoneration payment, in its sole discretion, pursuant to the powers vested in the Company under applicable law. Indemnitee shall seek payments or advances from the Company only to the extent that such payments or advances are unavailable from any insurance policy of the Company covering Indemnitee.

**10. ADVANCES OF EXPENSES; DEFENSE OF CLAIM .**

(a) Notwithstanding any provision of this Agreement to the contrary, except for Section 27, and to the fullest extent not prohibited by applicable law, the Company shall pay the Expenses incurred by Indemnitee (or reasonably expected by Indemnitee to be incurred by Indemnitee within three months) in connection with any Proceeding within ten (10) days after the receipt by the Company of a statement or statements requesting such advances from time to time, prior to the final disposition of any Proceeding. Advances shall, to the fullest extent permitted by law, be unsecured and interest free. Advances shall, to the fullest extent permitted by law, be made without regard to Indemnitee ' s ability to repay the Expenses and without regard to Indemnitee ' s ultimate entitlement to be indemnified, held harmless or exonerated under the other provisions of this Agreement. Advances shall include any and all reasonable Expenses incurred pursuing a Proceeding to enforce this right of advancement, including Expenses incurred preparing and forwarding statements to the Company to support the advances claimed. To the fullest extent required by applicable law, such payments of Expenses in advance of the final disposition of the Proceeding shall be made only upon the Company ' s receipt of an undertaking, by or on behalf of Indemnitee, to repay the advanced amounts to the extent that it is ultimately determined that Indemnitee is not entitled to be indemnified, held harmless or exonerated by the Company under the provisions of this Agreement, the Charter, the By Laws, applicable law or otherwise. This Section 10(a) shall not apply to any claim made by Indemnitee for which an indemnification, hold harmless or exoneration payment is excluded pursuant to Section 9.

(b) The Company will be entitled to participate in the Proceeding at its own expense.

(c) The Company shall not settle any action, claim or Proceeding (in whole or in part) which would impose any Expense, judgment, liability, fine, penalty or limitation on Indemnitee without Indemnitee ' s prior written consent.



## 11. PROCEDURE FOR NOTIFICATION AND APPLICATION FOR INDEMNIFICATION .

(a) Indemnitee agrees to promptly notify the Company in writing upon being served with any summons, citation, subpoena, complaint, indictment, information or other document relating to any Proceeding, claim, issue or matter therein which may be subject to indemnification, hold harmless or exoneration rights, or advancement of Expenses covered hereunder. The failure of Indemnitee to so notify the Company shall not relieve the Company of any obligation which it may have to Indemnitee under this Agreement, or otherwise.

(b) Indemnitee may deliver to the Company a written application to indemnify, hold harmless or exonerate Indemnitee in accordance with this Agreement. Such application(s) may be delivered from time to time and at such time(s) as Indemnitee deems appropriate in his or her sole discretion. Following such a written application for indemnification by Indemnitee, Indemnitee 's entitlement to indemnification shall be determined according to Section 12(a) of this Agreement.

## 12. PROCEDURE UPON APPLICATION FOR INDEMNIFICATION .

(a) A determination, if required by applicable law, with respect to Indemnitee 's entitlement to indemnification shall be made in the specific case by one of the following methods: (i) if no Change in Control has occurred (x) by a majority vote of the Disinterested Directors, even though less than a quorum of the Board, (y) by a committee of Disinterested Directors, even though less than a quorum of the Board, or (z) if there are no Disinterested Directors, or if such Disinterested Directors so direct, by Independent Counsel in a written opinion to the Board, a copy of which shall be delivered to Indemnitee; or (ii) if a Change in Control has occurred, by Independent Counsel in a written opinion to the Board, a copy of which shall be delivered to Indemnitee. The Company promptly will advise Indemnitee in writing with respect to any determination that Indemnitee is or is not entitled to indemnification, including a description of any reason or basis for which indemnification has been denied. If it is so determined that Indemnitee is entitled to indemnification, payment to Indemnitee shall be made within ten (10) days after such determination. Indemnitee shall reasonably cooperate with the person, persons or entity making such determination with respect to Indemnitee 's entitlement to indemnification, including providing to such person, persons or entity upon reasonable advance request any documentation or information which is not privileged or otherwise protected from disclosure and which is reasonably available to Indemnitee and reasonably necessary to such determination. Any costs or Expenses incurred by Indemnitee in so cooperating with the person, persons or entity making such determination shall be borne by the Company (irrespective of the determination as to Indemnitee 's entitlement to indemnification) and the Company hereby agrees to indemnify and to hold Indemnitee harmless therefrom.

(b) In the event the determination of entitlement to indemnification is to be made by Independent Counsel pursuant to Section 12(a) hereof, the Independent Counsel shall be selected as provided in this Section 12(b). The Independent Counsel shall be selected by Indemnitee (unless Indemnitee shall request that such selection be made by the Board), and Indemnitee shall give written notice to the Company advising it of the identity of the Independent Counsel so selected and certifying that the Independent Counsel so selected meets the requirements of " Independent Counsel " as defined in Section 2 of this Agreement. If the Independent Counsel is selected by the Board, the Company shall give written notice to Indemnitee advising Indemnitee of the identity of the Independent Counsel so selected and certifying that the Independent Counsel so selected meets the requirements of " Independent Counsel " as defined in Section 2 of this Agreement. In either event, Indemnitee or the Company, as the case may be, may, within ten (10) days after such written notice of selection shall have been received, deliver to the Company or to Indemnitee, as the case may be, a written objection to such selection; provided, however, that such objection may be asserted only on the ground that the Independent Counsel so selected does not meet the requirements of " Independent Counsel " as defined in Section 2 of this Agreement, and the objection shall set forth with particularity the factual basis of such assertion. Absent a proper and timely objection, the person so selected shall act as Independent Counsel. If such written objection is so made and substantiated, the Independent Counsel so selected may not serve as Independent Counsel unless and until such objection is withdrawn or a court of competent jurisdiction has determined that such objection is without merit. If, within twenty (20) days after submission by Indemnitee of a written request for indemnification pursuant to Section 11(b) hereof, no Independent Counsel shall have been selected and not objected to, either the Company or Indemnitee may petition the Delaware Court for resolution of any objection which shall have been made by the Company or Indemnitee to the other 's selection of Independent Counsel and/or for the appointment as Independent Counsel of a person selected by the Delaware Court, and the person with respect to whom all objections are so resolved or the person so appointed shall act as Independent Counsel under Section 12(a) hereof. Upon the due commencement of any judicial proceeding or arbitration pursuant to Section 14(a) of this Agreement, Independent Counsel shall be discharged and relieved of any further responsibility in such capacity (subject to the applicable standards of professional conduct then prevailing).

(c) The Company agrees to pay the reasonable fees and expenses of Independent Counsel and to fully indemnify and hold harmless such Independent Counsel against any and all Expenses, claims, liabilities and damages arising out of or relating to this Agreement or its engagement pursuant hereto.

### 13. PRESUMPTIONS AND EFFECT OF CERTAIN PROCEEDINGS .

(a) In making a determination with respect to entitlement to indemnification hereunder, the person, persons or entity making such determination shall presume that Indemnitee is entitled to indemnification under this Agreement if Indemnitee has submitted a request for indemnification in accordance with Section 11(b) of this Agreement, and the Company shall have the burden of proof to overcome that presumption in connection with the making by any person, persons or entity of any determination contrary to that presumption. Neither the failure of the Company (including by the Disinterested Directors or Independent Counsel) to have made a determination prior to the commencement of any action pursuant to this Agreement that indemnification is proper in the circumstances because Indemnitee has met the applicable standard of conduct, nor an actual determination by the Company (including by the Disinterested Directors or Independent Counsel) that Indemnitee has not met such applicable standard of conduct, shall be a defense to the action or create a presumption that Indemnitee has not met the applicable standard of conduct.

(b) If the person, persons or entity empowered or selected under Section 12 of this Agreement to determine whether Indemnitee is entitled to indemnification shall not have made a determination within thirty (30) days after receipt by the Company of the request therefor, the requisite determination of entitlement to indemnification shall, to the fullest extent permitted by law, be deemed to have been made and Indemnitee shall be entitled to such indemnification, absent (i) a misstatement by Indemnitee of a material fact, or an omission of a material fact necessary to make Indemnitee 's statement not materially misleading, in connection with the request for indemnification, or (ii) a final judicial determination that any or all such indemnification is expressly prohibited under applicable law; provided, however, that such 30-day period may be extended for a reasonable time, not to exceed an additional fifteen (15) days, if the person, persons or entity making the determination with respect to entitlement to indemnification in good faith requires such additional time for the obtaining or evaluating of documentation and/or information relating thereto.

(c) The termination of any Proceeding or of any claim, issue or matter therein, by judgment, order, settlement or conviction, or upon a plea of nolo contendere or its equivalent, shall not (except as otherwise expressly provided in this Agreement) of itself adversely affect the right of Indemnitee to indemnification or create a presumption that Indemnitee did not act in good faith and in a manner which Indemnitee reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the Company or, with respect to any criminal Proceeding, that Indemnitee had reasonable cause to believe that Indemnitee 's conduct was unlawful.

(d) For purposes of any determination of good faith, Indemnitee shall be deemed to have acted in good faith if Indemnitee 's action is based on the records or books of account of the Enterprise, including financial statements, or on information supplied to Indemnitee by the directors, managers, or officers of the Enterprise in the course of their duties, or on the advice of legal counsel for the Enterprise, its Board, any committee of the Board or any director, trustee, general partner, manager or managing member of the Enterprise, or on information or records given or reports made to the Enterprise, its Board, any committee of the Board or any director, trustee, general partner, manager or managing member of the Enterprise, by an independent certified public accountant or by an appraiser or other expert selected by the Enterprise, its Board, any committee of the Board or any director, trustee, general partner, manager or managing member. The provisions of this Section 13(d) shall not be deemed to be exclusive or to limit in any way the other circumstances in which Indemnitee may be deemed or found to have met the applicable standard of conduct set forth in this Agreement.

(e) The knowledge and/or actions, or failure to act, of any other director, officer, trustee, partner, manager, managing member, fiduciary, agent or employee of the Enterprise shall not be imputed to Indemnitee for purposes of determining the right to indemnification under this Agreement.

#### 14. REMEDIES OF INDEMNITEE .

(a) In the event that (i) a determination is made pursuant to Section 12 of this Agreement that Indemnitee is not entitled to indemnification under this Agreement, (ii) advancement of Expenses, to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, is not timely made pursuant to Section 10 of this Agreement, (iii) no determination of entitlement to indemnification shall have been made pursuant to Section 12(a) of this Agreement within thirty (30) days after receipt by the Company of the request for indemnification, (iv) payment of indemnification is not made pursuant to Section 5, 6, 7 or the last sentence of Section 12(a) of this Agreement within ten (10) days after receipt by the Company of a written request therefor, (v) a contribution payment is not made in a timely manner pursuant to Section 8 of this Agreement, (vi) payment of indemnification pursuant to Section 3 or 4 of this Agreement is not made within ten (10) days after a determination has been made that Indemnitee is entitled to indemnification, or (vii) payment to Indemnitee pursuant to any hold harmless or exoneration rights under this Agreement or otherwise is not made in accordance with this Agreement, Indemnitee shall be entitled to an adjudication by the Delaware Court to such indemnification, hold harmless, exoneration, contribution or advancement rights. Alternatively, Indemnitee, at Indemnitee's option, may seek an award in arbitration to be conducted by a single arbitrator pursuant to the Commercial Arbitration Rules and Mediation Procedures of the American Arbitration Association. Except as set forth herein, the provisions of Delaware law (without regard to its conflict of laws rules) shall apply to any such arbitration. The Company shall not oppose Indemnitee's right to seek any such adjudication or award in arbitration.

(b) In the event that a determination shall have been made pursuant to Section 12(a) of this Agreement that Indemnitee is not entitled to indemnification, any judicial proceeding or arbitration commenced pursuant to this Section 14 shall be conducted in all respects as a de novo trial, or arbitration, on the merits and Indemnitee shall not be prejudiced by reason of that adverse determination.

(c) In any judicial proceeding or arbitration commenced pursuant to this Section 14, Indemnitee shall be presumed to be entitled to be indemnified, held harmless, and exonerated and to receive advancement of Expenses under this Agreement and the Company shall have the burden of proving Indemnitee is not entitled to be indemnified, held harmless, and exonerated and to receive advancement of Expenses, as the case may be, and the Company may not refer to or introduce into evidence any determination pursuant to Section 12(a) of this Agreement adverse to Indemnitee for any purpose. If Indemnitee commences a judicial proceeding or arbitration pursuant to this Section 14, Indemnitee shall not be required to reimburse the Company for any advances pursuant to Section 10 until a final determination is made with respect to Indemnitee's entitlement to indemnification (as to which all rights of appeal have been exhausted or lapsed).

(d) If a determination shall have been made pursuant to Section 12(a) of this Agreement that Indemnitee is entitled to indemnification, the Company shall be bound by such determination in any judicial proceeding or arbitration commenced pursuant to this Section 14, absent (i) a misstatement by Indemnitee of a material fact, or an omission of a material fact necessary to make Indemnitee's statement not materially misleading, in connection with the request for indemnification, or (ii) a prohibition of such indemnification under applicable law.

(e) The Company shall be precluded from asserting in any judicial proceeding or arbitration commenced pursuant to this Section 14 that the procedures and presumptions of this Agreement are not valid, binding and enforceable and shall stipulate in any such court or before any such arbitrator that the Company is bound by all the provisions of this Agreement.

(f) The Company shall indemnify and hold harmless Indemnitee to the fullest extent permitted by law against all Expenses and, if requested by Indemnitee, shall (within ten (10) days after the Company's receipt of such written request) pay to Indemnitee, to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, such Expenses which are incurred by Indemnitee in connection with any judicial proceeding or arbitration brought by Indemnitee: (i) to enforce his or her rights under, or to recover damages for breach of, this Agreement or any other indemnification, hold harmless, exoneration, advancement or contribution agreement or provision of the Charter, or the By Laws now or hereafter in effect; or (ii) for recovery or advances under any insurance policy maintained by any person for the benefit of Indemnitee, regardless of the outcome and whether Indemnitee ultimately is determined to be entitled to such indemnification, hold harmless or exoneration right, advancement, contribution or insurance recovery, as the case may be (unless such judicial proceeding or arbitration was not brought by Indemnitee in good faith).

(g) Interest shall be paid by the Company to Indemnitee at the legal rate under Delaware law for amounts which the Company indemnifies, holds harmless or exonerates, or advances, or is obliged to indemnify, hold harmless or exonerate or advance for the period commencing with the date on which Indemnitee requests indemnification, to be held harmless, exonerated, contribution, reimbursement or advancement of any Expenses and ending with the date on which such payment is made to Indemnitee by the Company.

15. **SECURITY** . Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, except for Section 27, to the extent requested by Indemnitee and approved by the Board, the Company may at any time and from time to time provide security to Indemnitee for the Company ' s obligations hereunder through an irrevocable bank line of credit, funded trust or other collateral. Any such security, once provided to Indemnitee, may not be revoked or released without the prior written consent of Indemnitee.

**16. NON-EXCLUSIVITY; SURVIVAL OF RIGHTS; INSURANCE; SUBROGATION .**

(a) The rights of Indemnitee as provided by this Agreement shall not be deemed exclusive of any other rights to which Indemnitee may at any time be entitled under applicable law, the Charter, the By Laws, any agreement, a vote of stockholders or a resolution of directors, or otherwise. No amendment, alteration or repeal of this Agreement or of any provision hereof shall limit or restrict any right of Indemnitee under this Agreement in respect of any Proceeding (regardless of when such Proceeding is first threatened, commenced or completed) or claim, issue or matter therein arising out of, or related to, any action taken or omitted by such Indemnitee in Indemnitee ' s Corporate Status prior to such amendment, alteration or repeal. To the extent that a change in applicable law, whether by statute or judicial decision, permits greater indemnification, hold harmless or exoneration rights or advancement of Expenses than would be afforded currently under the Charter, the By Laws or this Agreement, it is the intent of the parties hereto that Indemnitee shall enjoy by this Agreement the greater benefits so afforded by such change. No right or remedy herein conferred is intended to be exclusive of any other right or remedy, and every other right and remedy shall be cumulative and in addition to every other right and remedy given hereunder or now or hereafter existing at law or in equity or otherwise. The assertion or employment of any right or remedy hereunder, or otherwise, shall not prevent the concurrent assertion or employment of any other right or remedy.

(b) The DGCL, the Charter and the By Laws permit the Company to purchase and maintain insurance or furnish similar protection or make other arrangements including, but not limited to, providing a trust fund, letter of credit, or surety bond ( “ **Indemnification Arrangements** ” ) on behalf of Indemnitee against any liability asserted against Indemnitee or incurred by or on behalf of Indemnitee or in such capacity as a director, officer, employee or agent of the Company, or arising out of Indemnitee ' s status as such, whether or not the Company would have the power to indemnify Indemnitee against such liability under the provisions of this Agreement or under the DGCL, as it may then be in effect. The purchase, establishment, and maintenance of any such Indemnification Arrangement shall not in any way limit or affect the rights and obligations of the Company or of Indemnitee under this Agreement except as expressly provided herein, and the execution and delivery of this Agreement by the Company and Indemnitee shall not in any way limit or affect the rights and obligations of the Company or the other party or parties thereto under any such Indemnification Arrangement.

(c) To the extent that the Company maintains an insurance policy or policies providing liability insurance for directors, officers, trustees, partners, managers, managing members, fiduciaries, employees, or agents of the Company or of any other Enterprise which such person serves at the request of the Company, Indemnitee shall be covered by such policy or policies in accordance with its or their terms to the maximum extent of the coverage available for any such director, officer, trustee, partner, managers, managing member, fiduciary, employee or agent under such policy or policies. If, at the time the Company receives notice from any source of a Proceeding as to which Indemnitee is a party or a participant (as a witness, deponent or otherwise), the Company has director and officer liability insurance in effect, the Company shall give prompt notice of such Proceeding to the insurers in accordance with the procedures set forth in the respective policies. The Company shall thereafter take all necessary or desirable action to cause such insurers to pay, on behalf of Indemnitee, all amounts payable as a result of such Proceeding in accordance with the terms of such policies.

(d) In the event of any payment under this Agreement, the Company, to the fullest extent permitted by law, shall be subrogated to the extent of such payment to all of the rights of recovery of Indemnitee, who shall execute all papers required and take all action necessary to secure such rights, including execution of such documents as are necessary to enable the Company to bring suit to enforce such rights.

(e) The Company's obligation to indemnify, hold harmless, exonerate or advance Expenses hereunder to Indemnitee who is or was serving at the request of the Company as a director, officer, trustee, partner, manager, managing member, fiduciary, employee or agent of any other Enterprise shall be reduced by any amount Indemnitee has actually received as indemnification, hold harmless or exoneration payments or advancement of expenses from such Enterprise. Notwithstanding any other provision of this Agreement to the contrary except for Section 27, (i) Indemnitee shall have no obligation to reduce, offset, allocate, pursue or apportion any indemnification, hold harmless, exoneration, advancement, contribution or insurance coverage among multiple parties possessing such duties to Indemnitee prior to the Company's satisfaction and performance of all its obligations under this Agreement, and (ii) the Company shall perform fully its obligations under this Agreement without regard to whether Indemnitee holds, may pursue or has pursued any indemnification, advancement, hold harmless, exoneration, contribution or insurance coverage rights against any person or entity other than the Company.

**17. DURATION OF AGREEMENT** . All agreements and obligations of the Company contained herein shall continue during the period Indemnitee serves as a director or officer of the Company or as a director, officer, trustee, partner, manager, managing member, fiduciary, employee or agent of any other corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust, employee benefit plan or other Enterprise which Indemnitee serves at the request of the Company and shall continue thereafter so long as Indemnitee shall be subject to any possible Proceeding (including any rights of appeal thereto and any Proceeding commenced by Indemnitee pursuant to Section 14 of this Agreement) by reason of Indemnitee's Corporate Status, whether or not Indemnitee is acting in any such capacity at the time any liability or expense is incurred for which indemnification or advancement can be provided under this Agreement.

**18. SEVERABILITY** . If any provision or provisions of this Agreement shall be held to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable for any reason whatsoever: (a) the validity, legality and enforceability of the remaining provisions of this Agreement (including, without limitation, each portion of any Section, paragraph or sentence of this Agreement containing any such provision held to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable, that is not itself invalid, illegal or unenforceable) shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby and shall remain enforceable to the fullest extent permitted by law; (b) such provision or provisions shall be deemed reformed to the extent necessary to conform to applicable law and to give the maximum effect to the intent of the parties hereto; and (c) to the fullest extent possible, the provisions of this Agreement (including, without limitation, each portion of any Section, paragraph or sentence of this Agreement containing any such provision held to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable, that is not itself invalid, illegal or unenforceable) shall be construed so as to give effect to the intent manifested thereby.

**19. ENFORCEMENT AND BINDING EFFECT** .

(a) The Company expressly confirms and agrees that it has entered into this Agreement and assumed the obligations imposed on it hereby in order to induce Indemnitee to serve as a director, officer or key employee of the Company, and the Company acknowledges that Indemnitee is relying upon this Agreement in serving as a director, officer or key employee of the Company.

(b) Without limiting any of the rights of Indemnitee under the Charter or By Laws as they may be amended from time to time, this Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between the parties hereto with respect to the subject matter hereof and supersedes all prior agreements and understandings, oral, written and implied, between the parties hereto with respect to the subject matter hereof.

(c) The indemnification, hold harmless, exoneration and advancement of expenses rights provided by or granted pursuant to this Agreement shall be binding upon and be enforceable by the parties hereto and their respective successors and assigns (including any direct or indirect successor by purchase, merger, consolidation or otherwise to all or substantially all of the business and/or assets of the Company), shall continue as to an Indemnitee who has ceased to be a director, officer, employee or agent of the Company or a director, officer, trustee, general partner, manager, managing member, fiduciary, employee or agent of any other Enterprise at the Company's request, and shall inure to the benefit of Indemnitee and Indemnitee's spouse, assigns, heirs, devisees, executors and administrators and other legal representatives.

(d) The Company shall require and cause any successor (whether direct or indirect by purchase, merger, consolidation or otherwise) to all, substantially all or a substantial part, of the business and/or assets of the Company, by written agreement in form and substance satisfactory to Indemnitee, expressly to assume and agree to perform this Agreement in the same manner and to the same extent that the Company would be required to perform if no such succession had taken place.

(e) The Company and Indemnitee agree herein that a monetary remedy for breach of this Agreement, at some later date, may be inadequate, impracticable and difficult of proof, and further agree that such breach may cause Indemnitee irreparable harm. Accordingly, the parties hereto agree that Indemnitee may, to the fullest extent permitted by law, enforce this Agreement by seeking, among other things, injunctive relief and/or specific performance hereof, without any necessity of showing actual damage or irreparable harm and that by seeking injunctive relief and/or specific performance, Indemnitee shall not be precluded from seeking or obtaining any other relief to which Indemnitee may be entitled. The Company and Indemnitee further agree that Indemnitee shall, to the fullest extent permitted by law, be entitled to such specific performance and injunctive relief, including temporary restraining orders, preliminary injunctions and permanent injunctions, without the necessity of posting bonds or other undertaking in connection therewith. The Company acknowledges that in the absence of a waiver, a bond or undertaking may be required of Indemnitee by a court of competent jurisdiction. The Company hereby waives any such requirement of such a bond or undertaking to the fullest extent permitted by law.

**20. MODIFICATION AND WAIVER** . No supplement, modification or amendment of this Agreement shall be binding unless executed in writing by the Company and Indemnitee. No waiver of any of the provisions of this Agreement shall be deemed or shall constitute a waiver of any other provisions of this Agreement nor shall any waiver constitute a continuing waiver.

**21. NOTICES** . All notices, requests, demands and other communications under this Agreement shall be in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly given (i) if delivered by hand and receipted for by the party to whom said notice or other communication shall have been directed, or (ii) mailed by certified or registered mail with postage prepaid, on the third (3rd) business day after the date on which it is so mailed:

(a) If to Indemnitee, at the address indicated on the signature page of this Agreement, or such other address as Indemnitee shall provide in writing to the Company.

(b) If to the Company, to:

B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II  
299 Park Avenue, 21st Floor  
New York, New York 10171  
Attention: Daniel Shribman

With a copy, which shall not constitute notice, to

Winston & Strawn LLP  
200 Park Avenue  
New York, New York 10166  
Attn: Joel Rubinstein  
Fax No.: (212) 294-6700

or to any other address as may have been furnished to Indemnitee in writing by the Company.

22. **APPLICABLE LAW AND CONSENT TO JURISDICTION** . This Agreement and the legal relations among the parties shall be governed by, and construed and enforced in accordance with, the laws of the State of Delaware, without regard to its conflict of laws rules. Except with respect to any arbitration commenced by Indemnitee pursuant to Section 14(a) of this Agreement, to the fullest extent permitted by law, the Company and Indemnitee hereby irrevocably and unconditionally: (a) agree that any action or proceeding arising out of or in connection with this Agreement shall be brought only in the Delaware Court and not in any other state or federal court in the United States of America or any court in any other country; (b) consent to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the Delaware Court for purposes of any action or proceeding arising out of or in connection with this Agreement; (c) waive any objection to the laying of venue of any such action or proceeding in the Delaware Court; and (d) waive, and agree not to plead or to make, any claim that any such action or proceeding brought in the Delaware Court has been brought in an improper or inconvenient forum, or is subject (in whole or in part) to a jury trial. To the fullest extent permitted by law, the parties hereby agree that the mailing of process and other papers in connection with any such action or proceeding in the manner provided by Section 21 or in such other manner as may be permitted by law, shall be valid and sufficient service thereof.

23. **IDENTICAL COUNTERPARTS** . This Agreement may be executed in one or more counterparts, each of which shall for all purposes be deemed to be an original but all of which together shall constitute one and the same Agreement. Only one such counterpart signed by the party against whom enforceability is sought needs to be produced to evidence the existence of this Agreement.

24. **MISCELLANEOUS** . Use of the masculine pronoun shall be deemed to include usage of the feminine pronoun where appropriate. The headings of the paragraphs of this Agreement are inserted for convenience only and shall not be deemed to constitute part of this Agreement or to affect the construction thereof.

25. **PERIOD OF LIMITATIONS** . No legal action shall be brought and no cause of action shall be asserted by or in the right of the Company against Indemnitee, Indemnitee's spouse, heirs, executors or personal or legal representatives after the expiration of two years from the date of accrual of such cause of action, and any claim or cause of action of the Company shall be extinguished and deemed released unless asserted by the timely filing of a legal action within such two-year period; provided, however, that if any shorter period of limitations is otherwise applicable to any such cause of action such shorter period shall govern.

26. **ADDITIONAL ACTS** . If for the validation of any of the provisions in this Agreement any act, resolution, approval or other procedure is required to the fullest extent permitted by law, the Company undertakes to cause such act, resolution, approval or other procedure to be affected or adopted in a manner that will enable the Company to fulfill its obligations under this Agreement.

27. **WAIVER OF CLAIMS TO TRUST ACCOUNT** . Notwithstanding anything contained herein to the contrary, Indemnitee hereby agrees that it does not have any right, title, interest or claim of any kind (each, a "**Claim**") in or to any monies in the trust account established in connection with the Company's initial public offering for the benefit of the Company and holders of shares issued in such offering (the "**Trust Account**"), and hereby waives any Claim it may have in the future as a result of, or arising out of, any services provided to the Company and will not seek recourse against such Trust Account for any reason whatsoever. Accordingly, Indemnitee acknowledges and agrees that any indemnification provided hereto will only be able to be satisfied by the Company if (i) the Company has sufficient funds outside of the Trust Account to satisfy its obligations hereunder or (ii) the Company consummates an initial business combination.

28. **MAINTENANCE OF INSURANCE** . The Company shall use commercially reasonable efforts to obtain and maintain in effect during the entire period for which the Company is obligated to indemnify the Indemnitee under this Agreement, one or more policies of insurance with reputable insurance companies to provide the officers/directors of the Company with coverage for losses from wrongful acts and omissions and to ensure the Company's performance of its indemnification obligations under this Agreement. The Indemnitee shall be covered by such policy or policies in accordance with its or their terms to the maximum extent of the coverage available for any such director or officer under such policy or policies. In all such insurance policies, the Indemnitee shall be named as an insured in such a manner as to provide the Indemnitee with the same rights and benefits as are accorded to the most favorably insured of the Company's directors and officers.

[ Signature Page Follows ]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF , the parties hereto have caused this Indemnity Agreement to be signed as of the day and year first above written.

**B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II**

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: Daniel Shribman

Title: Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer

[ *Signature Page to Indemnity Agreement* ]



**INDEMNITEE**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Address:

[ *Signature Page to Indemnity Agreement* ]

---

**B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II**

299 Park Avenue, 21st Floor  
New York, New York 10171

[ ], 2020

B. Riley Corporate Services, Inc.  
299 Park Avenue, 21st Floor  
New York, New York 10171

Re: Administrative Support Agreement

Ladies and Gentlemen:

This letter agreement (this “**Agreement**”) by and between B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II (the “**Company**”) and B. Riley Corporate Services, Inc. (“**BRCS**”), dated as of the date hereof, will confirm our agreement that, commencing on the date the securities of the Company are first listed on the New York Stock Exchange (the “**Listing Date**”), pursuant to a Registration Statement on Form S-1 and prospectus filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the “**Registration Statement**”) and continuing until the earlier of the consummation by the Company of an initial business combination or the Company’s liquidation (in each case as described in the Registration Statement) (such earlier date hereinafter referred to as the “**Termination Date**”):

1. BRCS shall make available, or cause to be made available, to the Company, at 299 Park Avenue, 21st Floor, New York, New York 10171 (or any successor location), certain office space, utilities and secretarial and administrative support as may be reasonably required by the Company. In exchange therefor, the Company shall pay BRCS \$10,000 per month on the Listing Date and continuing monthly thereafter until the Termination Date; and

2. BRCS hereby irrevocably waives any and all right, title, interest, causes of action and claims of any kind as a result of, or arising out of, this Agreement (each, a “**Claim**”) in or to, and any and all right to seek payment of any amounts due to it out of, the trust account established for the benefit of the public stockholders of the Company and into which substantially all of the proceeds of the Company’s initial public offering will be deposited (the “**Trust Account**”), and hereby irrevocably waives any Claim it may have in the future as a result of, or arising out of, this Agreement, which Claim would reduce, encumber or otherwise adversely affect the Trust Account or any monies or other assets in the Trust Account, and further agrees not to seek recourse, reimbursement, payment or satisfaction of any Claim against the Trust Account or any monies or other assets in the Trust Account for any reason whatsoever.

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement and understanding of the parties hereto in respect of its subject matter and supersedes all prior understandings, agreements, or representations by or among the parties hereto, written or oral, to the extent they relate in any way to the subject matter hereof or the transactions contemplated hereby.

This Agreement may not be amended, modified or waived as to any particular provision, except by a written instrument executed by the parties hereto.

No party hereto may assign either this Agreement or any of its rights, interests, or obligations hereunder without the prior written approval of the other party. Any purported assignment in violation of this paragraph shall be void and ineffectual and shall not operate to transfer or assign any interest or title to the purported assignee.

This Agreement constitutes the entire relationship of the parties hereto, and any litigation between the parties (whether grounded in contract, tort, statute, law or equity) shall be governed by, construed in accordance with, and interpreted pursuant to the laws of the State of New York, without giving effect to its choice of law principles.

[ Signature Page Follows ]

---

Very truly yours,

**B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: Daniel Shribman  
Title: Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer

AGREED AND ACCEPTED BY:

**B. RILEY CORPORATE SERVICES, INC.**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

[ Signature Page to Administrative Support Agreement ]

---

**FORWARD PURCHASE AGREEMENT**

This Forward Purchase Agreement (this “Agreement”) is entered into as of [ ], 2020, by and between B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II, a Delaware corporation (the “Company”), and B. Riley Principal Investments, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company (the “Purchaser”).

**Recitals**

WHEREAS, the Company was incorporated for the purpose of effecting a merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or similar business combination with one or more businesses (a “Business Combination”);

WHEREAS, the Company has filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”) a registration statement on Form S-1 (the “Registration Statement”) for its initial public offering (“IPO”) of 20,000,000 units (or 23,000,000 units if the underwriters’ over-allotment option (the “IPO Option”) is exercised in full) (the “Public Units”) at a price of \$10.00 per Public Unit, each Public Unit comprised of one share of the Company’s Class A common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the “Class A Shares,” and the Class A Shares included in the Public Units, the “Public Shares”), and one-half of one redeemable warrant, where each whole redeemable warrant is exercisable to purchase one Class A Share at an exercise price of \$11.50 per share (the “Warrants,” and the Warrants included in the Public Units, the “Public Warrants”);

WHEREAS, the Company’s sponsor, B. Riley Principal Sponsor Co. II, LLC, has agreed to purchase an aggregate of 575,000 units (or 635,000 units if the IPO Option is exercised in full) at a price of \$10.00 per unit in a private placement that will close simultaneously with the closing of the IPO (the “Private Placement Units”);

WHEREAS, following the closing of the IPO (the “IPO Closing”), the Company will seek to identify and consummate a Business Combination;

WHEREAS, the parties wish to enter into this Agreement, pursuant to which immediately prior to the closing of the Company’s initial Business Combination (the “Business Combination Closing”), the Company shall issue and sell to the Purchaser, and the Purchaser shall purchase from the Company, on a private placement basis, 2,500,000 units (the “Forward Purchase Units”), comprised of 2,500,000 Class A Shares (the “Forward Purchase Shares”) and 1,250,000 warrants (the “Forward Purchase Warrants”), on the terms and conditions set forth herein (the Forward Purchase Shares, the Forward Purchase Warrants underlying the Forward Purchase Units and the Class A Shares underlying the Forward Purchase Warrants, the “Forward Purchase Securities”); and

WHEREAS, proceeds from the IPO and the sale of the Private Placement Warrants in an aggregate amount equal to the gross proceeds from the IPO will be deposited into a trust account for the benefit of the holders of the Public Shares (the “Trust Account”), as described in the Registration Statement.

---

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the premises, representations, warranties and the mutual covenants contained in this Agreement, and for other good and valuable consideration, the receipt, sufficiency and adequacy of which are hereby acknowledged, the parties hereto agree as follows:

## Agreement

### 1. Sale and Purchase.

#### (a) Forward Purchase Securities.

(i) The Company shall issue and sell to the Purchaser, and the Purchaser shall purchase from the Company, 2,500,000 Forward Purchase Units for a purchase price of \$10.00 per Forward Purchase Unit, or \$25,000,000 in the aggregate (the “Forward Purchase Price”).

(ii) Each Forward Purchase Warrant will have the same terms as each Private Placement Warrant, and will be subject to the terms and conditions of the Warrant Agreement to be entered into between the Company and Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, as Warrant Agent, in connection with the IPO (the “Warrant Agreement”). Each Forward Purchase Warrant will entitle the holder thereof to purchase one Class A Share at a price of \$11.50 per share, subject to adjustment as described in the Warrant Agreement, and only whole Forward Purchase Warrants will be exercisable. The Forward Purchase Warrants will become exercisable on the later of 30 days after the Business Combination Closing and 12 months from the IPO Closing, and will expire five years after the Business Combination Closing or earlier upon the liquidation of the Company, as described in the Warrant Agreement. The Forward Purchase Warrants will be non-redeemable and exercisable on a cashless basis so long as they are held by the Purchaser or its Permitted Transferees (as defined below). For so long as the Forward Purchase Warrants are held by the Purchaser or its Permitted Transferees, the Forward Purchase Warrants will not be exercisable more than five years from the effective date of the Registration Statement in accordance with FINRA Rule 5110(f)(2)(G)(i). If the Forward Purchase Warrants are held by Persons (as defined below) other than the Purchaser or its Permitted Transferees, the Forward Purchase Warrants will have the same terms as the Public Warrants, as set forth in the Warrant Agreement.

(iii) The Company shall require the Purchaser to purchase the Forward Purchase Units by delivering notice to the Purchaser, at least five (5) Business Days before the Business Combination Closing, specifying the date of the Business Combination Closing and instructions for wiring the Forward Purchase Price. The closing of the sale of Forward Purchase Units (the “Forward Closing”) shall be held on the same date and immediately prior to the Business Combination Closing (such date being referred to as the “Forward Closing Date”). At least one (1) Business Day prior to the Forward Closing Date, the Purchaser shall deliver to the Company, to be held in escrow until the Forward Closing, the Forward Purchase Price for the Forward Purchase Securities by wire transfer of U.S. dollars in immediately available funds to the account specified by the Company in such notice. Immediately prior to the Forward Closing on the Forward Closing Date, (A) the Forward Purchase Price shall be released from escrow automatically and without further action by the Company or the Purchaser, and (B) upon such release, the Company shall issue the Forward Purchase Units to the Purchaser in book-entry form, free and clear of any liens or other restrictions whatsoever (other than those arising under state or federal securities laws), registered in the name of the Purchaser (or its nominee in accordance with its delivery instructions), or to a custodian designated by the Purchaser, as applicable. In the event the Business Combination Closing does not occur on the date scheduled for closing, the Forward Closing shall not occur and the Company shall promptly (but not later than one (1) Business Day thereafter) return the Forward Purchase Price to the Purchaser. For purposes of this Agreement, “Business Day” means any day, other than a Saturday or a Sunday, that is neither a legal holiday nor a day on which banking institutions are generally authorized or required by law or regulation to close in the City of New York, New York.

(b) Legends. Each register and book entry for the Forward Purchase Securities shall contain a notation, and each certificate (if any) evidencing the Forward Purchase Securities shall be stamped or otherwise imprinted with a legend, in substantially the following form:

“THE SECURITIES REPRESENTED HEREBY HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED, OR THE SECURITIES LAWS OF ANY STATE OR OTHER JURISDICTION, AND MAY NOT BE TRANSFERRED IN VIOLATION OF SUCH ACT AND LAWS. THE SALE, PLEDGE, HYPOTHECATION, OR TRANSFER OF THE SECURITIES REPRESENTED HEREBY ARE SUBJECT TO THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF A CERTAIN FORWARD PURCHASE AGREEMENT BY AND BETWEEN THE HOLDER AND THE COMPANY. COPIES OF SUCH AGREEMENT MAY BE OBTAINED UPON WRITTEN REQUEST TO THE SECRETARY OF THE COMPANY.”

**2. Representations and Warranties of the Purchaser**. The Purchaser represents and warrants to the Company as follows, as of the date hereof:

(a) Organization and Power. The Purchaser is duly organized, validly existing, and in good standing under the laws of the jurisdiction of its formation and has all requisite power and authority to carry on its business as presently conducted and as proposed to be conducted.

(b) Authorization. The Purchaser has full power and authority to enter into this Agreement. This Agreement, when executed and delivered by the Purchaser, will constitute the valid and legally binding obligation of the Purchaser, enforceable against the Purchaser in accordance with its terms, except (a) as limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, fraudulent conveyance and any other laws of general application affecting enforcement of creditors' rights generally, (b) as limited by laws relating to the availability of specific performance, injunctive relief or other equitable remedies, or (c) to the extent the indemnification provisions contained in the Registration Rights (as defined below) may be limited by applicable federal or state securities laws.

(c) Governmental Consents and Filings. No consent, approval, order or authorization of, or registration, qualification, designation, declaration or filing with, any federal, state or local governmental authority is required on the part of the Purchaser in connection with the consummation of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement.

(d) Compliance with Other Instruments. The execution, delivery and performance by the Purchaser of this Agreement and the consummation by the Purchaser of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement will not result in any violation or default (i) of any provisions of its organizational documents, (ii) of any instrument, judgment, order, writ or decree to which it is a party or by which it is bound, (iii) under any note, indenture or mortgage to which it is a party or by which it is bound, (iv) under any lease, agreement, contract or purchase order to which it is a party or by which it is bound or (v) of any provision of federal or state statute, rule or regulation applicable to the Purchaser, in each case (other than clause (i)), which would have a material adverse effect on the Purchaser or its ability to consummate the transactions contemplated by this Agreement.

(e) Purchase Entirely for Own Account. This Agreement is made with the Purchaser in reliance upon the Purchaser's representation to the Company, which by the Purchaser's execution of this Agreement, the Purchaser hereby confirms, that the Forward Purchase Securities to be acquired by the Purchaser will be acquired for investment for the Purchaser's own account, not as a nominee or agent, and not with a view to the resale or distribution of any part thereof in violation of any state or federal securities laws, and that the Purchaser has no present intention of selling, granting any participation in, or otherwise distributing the same in violation of law. By executing this Agreement, the Purchaser further represents that the Purchaser does not presently have any contract, undertaking, agreement or arrangement with any Person to sell, transfer or grant participations to such Person or to any third Person, with respect to any of the Forward Purchase Securities. For purposes of this Agreement, "Person" means an individual, a limited liability company, a partnership, a joint venture, a corporation, a trust, an unincorporated organization, any other entity or any government or any department or agency thereof.

(f) Disclosure of Information. The Purchaser has had an opportunity to discuss the Company's business, management, financial affairs and the terms and conditions of the offering of the Forward Purchase Securities, as well as the terms of the Company's proposed IPO, with the Company's management.

(g) Restricted Securities. The Purchaser understands that the offer and sale of the Forward Purchase Securities to the Purchaser has not been, and will not be, registered under the Securities Act, by reason of a specific exemption from the registration provisions of the Securities Act which depends upon, among other things, the bona fide nature of the investment intent and the accuracy of the Purchaser's representations as expressed herein. The Purchaser understands that the Forward Purchase Securities are "restricted securities" under applicable U.S. federal and state securities laws and that, pursuant to these laws, the Purchaser must hold the Forward Purchase Securities indefinitely unless they are registered with the SEC and qualified by state authorities, or an exemption from such registration and qualification requirements is available. The Purchaser acknowledges that the Company has no obligation to register or qualify the Forward Purchase Securities, or any Class A Shares into which the Forward Purchase Securities may be converted into or exercised for, for resale, except for the Registration Rights. The Purchaser further acknowledges that if an exemption from registration or qualification is available, it may be conditioned on various requirements including, but not limited to, the time and manner of sale, the holding period for the Forward Purchase Securities, and on requirements relating to the Company which are outside of the Purchaser's control, and which the Company is under no obligation and may not be able to satisfy. The Purchaser acknowledges that the Company filed the Registration Statement for its proposed IPO. The Purchaser understands that the offering of the Forward Purchase Securities is not, and is not intended to be, part of the IPO, and that the Purchaser will not be able to rely on the protection of Section 11 of the Securities Act with respect to such Forward Purchase Securities.

(h) No Public Market. The Purchaser understands that no public market now exists for the Forward Purchase Securities, and that the Company has made no assurances that a public market will ever exist for the Forward Purchase Securities.

(i) High Degree of Risk. The Purchaser understands that its agreement to purchase the Forward Purchase Securities involves a high degree of risk which could cause the Purchaser to lose all or part of its investment.

(j) Accredited Investor. The Purchaser is an accredited investor as defined in Rule 501(a) of Regulation D promulgated under the Securities Act.

(k) No General Solicitation. Neither the Purchaser, nor any of its officers, directors, employees, agents, stockholders or partners has either directly or indirectly, including, through a broker or finder (i) engaged in any general solicitation, or (ii) published any advertisement in connection with the offer and sale of the Forward Purchase Securities.

(l) Residence. The Purchaser's principal place of business is the office or offices located at the address of the Purchaser set forth on the signature page hereof.

(m) Non-Public Information. The Purchaser acknowledges its obligations under applicable securities laws with respect to the treatment of non-public information relating to the Company.

(n) Adequacy of Financing. At the time of the Forward Closing, the Purchaser will have available to it sufficient funds to satisfy its obligations under this Agreement.

(o) No Other Representations and Warranties; Non-Reliance. Except for the specific representations and warranties contained in this Section 2 and in any certificate or agreement delivered pursuant hereto, none of the Purchaser nor any person acting on behalf of the Purchaser nor any of the Purchaser's affiliates (the "Purchaser Parties") has made, makes or shall be deemed to make any other express or implied representation or warranty with respect to the Purchaser and this offering, and the Purchaser Parties disclaim any such representation or warranty. Except for the specific representations and warranties expressly made by the Company in Section 3 of this Agreement and in any certificate or agreement delivered pursuant hereto, the Purchaser Parties specifically disclaim that they are relying upon any other representations or warranties that may have been made by the Company, any person on behalf of the Company or any of the Company's affiliates (collectively, the "Company Parties").

**3. Representations and Warranties of the Company**. The Company represents and warrants to the Purchaser as follows:

(a) Incorporation and Corporate Power. The Company is corporation duly incorporated and validly existing and in good standing as a corporation under the laws of the State of Delaware and has all requisite corporate power and authority to carry on its business as presently conducted and as proposed to be conducted. The Company has no subsidiaries.

(b) Capitalization. On the date hereof, the authorized share capital of the Company consists of:

(i) 100,000,000 Class A Shares, none of which are issued and outstanding.

(ii) 25,000,000 shares of the Company's Class B common stock, par value \$0.0001 per shares (the "Class B Shares"), 5,750,000 of which are issued and outstanding and held by the Sponsor. All of the outstanding Class B Shares have been duly authorized, are fully paid and nonassessable and were issued in compliance with all applicable federal and state securities laws.

(iii) 1,000,000 preferred shares, none of which are issued and outstanding.



(c) Authorization. All corporate action required to be taken by the Company's Board of Directors and stockholders in order to authorize the Company to enter into this Agreement, and to issue the Forward Purchase Securities at the Forward Closing, and the securities issuable upon exercise of the Forward Purchase Warrants, has been taken or will be taken prior to the Forward Closing. All action on the part of the stockholders, directors and officers of the Company necessary for the execution and delivery of this Agreement, the performance of all obligations of the Company under this Agreement to be performed as of the Forward Closing, and the issuance and delivery of the Forward Purchase Securities and the securities issuable upon exercise of the Forward Purchase Warrants has been taken or will be taken prior to the Forward Closing. This Agreement, when executed and delivered by the Company, shall constitute the valid and legally binding obligation of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with its terms except (i) as limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, fraudulent conveyance, or other laws of general application relating to or affecting the enforcement of creditors' rights generally, (ii) as limited by laws relating to the availability of specific performance, injunctive relief, or other equitable remedies, or (iii) to the extent the indemnification provisions contained in the Registration Rights may be limited by applicable federal or state securities laws.

(d) Valid Issuance of Securities. The Forward Purchase Securities, when issued, sold and delivered in accordance with the terms and for the consideration set forth in this Agreement, and the securities issuable upon exercise of the Forward Purchase Warrants, when issued in accordance with the terms of the Forward Purchase Warrants and this Agreement, will be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable, as applicable, and free of all preemptive or similar rights, taxes, liens, encumbrances and charges with respect to the issue thereof and restrictions on transfer other than restrictions on transfer specified under this Agreement, applicable state and federal securities laws and liens or encumbrances created by or imposed by the Purchaser. Assuming the accuracy of the representations of the Purchaser in this Agreement and subject to the filings described in Section 3(e) below, the Forward Purchase Securities will be issued in compliance with all applicable federal and state securities laws.

(e) Governmental Consents and Filings. Assuming the accuracy of the representations and warranties made by the Purchaser in this Agreement, no consent, approval, order or authorization of, or registration, qualification, designation, declaration or filing with, any federal, state or local governmental authority is required on the part of the Company in connection with the consummation of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement, except for filings pursuant to Regulation D of the Securities Act, and applicable state securities laws, if any, and pursuant to the Registration Rights.

(f) Compliance with Other Instruments. The execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement and the consummation of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement will not result in any violation or default (i) of any provisions of the Company's certificate of incorporation, as it may be amended from time to time (the "Charter"), bylaws or other governing documents of the Company, (ii) of any instrument, judgment, order, writ or decree to which the Company is a party or by which it is bound, (iii) under any note, indenture or mortgage to which the Company is a party or by which it is bound, (iv) under any lease, agreement, contract or purchase order to which the Company is a party or by which it is bound or (v) of any provision of federal or state statute, rule or regulation applicable to the Company, in each case (other than clause (i)) which would have a material adverse effect on the Company or its ability to consummate the transactions contemplated by this Agreement.

(g) Operations. As of the date hereof, the Company has not conducted, and prior to the IPO Closing the Company will not conduct, any operations other than organizational activities and activities in connection with offerings of its securities.

(h) No General Solicitation. Neither the Company, nor any of its officers, directors, employees, agents or stockholders has either directly or indirectly, including, through a broker or finder (i) engaged in any general solicitation, or (ii) published any advertisement in connection with the offer and sale of the Forward Purchase Securities.

(i) No Other Representations and Warranties; Non-Reliance. Except for the specific representations and warranties contained in this Section 3 and in any certificate or agreement delivered pursuant hereto, none of the Company Parties has made, makes or shall be deemed to make any other express or implied representation or warranty with respect to the Company, this offering, the proposed IPO or a potential Business Combination, and the Company Parties disclaim any such representation or warranty. Except for the specific representations and warranties expressly made by the Purchaser in Section 2 of this Agreement and in any certificate or agreement delivered pursuant hereto, the Company Parties specifically disclaim that they are relying upon any other representations or warranties that may have been made by the Purchaser Parties.

#### **4. Registration Rights; Transfer**

(a) Registration Rights. The Purchaser shall be granted registration rights by the Company with respect to the Forward Purchase Securities pursuant to a registration rights agreement to be entered into with the Company, a form of which has been filed with the registration statement relating to the Company's IPO (the "Registration Rights"), including limitations on those rights pursuant to Section 3.6 of the registration rights agreement for so long as the Forward Purchase Securities are held by the Purchaser or its Permitted Transferees in accordance with FINRA Rule 5110(f)(2) (G).

(b) Transfer. This Agreement and all of the Purchaser's rights and obligations hereunder (including the Purchaser's obligation to purchase the Forward Purchase Securities) may be transferred or assigned, at any time and from time to time, in whole or in part, to one or more third parties (each such transferee, a "Transferee"). Upon any such assignment:

(i) the applicable Transferee shall execute a signature page to this Agreement, substantially in the form of the Purchaser's signature page hereto (the "Joinder Agreement"), which shall reflect the number of Forward Purchase Units to be purchased by such Transferee (the "Transferee Securities"), and, upon such execution, such Transferee shall have all the same rights and obligations of the Purchaser hereunder with respect to the Transferee Securities, and references herein to the "Purchaser" shall be deemed to refer to and include any such Transferee with respect to such Transferee and to its Transferee Securities; provided, that any representations, warranties, covenants and agreements of the Purchaser and any such Transferee shall be several and not joint and shall be made as to the Purchaser or any such Transferee, as applicable, as to itself only; and

(ii) upon a Transferee's execution and delivery of a Joinder Agreement, the number of Forward Purchase Units to be purchased by the Purchaser hereunder shall be reduced by the total number of Forward Purchase Units to be purchased by the applicable Transferee pursuant to the applicable Joinder Agreement, which reduction shall be evidenced by the Purchaser and the Company amending Schedule A to this Agreement to reflect each transfer and updating the "Number of Forward Purchase Units" and "Aggregate Purchase Price for Forward Purchase Securities" on the Purchaser's signature page hereto to reflect such reduced number of Forward Purchase Securities, and the Purchaser shall be fully and unconditionally released from its obligation to purchase such Transferee Securities hereunder. For the avoidance of doubt, this Agreement need not be amended and restated in its entirety, but only Schedule A and the Purchaser's signature page hereto need be so amended and updated and executed by each of the Purchaser and the Company upon the occurrence of any such transfer of Transferee Securities.

## 5. Additional Agreements, Acknowledgements and Waivers of the Purchaser.

(a) Lock-up; Transfer Restrictions. The Purchaser agrees that it shall not Transfer any Forward Purchase Units (or the underlying Class A Shares and Warrants, including the Class A Shares issued or issuable upon the exercise of any such warrants) until the later of the conclusion of the lock up period required by FINRA Rule 5110(g)(1) or 30 days after the completion of the initial Business Combination, except that Transfers of the Forward Purchase Securities are permitted to any Permitted Transferee. Notwithstanding the first sentence of this Section 5(a), Transfers of the Forward Purchase Securities are permitted (any such transferees, the “Permitted Transferees”) within the 180-day period following the effective date of the Registration Statement in compliance with FINRA Rule 5110(g)(2) and thereafter to (A) to the Company’s officers or directors, any affiliates or family members of any of the Company’s officers or directors, any members of the Purchaser, or any affiliates of the Purchaser; (B) in the case of an individual, by gift to a member of the individual’s immediate family, to a trust, the beneficiary of which is a member of individual’s immediate family or an affiliate of such person, or to a charitable organization; (C) in the case of an individual, by virtue of laws of descent and distribution upon death of the individual; (D) in the case of an individual, pursuant to a qualified domestic relations order; (E) by private sales or transfers made in connection with the consummation of a Business Combination at prices no greater than the price at which the securities were originally purchased; (F) in the event of the Company’s liquidation prior to the completion of a Business Combination; (G) in the event of the Company’s liquidation, merger, capital stock exchange, reorganization or other similar transaction which results in all of the Company’s stockholders having the right to exchange their Class A Shares for cash, securities or other property subsequent to the completion of a Business Combination; (H) as a distribution to limited partners, members or stockholders of the Purchaser; (I) to the Purchaser’s affiliates, to any investment fund or other entity controlled or managed by the Purchaser or any of its affiliates, or to any investment manager or investment advisor of the Purchaser or an affiliate of any such investment manager or investment advisor; (J) to a nominee or custodian of a person or entity to whom a disposition or transfer would be permissible under clauses (A) through (I) above; (K) to the Purchaser or any Transferee hereunder; (L) by virtue of the laws of the Purchaser’s jurisdiction of formation or its organizational documents upon dissolution of the Purchaser; and (M) pursuant to an order of a court or regulatory agency; provided, however, that in the case of clauses (A) through (E) and (H) through (L), these Permitted Transferees must enter into a written agreement agreeing to be bound by these transfer restrictions. “Transfer” shall mean the (x) sale or assignment of, offer to sell, contract or agreement to sell, hypothecation, pledge, grant of any option to purchase or otherwise dispose of or agreement to dispose of, directly or indirectly, or establishment or increase of a put equivalent position or liquidation with respect to or decrease of a call equivalent position (within the meaning of Section 16 of the Exchange Act, and the rules and regulations of the SEC promulgated thereunder) with respect to, any of the Forward Purchase Securities (excluding any pledges in the ordinary course of business for bona fide financing purposes or as part of prime brokerage arrangements), (y) entry into any swap or other arrangement that transfers to another, in whole or in part, any of the economic consequences of ownership of any of the Forward Purchase Securities, whether any such transaction is to be settled by delivery of such Forward Purchase Securities, in cash or otherwise, or (z) public announcement of any intention to effect any transaction specified in clause (x) or (y).

### (b) Trust Account.

(i) The Purchaser hereby acknowledges that it is aware that the Company will establish the Trust Account for the benefit of its public stockholders upon the IPO Closing. The Purchaser, for itself and its affiliates, hereby agrees that it has no right, title, interest or claim of any kind in or to any monies held in the Trust Account, or any other asset of the Company as a result of any liquidation of the Company, except for redemption and liquidation rights, if any, the Purchaser may have in respect of any Public Shares held by it.

(ii) The Purchaser hereby agrees that it shall have no right of set-off or any right, title, interest or claim of any kind (“Claim”) to, or to any monies in, the Trust Account, and hereby irrevocably waives any Claim to, or to any monies in, the Trust Account that it may have now or in the future, except for redemption and liquidation rights, if any, the Purchaser may have in respect of any Public Shares held by it. In the event the Purchaser has any Claim against the Company under this Agreement, the Purchaser shall pursue such Claim solely against the Company and its assets outside the Trust Account and not against the property or any monies in the Trust Account, except for redemption and liquidation rights, if any, the Purchaser may have in respect of any Public Shares held by it.

(c) No Short Sales. The Purchaser hereby agrees that neither it, nor any person or entity acting on its behalf or pursuant to any understanding with it, will engage in any Short Sales with respect to securities of the Company prior to the Business Combination Closing. For purposes of this Section, “Short Sales” shall include, without limitation, all “short sales” as defined in Rule 200 promulgated under Regulation SHO under the Exchange Act and all types of direct and indirect stock pledges (other than pledges in the ordinary course of business as part of prime brokerage arrangements), forward sale contracts, options, puts, calls, swaps and similar arrangements (including on a total return basis), and sales and other transactions through non-U.S. broker dealers or foreign regulated brokers.

**6. NYSE Listing.** The Company will use commercially reasonable efforts to effect and maintain the listing of the Class A Shares and Public Warrants on the New York Stock Exchange (“NYSE”) (or another national securities exchange).

#### **7. Forward Closing Conditions .**

(a) The obligation of the Purchaser to purchase the Forward Purchase Securities at the Forward Closing under this Agreement shall be subject to the fulfillment, at or prior to the Forward Closing of each of the following conditions, any of which, to the extent permitted by applicable laws, may be waived by the Purchaser:

(i) The Business Combination shall be consummated substantially concurrently with, and immediately following, the purchase of the Forward Purchase Securities;

(ii) The Company shall have delivered to the Purchaser a certificate evidencing the Company’s good standing as a Delaware corporation, as of a date within ten (10) Business Days of the Forward Closing;

(iii) The representations and warranties of the Company set forth in Section 3 of this Agreement shall have been true and correct as of the date hereof and shall be true and correct as of the Forward Closing Date, as applicable, with the same effect as though such representations and warranties had been made on and as of such date (other than any such representation or warranty that is made by its terms as of a specified date, which shall be true and correct as of such specified date), except where the failure to be so true and correct would not have a material adverse effect on the Company or its ability to consummate the transactions contemplated by this Agreement;

(iv) The Company shall have performed, satisfied and complied in all material respects with the covenants, agreements and conditions required by this Agreement to be performed, satisfied or complied with by the Company at or prior to the Forward Closing; and

(v) No order, writ, judgment, injunction, decree, determination, or award shall have been entered by or with any governmental, regulatory, or administrative authority or any court, tribunal, or judicial, or arbitral body, and no other legal restraint or prohibition shall be in effect, preventing the purchase by the Purchaser of the Forward Purchase Securities.

(b) The obligation of the Company to sell the Forward Purchase Securities at the Forward Closing under this Agreement shall be subject to the fulfillment, at or prior to the Forward Closing of each of the following conditions, any of which, to the extent permitted by applicable laws, may be waived by the Company:

(i) The Business Combination shall be consummated substantially concurrently with, and immediately following, the purchase of Forward Purchase Securities;

(ii) The representations and warranties of the Purchaser set forth in Section 2 of this Agreement shall have been true and correct as of the date hereof and shall be true and correct as of the Forward Closing Date, as applicable, with the same effect as though such representations and warranties had been made on and as of such date (other than any such representation or warranty that is made by its terms as of a specified date, which shall be true and correct as of such specified date), except where the failure to be so true and correct would not have a material adverse effect on the Purchaser or its ability to consummate the transactions contemplated by this Agreement;

(iii) The Purchaser shall have performed, satisfied and complied in all material respects with the covenants, agreements and conditions required by this Agreement to be performed, satisfied or complied with by the Purchaser at or prior to the Forward Closing; and

(iv) No order, writ, judgment, injunction, decree, determination, or award shall have been entered by or with any governmental, regulatory, or administrative authority or any court, tribunal, or judicial, or arbitral body, and no other legal restraint or prohibition shall be in effect, preventing the purchase by the Purchaser of the Forward Purchase Securities.

**8. Termination** . This Agreement may be terminated at any time prior to the Forward Closing:

(a) by mutual written consent of the Company and the Purchaser;

(b) automatically

(i) if the IPO is not consummated on or prior to twelve months from the date of this Agreement; or

(ii) if the Business Combination is not consummated within 24 months from the closing of the IPO, or such later date as may be approved by the Company's shareholders.

In the event of any termination of this Agreement pursuant to this Section 8, the FPS Purchase Price (and interest thereon, if any), if previously paid, and all Purchaser's funds paid in connection herewith shall be promptly returned to the Purchaser, and thereafter this Agreement shall forthwith become null and void and have no effect, without any liability on the part of the Purchaser or the Company and their respective directors, officers, employees, partners, managers, members, or stockholders and all rights and obligations of each party shall cease; provided, however, that nothing contained in this Section 8 shall relieve either party from liabilities or damages arising out of any fraud or willful breach by such party of any of its representations, warranties, covenants or agreements contained in this Agreement.

## 9. General Provisions .

(a) Notices. All notices and other communications given or made pursuant to this Agreement shall be in writing and shall be deemed effectively given upon the earlier of actual receipt, or (a) personal delivery to the party to be notified, (b) when sent, if sent by electronic mail or facsimile (if any) during normal business hours of the recipient, and if not sent during normal business hours, then on the recipient's next Business Day, (c) five (5) Business Days after having been sent by registered or certified mail, return receipt requested, postage prepaid, or (d) one (1) Business Day after deposit with a nationally recognized overnight courier, freight prepaid, specifying next Business Day delivery, with written verification of receipt. All communications sent to the Company shall be sent to: B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II, 299 Park Avenue, 21st Floor, New York, New York 10171, Attn: Daniel Shribman, Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, email: dshribman@brileyfin.com, with a copy to the Company's counsel at: Winston & Strawn LLP, 200 Park Avenue, New York, New York 10166, Attn: Joel L. Rubinstein, Esq., email: jrubinstein@winston.com, fax: (212) 294-4700.

All communications to the Purchaser shall be sent to the Purchaser's address as set forth on the signature page hereof, or to such e-mail address, facsimile number (if any) or address as subsequently modified by written notice given in accordance with this Section 8(a).

(b) No Finder's Fees. Each party represents that it neither is nor will be obligated for any finder's fee or commission in connection with this transaction. The Purchaser agrees to indemnify and to hold harmless the Company from any liability for any commission or compensation in the nature of a finder's or broker's fee arising out of this transaction (and the costs and expenses of defending against such liability or asserted liability) for which the Purchaser or any of its officers, employees or representatives is responsible. The Company agrees to indemnify and hold harmless the Purchaser from any liability for any commission or compensation in the nature of a finder's or broker's fee arising out of this transaction (and the costs and expenses of defending against such liability or asserted liability) for which the Company or any of its officers, employees or representatives is responsible.

(c) Survival of Representations and Warranties. All of the representations and warranties contained herein shall survive the Forward Closing.

(d) Entire Agreement. This Agreement, together with any documents, instruments and writings that are delivered pursuant hereto or referenced herein, constitutes the entire agreement and understanding of the parties hereto in respect of its subject matter and supersedes all prior understandings, agreements, or representations by or among the parties hereto, written or oral, to the extent they relate in any way to the subject matter hereof or the transactions contemplated hereby.

(e) Successors. All of the terms, agreements, covenants, representations, warranties, and conditions of this Agreement are binding upon, and inure to the benefit of and are enforceable by, the parties hereto and their respective successors. Nothing in this Agreement, express or implied, is intended to confer upon any party other than the parties hereto or their respective successors and assigns any rights, remedies, obligations or liabilities under or by reason of this Agreement, except as expressly provided in this Agreement.

(f) Assignments. Except as otherwise specifically provided herein, no party hereto may assign either this Agreement or any of its rights, interests, or obligations hereunder without the prior written approval of the other party.

(g) Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in two or more counterparts, each of which will be deemed an original but all of which together will constitute one and the same instrument.

(h) Headings. The section headings contained in this Agreement are inserted for convenience only and will not affect in any way the meaning or interpretation of this Agreement.

(i) Governing Law. This Agreement, the entire relationship of the parties hereto, and any dispute between the parties (whether grounded in contract, tort, statute, law or equity) shall be governed by, construed in accordance with, and interpreted pursuant to the laws of the State of New York, without giving effect to its choice of laws principles.

(j) Jurisdiction. The parties (i) hereby irrevocably and unconditionally submit to the jurisdiction of the state courts of New York and to the jurisdiction of the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York for the purpose of any suit, action or other proceeding arising out of or based upon this Agreement, (b) agree not to commence any suit, action or other proceeding arising out of or based upon this Agreement except in state courts of New York or the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York, and (c) hereby waive, and agree not to assert, by way of motion, as a defense, or otherwise, in any such suit, action or proceeding, any claim that it is not subject personally to the jurisdiction of the above-named courts, that its property is exempt or immune from attachment or execution, that the suit, action or proceeding is brought in an inconvenient forum, that the venue of the suit, action or proceeding is improper or that this Agreement or the subject matter hereof may not be enforced in or by such court.

(k) Waiver of Jury Trial. The parties hereto hereby waive any right to a jury trial in connection with any litigation pursuant to this Agreement and the transactions contemplated hereby.

(l) Amendments. This Agreement may not be amended, modified or waived as to any particular provision except with the prior written consent of the Company and the Purchaser.

(m) Severability. The provisions of this Agreement will be deemed severable and the invalidity or unenforceability of any provision will not affect the validity or enforceability of the other provisions hereof; provided that if any provision of this Agreement, as applied to any party hereto or to any circumstance, is adjudged by a governmental authority, arbitrator, or mediator not to be enforceable in accordance with its terms, the parties hereto agree that the governmental authority, arbitrator, or mediator making such determination will have the power to modify the provision in a manner consistent with its objectives such that it is enforceable, and/or to delete specific words or phrases, and in its reduced form, such provision will then be enforceable and will be enforced.

(n) Expenses. Each of the Company and the Purchaser will bear its own costs and expenses incurred in connection with the preparation, execution and performance of this Agreement and the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby, including all fees and expenses of agents, representatives, financial advisors, legal counsel and accountants. The Company shall be responsible for the fees of its transfer agent; stamp taxes and all of The Depository Trust Company's fees associated with the issuance of the Securities and the securities issuable upon conversion or exercise of the Forward Purchase Securities.

(o) Construction. The parties hereto have participated jointly in the negotiation and drafting of this Agreement. If an ambiguity or question of intent or interpretation arises, this Agreement will be construed as if drafted jointly by the parties hereto and no presumption or burden of proof will arise favoring or disfavoring any party hereto because of the authorship of any provision of this Agreement. Any reference to any federal, state, local, or foreign law will be deemed also to refer to law as amended and all rules and regulations promulgated thereunder, unless the context requires otherwise. The words “ *include* ,” “ *includes* ,” and “ *including* ” will be deemed to be followed by “ *without limitation* .” Pronouns in masculine, feminine, and neuter genders will be construed to include any other gender, and words in the singular form will be construed to include the plural and vice versa, unless the context otherwise requires. The words “ *this Agreement* ,” “ *herein* ,” “ *hereof* ,” “ *hereby* ,” “ *hereunder* ,” and words of similar import refer to this Agreement as a whole and not to any particular subdivision unless expressly so limited. The parties hereto intend that each representation, warranty, and covenant contained herein will have independent significance. If any party hereto has breached any representation, warranty, or covenant contained herein in any respect, the fact that there exists another representation, warranty or covenant relating to the same subject matter (regardless of the relative levels of specificity) which such party hereto has not breached will not detract from or mitigate the fact that such party hereto is in breach of the first representation, warranty, or covenant.

(p) Waiver. No waiver by any party hereto of any default, misrepresentation, or breach of warranty or covenant hereunder, whether intentional or not, may be deemed to extend to any prior or subsequent default, misrepresentation, or breach of warranty or covenant hereunder or affect in any way any rights arising because of any prior or subsequent occurrence.

(q) Specific Performance. The Purchaser agrees that irreparable damage may occur in the event any provision of this Agreement was not performed by the Purchaser in accordance with the terms hereof and that the Company shall be entitled to specific performance of the terms hereof, in addition to any other remedy at law or equity.

[ *Signature Page Follows* ]



IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the undersigned have executed this Agreement to be effective as of the date first set forth above.

**PURCHASER**

B. RILEY PRINCIPAL INVESTMENTS, LLC

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: Kenneth Young

Title: Chief Executive Officer

Address for Notices: 1300 North 17th Street, Suite 1300

Arlington, VA 22209

E-mail: kyoung@brileyfin.com

**COMPANY**

B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: Daniel Shribman

Title: Chief Executive and Chief Financial Officer

**TO BE EXECUTED UPON ANY ASSIGNMENT AND/OR REVISION IN ACCORDANCE WITH THIS AGREEMENT TO “NUMBER OF FORWARD PURCHASE UNITS” AND “AGGREGATE PURCHASE PRICE FOR FORWARD PURCHASE SECURITIES” SET FORTH BELOW**

Number of Forward Purchase Units: 2,500,000

Aggregate Purchase Price for Forward Purchase Securities: \$ 25,000,000

Number of Forward Purchase Units and Aggregate Purchase Price for Forward Purchase Securities as of \_\_\_\_\_, 202[\_\_\_\_], accepted and agreed to as of this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 202[\_\_\_\_].

[\_\_\_\_\_]

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

**SCHEDULE A  
SCHEDULE OF TRANSFERS OF FORWARD PURCHASE SECURITIES**

The following transfers of a portion of the original number of Forward Purchase Units have been made:

<b>Date of Transfer</b>	<b>Transferee</b>	<b>Number of Forward Purchase Units Transferred</b>	<b>Purchaser Revised Forward Purchase Units Amount</b>
-------------------------	-------------------	---	--

**TO BE EXECUTED UPON ANY ASSIGNMENT OR FINAL DETERMINATION OF FORWARD PURCHASE SECURITIES:**

Schedule A as of \_\_\_\_\_, 202[\_\_\_\_], accepted and agreed to as of this day of \_\_\_\_\_, 202[\_\_\_\_] by:

[\_\_\_\_\_]

**B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

**B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP.  
FORM OF CODE OF BUSINESS CONDUCT AND ETHICS**

Effective [ ], 2020

**I. INTRODUCTION**

The Board of Directors (the “**Board**”) of B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II has adopted this code of business conduct and ethics (this “**Code**”), as amended from time to time by the Board and which is applicable to all of the Company’s directors, officers and employees (to the extent that employees are hired in the future) (each a “**person**,” as used herein) of the Company (as defined below), to:

- promote honest and ethical conduct, including the ethical handling of actual or apparent conflicts of interest between personal and professional relationships;
- promote the full, fair, accurate, timely and understandable disclosure in reports and documents that the Company files with, or submits to, the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the “**SEC**”), as well as in other public communications made by or on behalf of the Company;
- promote compliance with applicable governmental laws, rules and regulations;
- deter wrongdoing; and
- require prompt internal reporting of breaches of, and accountability for adherence to, this Code.

This Code may be amended or modified by the Board. In this Code, references to the “**Company**” mean B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II and, in appropriate context, the Company’s subsidiaries, if any.

**II. HONEST, ETHICAL AND FAIR CONDUCT**

Each person owes a duty to the Company to act with integrity. Integrity requires, among other things, being honest, fair and candid. Deceit, dishonesty and subordination of principle are inconsistent with integrity. Service to the Company should never be subordinated to personal gain or advantage.

Each person must:

- Act with integrity, including being honest and candid while still maintaining the confidentiality of the Company’s information where required or when in the Company’s interests;
- Observe all applicable governmental laws, rules and regulations;

- Comply with the requirements of applicable accounting and auditing standards, as well as Company policies, in order to maintain a high standard of accuracy and completeness in the Company’s financial records and other business-related information and data;
- Adhere to a high standard of business ethics and not seek competitive advantage through unlawful or unethical business practices;
- Deal fairly with the Company’s customers, suppliers, competitors and employees;
- Refrain from taking advantage of anyone through manipulation, concealment, abuse of privileged information, misrepresentation of material facts or any other unfair-dealing practice;
- Protect the assets of the Company and ensure their proper use;
- Subject to, and except as permitted by, the Company’s amended and restated certificate of incorporation, as it may be amended from time to time (the “*charter*”), not (i) take for themselves corporate or business opportunities that are discovered through the use of corporate property, information or position, (ii) use corporate property, information or position for personal gain and (iii) compete with the Company; and
- Avoid conflicts of interest, wherever possible, except as may be allowed under guidelines or resolutions approved by the Board (or the appropriate committee of the Board), as disclosed in the Company’s public filings with the SEC or as permitted by the charter. Anything that would be a conflict for a person subject to this Code also will be a conflict for a member of his or her immediate family or any other close relative. Examples of conflict of interest situations include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - any significant ownership interest in any supplier or customer;
  - any consulting or employment relationship with any supplier or customer;
  - the receipt of any money, non-nominal gifts or excessive entertainment from any entity with which the Company has current or prospective business dealings;
  - selling anything to the Company or buying anything from the Company, except on the same terms and conditions as comparable officers or directors are permitted to so purchase or sell;
  - any other financial transaction, arrangement or relationship (including any indebtedness or guarantee of indebtedness) involving the Company; and
  - any other circumstance, event, relationship or situation in which the personal interest of a person subject to this Code interferes — or even appears to interfere — with the interests of the Company as a whole.

### III. DISCLOSURE

The Company strives to ensure that the contents of and the disclosures in the reports and documents that the Company files with the SEC and other public communications shall be full, fair, accurate, timely and understandable in accordance with applicable disclosure standards, including standards of materiality, where appropriate. Each person must:

- not knowingly misrepresent, or cause others to misrepresent, facts about the Company to others, whether within or outside the Company, including to the Company's independent registered public accountants, governmental regulators, self-regulating organizations and other governmental officials, as appropriate; and
- in relation to his or her area of responsibility, properly review and critically analyze proposed disclosure for accuracy and completeness.

In addition to the foregoing, the Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer of the Company and each subsidiary of the Company (or persons performing similar functions), and each other person that typically is involved in the financial reporting of the Company, must familiarize himself or herself with the disclosure requirements applicable to the Company as well as the business and financial operations of the Company.

Each person must promptly bring to the attention of the Chairperson, Co-Chairperson or Co-Executive Chairperson of the Board (the "**Chairperson**") any information he or she may have concerning (a) significant deficiencies in the design or operation of internal and/or disclosure controls that could adversely affect the Company's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial data or (b) any fraud that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the Company's financial reporting, disclosures or internal controls.

### IV. COMPLIANCE

It is the Company's obligation and policy to comply with all applicable governmental laws, rules and regulations. It is the personal responsibility of each person to, and each person must, adhere to the standards and restrictions imposed by those laws, rules and regulations, including those relating to accounting and auditing matters.

### V. REPORTING AND ACCOUNTABILITY

The Board is responsible for applying this Code to specific situations in which questions are presented to it and has the authority to interpret this Code in any particular situation. Any person who becomes aware of any existing or potential breach of this Code is required to notify the Chairperson promptly. Failure to do so is, in and of itself, a breach of this Code.

Specifically, each person must:

- Notify the Chairperson promptly of any existing or potential violation of this Code; and
- Not retaliate against any other person for reports of potential violations that are made in good faith.

The Company will follow the following procedures in investigating and enforcing this Code and in reporting on this Code:

- The Board will take all appropriate action to investigate any breaches reported to it; and
- Upon determination by the Board that a breach has occurred, the Board (by majority decision) will take or authorize such disciplinary or preventive action as it deems appropriate, after consultation with the Company's internal or external legal counsel, up to and including dismissal or, in the event of criminal or other serious violations of law, notification of the SEC or other appropriate law enforcement authorities.

No person following the above procedure shall, as a result of following such procedure, be subject by the Company or any officer or employee thereof to discharge, demotion suspension, threat, harassment or, in any manner, discrimination against such person in terms and conditions of employment.

#### **VI. WAIVERS AND AMENDMENTS**

Any waiver (defined below) or implicit waiver (defined below) from a provision of this Code for the principal executive officer, principal financial officer, principal accounting officer or controller, or persons performing similar functions, or any amendment (as defined below) to this Code is required to be disclosed in a Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC. In lieu of filing a Current Report on Form 8-K to report any such waivers or amendments, the Company may provide such information on its website and keep such information on the website for at least 12 months and disclose the website address as well as any intention to provide such disclosures in this manner in its most recently filed Annual Report on Form 10-K.

A “*waiver*” means the approval by the Board of a material departure from a provision of this Code. An “*implicit waiver*” means the Company's failure to take action within a reasonable period of time regarding a material departure from a provision of this Code that has been made known to an executive officer of the Company. An “*amendment*” means any amendment to this Code other than minor technical, administrative or other non-substantive amendments hereto.

All persons should note that it is not the Company's intention to grant or to permit waivers from the requirements of this Code. The Company expects full compliance with this Code.

#### **VII. INSIDER TRADING AND DISSEMINATION OF INSIDE INFORMATION**

Each person shall comply with the Company's Policy Regarding Insider Trading and Dissemination of Inside Information.

#### **VIII. FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND OTHER RECORDS**

All of the Company's books, records, accounts and financial statements must be maintained in reasonable detail, must appropriately reflect the Company's transactions and must both conform to applicable legal requirements and to the Company's system of internal controls. Unrecorded or “off the books” funds or assets should not be maintained unless permitted by applicable law or regulation. Records should always be retained or destroyed according to the Company's record retention policies. In accordance with those policies, in the event of litigation or governmental investigation, please consult the Board or the Company's internal or external legal counsel.



## **IX. IMPROPER INFLUENCE ON CONDUCT OF AUDITS**

No director, officer or employee, or any other person acting under the direction thereof, shall directly or indirectly take any action to coerce, manipulate, mislead or fraudulently influence any public or certified public accountant engaged in the performance of an audit or review of the financial statements of the Company or take any action that such person knows or should know that if successful could result in rendering the Company's financial statements materially misleading. Any person who believes such improper influence is being exerted should report such action to such person's supervisor, or if that is impractical under the circumstances, to any of the Company's directors.

Types of conduct that could constitute improper influence include, but are not limited to, directly or indirectly:

- Offering or paying bribes or other financial incentives, including future employment or contracts for non-audit services;
- Providing an auditor with an inaccurate or misleading legal analysis;
- Threatening to cancel or canceling existing non-audit or audit engagements if the auditor objects to the Company's accounting;
- Seeking to have a partner removed from the audit engagement because the partner objects to the Company's accounting;
- Blackmailing; and
- Making physical threats.

## **X. ANTI-CORRUPTION LAWS**

The Company complies with the anti-corruption laws of the countries in which it does business, including the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act ("FCPA"). To the extent prohibited by applicable law, directors, officers and employees will not directly or indirectly give anything of value to government officials, including employees of state-owned enterprises or foreign political candidates. These requirements apply both to Company employees and agents, such as third party sales representatives, no matter where they are doing business. If you are authorized to engage agents, you are responsible for ensuring they are reputable and for obtaining a written agreement to uphold the Company's standards in this area.

## **XI. VIOLATIONS**

Violation of this Code is grounds for disciplinary action up to and including termination of employment. Such action is in addition to any civil or criminal liability which might be imposed by any court or regulatory agency.

## **XII. OTHER POLICIES AND PROCEDURES**

Any other policy or procedure set out by the Company in writing or made generally known to employees, officers or directors of the Company prior to the effective date hereof or hereafter are separate requirements and remain in full force and effect.

## **XIII. INQUIRIES**

All inquiries and questions in relation to this Code or its applicability to particular people or situations should be addressed to the Chair of the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee of the Board, or such other compliance officer as shall be designated from time to time by the Board.

**B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II  
FORM OF AUDIT COMMITTEE CHARTER**

Effective [ ], 2020

**I. PURPOSES**

The Audit Committee (the “*Committee*”) is appointed by the Board of Directors (the “*Board*”) of B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II (the “*Company*”) to assist the Board in its oversight of the accounting and financial reporting processes of the Company and the Company’s compliance with legal and regulatory requirements. To assist the Board in fulfilling its responsibilities, the Committee shall: (A) oversee: (i) audits of the financial statements of the Company; (ii) the integrity of the Company’s financial statements; (iii) the Company’s processes relating to risk management and the conduct and systems of internal control over financial reporting and disclosure controls and procedures; (iv) the qualifications, engagement, compensation, independence and performance of the Company’s independent auditor, and the auditor’s conduct of the annual audit of the Company’s financial statements and any other services provided to the Company; and (v) the performance of the Company’s internal audit function, if any; and (B) produce the annual report of the Committee required by the rules of the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the “*SEC*”).

**II. COMMITTEE MEMBERSHIP**

**A. *Composition***

The Committee shall consist of at least three members of the Board, subject to applicable phase-in rules of the New York Stock Exchange (the “*NYSE*”). Except as otherwise directed by the Board, a director selected as a Committee member shall continue to be a member for as long as he or she remains a director or until his or her earlier resignation or removal from the Committee. Any member may be removed from the Committee by the Board, with or without cause, at any time. Any vacancy on the Committee shall be filled by majority vote of the Board. No member of the Committee shall be removed except by majority vote of the Board.

**B. *Chair***

The Chair of the Committee shall be appointed from among the Committee members by, and serve at the pleasure of, the Board, shall preside at meetings of the Committee and shall have authority to convene meetings, set agendas for meetings, and determine the Committee’s information needs, except as otherwise provided by the Board or the Committee, provided that if the Board does not so designate a chairperson, the members of the Committee, by a majority vote, may designate a chairperson. In the absence of the Chair at a duly convened meeting, the Committee shall select a temporary substitute from among its members to serve as chair of the meeting.

**C. *Independence***

Each member of the Committee shall be an “independent” director in accordance with applicable listing standards of the NYSE and Rule 10A-3 under the United States Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “*Exchange Act*”), as well as the Company’s Corporate Governance Guidelines, subject to any exceptions or cure periods that are applicable pursuant to the foregoing requirements and the phase-in periods permitted under the rules of the NYSE under which the Committee is required to have only one independent member at the time of listing, a majority of independent members within 90 days of listing and all independent members within one year of listing. Any action duly taken by the Committee shall be valid and effective, whether or not the members of the Committee at the time of such action are later determined not to have satisfied the requirements for membership provided herein.

#### **D. *Financial Literacy***

Each member of the Committee shall in the judgment of the Board have the ability to read and understand fundamental financial statements and otherwise meet the financial literacy requirements of the NYSE. At least one member shall be an “audit committee financial expert” as such term is defined under applicable SEC rules.

#### **E. *Service on Multiple Audit Committees***

No member of the Committee may serve on the audit committee of more than three public companies, including the Company, unless the Board has determined that such simultaneous service would not impair the ability of such member to effectively serve on the Committee.

### **III. AUTHORITY**

In discharging its role, the Committee is empowered to inquire into any matter that it considers appropriate to carry out its responsibilities, with access to all books, records, facilities and personnel of the Company, and, subject to the direction of the Board, the Committee is authorized and delegated the authority to act on behalf of the Board with respect to any matter it determines to be necessary or appropriate to the accomplishment of its purposes.

The Committee shall have authority to retain, direct and oversee the activities of, and to terminate the engagement of, the Company’s independent auditor and any other accounting firm retained by the Committee to prepare or issue any other audit report or to perform any other audit, review or attest services and any legal counsel, accounting or other advisor or consultant hired to assist the Committee, all of whom shall be accountable to the Committee.

The Company shall provide the Committee with appropriate funding, as determined by the Committee, for the payment of (a) compensation to any registered public accounting firm engaged for the purpose of preparing or issuing an audit report or performing other audit, review or attest services for the Company; (b) compensation to any independent counsel or other advisers retained by the Committee in carrying out its duties; and (c) ordinary administrative expenses of the Committee that are necessary or appropriate in carrying out its duties.

### **IV. COMMITTEE MEETINGS**

The Committee shall meet on a regularly scheduled basis at least four times per year and additionally as circumstances dictate.

The Committee shall establish its own schedule of meetings. The Committee may also act by unanimous written consent of its members.

Notice of meetings shall be given to all Committee members or may be waived, in the same manner as required for meetings of the Board. Meetings of the Committee may be held by means of conference telephone or other communications equipment by means of which all persons participating in the meeting can hear and speak with each other. A majority of the members of the Committee shall constitute a quorum for a meeting and the affirmative vote of a majority of members present at a meeting at which a quorum is present shall constitute the action of the Committee. The Committee shall otherwise establish its own rules of procedure.

The Committee shall meet in executive session separately with each of the independent auditor, the internal auditor, if any, and with senior management, at least quarterly. At the end of each of the Committee's regularly scheduled meetings, and more frequently as deemed necessary, the Committee shall meet in private session with only the Committee members.

#### **V. DELEGATION**

The Committee, by resolution approved by a majority of the Committee, may form and delegate any of its responsibilities to a subcommittee so long as such subcommittee is solely comprised of one or more members of the Committee and such delegation is not otherwise inconsistent with law and applicable rules and regulations of the SEC and the NYSE.

#### **VI. KEY RESPONSIBILITIES**

The Committee relies on the expertise and knowledge of management, the internal auditors, if any, and the independent auditor in carrying out its oversight responsibilities. Management is responsible for the preparation, presentation, and integrity of the Company's financial statements, for the appropriateness of the accounting principles and reporting policies that are used by the Company, and for establishing and maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting. The independent auditor is responsible for auditing the Company's financial statements and, if applicable, the Company's internal control over financial reporting, and for reviewing the Company's unaudited interim financial statements.

The responsibilities set forth in this charter do not reflect or create any duty or obligation of the Committee to plan or conduct any audit; to determine or certify that the Company's financial statements are complete, accurate, fairly presented or in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles ("GAAP") or applicable law; to guarantee or otherwise certify as to the independent auditor's reports; to conduct investigations; or to assure compliance with laws and regulations or the Company's code of business conduct and ethics, internal policies, procedures and controls. The following responsibilities are set forth as a guide for fulfilling the Committee's purposes in such manner as the Committee determines is appropriate.

##### **A. *Oversight of the Independent Auditor***

- (i) ***Independent Auditor Retention*** . The Committee is solely and directly responsible for the appointment, evaluation, compensation, retention and, if appropriate, replacement of the independent auditor. The Committee may, in its discretion, seek stockholder ratification of the public accounting firm selected to be the Company's independent auditor.
- (ii) ***Independence*** . The Committee shall assess at least annually the independent auditor's independence. In connection with this assessment, the Committee shall ensure the receipt of and review formal written statements from the independent auditor delineating all relationships between the auditor and the Company, consistent with applicable requirements of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board ("PCAOB") regarding the independent auditor's communications with the Committee concerning independence. The Committee shall engage in an active dialogue with the independent auditor concerning any disclosed relationships or services that may impact the objectivity and independence of the auditor and take, or recommend that the Board take, appropriate action to oversee and ensure the independence of the auditor.

- (iii) **Quality and Performance** . The Committee shall evaluate at least annually the qualifications and performance of the independent auditor, including the lead partner. The evaluation will include obtaining a written report from the independent auditor describing the firm's internal quality control procedures; any material issues raised by the most recent internal quality control review, PCAOB inspection, or other PCAOB review of the firm, by a peer review of the firm or by any inquiry or investigation by governmental or professional authorities within the past five years, concerning an independent audit or audits carried out by the firm, and any steps taken to address any such issues.
- (iv) **General Oversight** . The independent auditor reports directly to the Committee. The Committee is responsible for oversight of the work of the independent auditor, including resolution of disagreements between management and the independent auditor regarding financial reporting. In connection with its oversight responsibility, the Committee shall consider the independent auditor's communications regarding, among other things, critical accounting policies and practices, all alternative accounting treatments within GAAP related to items material to the financial statements that have been discussed with management, including the ramifications of the alternative treatments and the treatment preferred by the independent auditor, and all material written communications between the independent auditor and management, and shall review the effect or potential effect of any regulatory regime, accounting initiatives or off-balance sheet structures on the Company's financial statements.
- (v) **Audit Oversight** . The Committee shall establish with the independent auditor an understanding of the terms of the audit engagement, the role of the auditor with respect to the Company's financial statements and coordination of audit efforts to ensure completeness of coverage, reduction of redundant efforts, the effective use of audit resources, and the use of accounting firms other than the appointed auditors of the Company. The Committee shall review the scope of the annual audit or interim review (including the level of involvement with unaudited quarterly or other interim-period information), and discuss the results, including, without limitation, the independent auditor's report and all matters required to be communicated to the Committee by the independent auditor in accordance with applicable auditing standards.

The Committee shall discuss with the independent auditor, before the issuance of the audit report, the overall audit strategy, including the timing of the audit, significant risks the auditor identified and significant changes to the planned audit strategy or identified risks. The Committee shall review with the independent auditor any audit problems or difficulties encountered during the course of the audit work and management's response, including any restrictions on the scope of the independent auditor's activities or access to required records, data and information, any difficult or contentious matters for which the auditor consulted outside the engagement team (for example, the audit firm's national office), any significant disagreements with management, and any other matters arising from the audit that are significant to the oversight of the Company's financial reporting process.

- (vi) **Auditor Rotation** . The Committee shall consider whether, in addition to assuring the regular rotation of the lead audit partner as required by law, in the interest of assuring continuing independence of an independent auditor, the Company should regularly rotate the firm appointed as the Company's independent auditor.
- (vii) **Pre-Approval of Auditor Services** . The Committee is exclusively authorized and directed to consider and, in its discretion, approve in advance any services (including the fees and material terms thereof) proposed to be carried out for the Company by the independent auditor or by any other firm proposed to be engaged by the Company as its independent auditor. In connection with approval of any permissible tax services and services related to internal control over financial reporting, the Committee shall discuss with the independent auditor the potential effects of such services on the independence of the auditor.

**B. Financial Statements and Other Financial Disclosures**

- (i) **Quality and Integrity of Financial Statements** . The Committee shall review and discuss with management and the independent auditor: the critical accounting policies and practices used by the Company, and any significant changes in the selection or application of the Company's accounting and auditing principles and practices as suggested by the Company's independent auditor, internal auditors, if any, or management; the accounting treatment to be applied in respect of significant new transactions or other significant events not in the ordinary course of the Company's business; other policies and procedures adopted by the Company to fulfill its responsibilities regarding the presentation of financial statements in accordance with GAAP and applicable rules and regulations of the SEC, including the proper explanation and reconciliation of any non-GAAP measures presented; and any issues that arise with respect to the quality or integrity of the Company's financial statements.
- (ii) **Audited Financial Statements** . The Committee shall review and discuss with management and the independent auditor, before the issuance of the audit report, the financial statements and related notes and the "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" proposed to be included in the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K. In this connection, the Committee shall review and discuss with management and the independent auditor the analyses prepared by management setting forth significant financial reporting issues and judgments made in connection with the preparation of the financial statements (including analyses of the effects of alternative GAAP methods on the financial statements), and such other matters for which discussion shall be required by applicable auditing and related PCAOB standards. The Committee shall make a recommendation to the Board as to whether such financial statements should be included in the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K.
- (iii) **Audit Committee Report** . The Committee shall annually prepare an audit committee report for inclusion where necessary in the proxy statement relating to the annual meeting of stockholders and/or annual report of the Company.
- (iv) **Quarterly Financial Statements** . The Committee shall review and discuss with management and the independent auditor the quarterly financial statements and related notes and the "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" proposed to be included in the Company's Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q, together with the analyses prepared by management setting forth significant financial reporting issues and judgments made in connection with the preparation of the financial statements, and such other matters for which discussion shall be required by applicable auditing standards and related PCAOB standards.
- (v) **Earnings Releases and Other Financial Information** . The Committee shall discuss with management and the independent auditor and, prior to issuance, review and approve the Company's earnings releases, including the financial information, use of any "pro forma" or "adjusted" non-GAAP information, and earnings guidance (if such is provided) to be disclosed in such releases. The Committee shall also discuss with management other significant financial information to be provided to analysts or rating agencies.
- (vi) **Payments** . The Committee shall review on a quarterly basis all payments made to the Company's sponsor, officers or directors, or to the Company's or their affiliates.

### C. *Controls and Procedures*

- (i) **Oversight** . The Committee shall provide oversight of management’s design and maintenance of the Company’s internal control over financial reporting and disclosure controls and procedures. Prior to the filing of the Company’s Annual Report on Form 10-K, the Committee shall review with the independent auditor, management and the head of the internal audit function, if any: the Company’s annual assessment and report and the independent auditor’s report on the effectiveness of the Company’s internal control over financial reporting, to the extent then applicable; any “material weakness” or “significant deficiency” in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting, any steps taken to resolve any such control deficiencies and the adequacy of disclosures about changes in internal control over financial reporting; and any related significant findings and recommendations of the independent auditor or internal audit function, if any, together with management’s responses (including, in the case of the independent auditor, any concerns regarding matters within the scope of, and compliance with, Section 10A of the Exchange Act).
- (ii) **Certifications** . The Committee shall review and discuss with management and the independent auditor the certifications and any related disclosures made by the Company’s Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer in the Company’s periodic reports about the results of their evaluation of the effectiveness of disclosure controls and procedures and any significant deficiencies or material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting, and any fraud involving management or other employees who have a significant role in the Company’s internal control over financial reporting, prior to the filing of the Company’s Annual Reports on Form 10-K and Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q.
- (iii) **Internal Audit Function** . At least annually, the Committee shall review with the independent auditor the responsibilities, budget, staffing, effectiveness and performance of the internal audit function, if any, including the structure, qualification and activities of the internal audit function and the scope of internal audit responsibilities in relation to the independent auditor’s duties. The Committee shall review and assess the annual internal audit plan, if any, the process used to develop the plan, and the status of activities, significant findings, recommendations and management’s response. The Committee shall recommend for Board approval all matters related to responsibilities, budget and staffing of the internal audit function, if any. The Committee shall recommend for Board approval the appointment and, if appropriate, replacement of the senior internal audit executive.
- (iv) **Hiring Policies** . The Committee shall establish clear policies regarding the hiring of employees and former employees of the Company’s independent auditor.

### D. *Risk Management, Compliance and Ethics*

- (i) **Risk Management** . The Committee shall review and discuss with management, the head of the internal audit function, if any, and the independent auditor any significant risks or exposures and the Company’s policies and processes with respect to risk assessment and risk management, and shall assess the steps management has taken to monitor and control such risks, except with respect to those risks for which oversight has been assigned to other committees of the Board or retained by the Board. The Committee shall review the Company’s annual disclosures concerning the role of the Board in the risk oversight of the Company.

- (ii) **Legal and Regulatory Compliance** . The Committee shall review and assess with the Chairman, Co-Chairman or Co-Executive Chairman of the Board or outside counsel, as appropriate, legal and regulatory matters that may have a material impact on the Company's financial statements. The Committee shall also review and recommend for Board approval the code of business conduct and ethics and any other appropriate compliance policies, and will review requests for waivers under the code of business conduct and ethics sought with respect to any executive officer or director. The Committee shall review annually with the Chairman, Co-Chairman or Co-Executive Chairman of the Board or outside counsel, as appropriate, the scope, implementation and effectiveness of the ethics and compliance program, and any significant deviations by officers and employees from the code of business conduct and ethics or other compliance policies, and other matters pertaining to the integrity of management.
- (iii) **Procedures for Complaints** . The Committee shall establish "whistleblowing" procedures for (a) the receipt, retention and treatment of complaints received by the Company regarding accounting, internal accounting controls or auditing matters and (b) the confidential, anonymous submission by the Company's employees of concerns regarding questionable accounting or auditing matters. The Committee shall review any such significant complaints or concerns.
- (iv) **Review and Approval of Swap Transactions** . The Committee shall at least annually review and approve the Company's decision to enter into swaps and other derivative transactions that are exempt from exchange-execution and clearance requirements under "end-user exception" regulations, and review and discuss with management applicable Company policies governing the Company's use of swaps subject to the end-user exception.
- (v) **Related Person Transactions** . The Committee shall review and, if appropriate, approve or ratify any related person transactions and other significant conflicts of interest, in each case in accordance with the Company's Code of Business Conduct and Ethics and Related Party Transactions Policy.

**E. Self-Evaluation and Reporting**

- (i) **Self-Evaluation and Charter Review** . The Committee shall conduct an annual self-evaluation of the performance of the Committee, including its effectiveness and compliance with this charter, and recommend to the Board such amendments of this charter as the Committee deems appropriate.
- (ii) **Reporting** . The Committee shall report regularly to the Board on Committee findings and recommendations and any other matters the Committee deems appropriate or the Board requests, and maintain minutes or other records of Committee meetings and activities.

The Committee shall undertake such other responsibilities or tasks as the Board may delegate or assign to the Committee from time to time.



**B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II  
FORM OF COMPENSATION COMMITTEE CHARTER**

Effective [ ], 2020

**I. PURPOSES**

The Compensation Committee (the “*Committee*”) is appointed by the Board of Directors (the “*Board*”) of B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II (the “*Company*”) to: (A) assist the Board in overseeing the Company’s employee compensation policies and practices, including (i) determining and approving the compensation of the Company’s Chief Executive Officer (“*CEO*”) and the Company’s other executive officers, and (ii) reviewing and approving incentive compensation and equity compensation policies and programs, and exercising discretion in the administration of such programs; and (B) produce the annual report of the Committee required by the rules of the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (“*SEC*”).

**II. COMMITTEE MEMBERSHIP**

**A. *Composition***

The Committee shall consist of two or more members of the Board. Except as otherwise directed by the Board, a director selected as a Committee member shall continue to be a member for as long as he or she remains a director or until his or her earlier resignation or removal from the Committee. Any member may be removed from the Committee by the Board, with or without cause, at any time. Any vacancy on the Committee shall be filled by a majority vote of the Board. No member of the Committee shall be removed except by majority vote of the Board.

**B. *Chair***

The Chair of the Committee shall be appointed from among the Committee members by, and serve at the pleasure of, the Board, shall preside at meetings of the Committee and shall have authority to convene meetings, set agendas for meetings, and determine the Committee’s information needs, except as otherwise provided by the Board or the Committee, provided that if the Board does not so designate a chairperson, the members of the Committee, by a majority vote, may designate a chairperson. In the absence of the Chair at a duly convened meeting, the Committee shall select a temporary substitute from among its members to serve as chair of the meeting.

**C. *Independence***

Each member of the Committee shall be an “independent” director in accordance with the applicable listing standards of the New York Stock Exchange (“*NYSE*”), including standards specifically applicable to compensation committee members, subject to any exceptions or cure periods that are applicable pursuant to the foregoing requirements and the phase-in periods permitted under the rules of the NYSE under which the Committee is required to have only one independent member at the time of listing, a majority of independent members within 90 days of listing and all independent members within one year of listing. Any action duly taken by the Committee shall be valid and effective, whether or not the members of the Committee at the time of such action are later determined not to have satisfied the requirements for membership provided herein.

**III. AUTHORITY**

In discharging its role, the Committee is empowered to inquire into any matter that it considers appropriate to carry out its responsibilities, with access to all books, records, facilities and personnel of the Company, and, subject to the direction of the Board, the Committee is authorized and delegated the authority to act on behalf of the Board with respect to any matter necessary or appropriate to the accomplishment of its purposes.

The Committee shall have the sole discretion to retain or obtain advice from, oversee and terminate any compensation consultant, legal counsel or other adviser to the Committee and be directly responsible for the appointment, compensation and oversight of any work of such adviser retained by the Committee, and the Company will provide appropriate funding (as determined by the Committee) for the payment of reasonable compensation to any such adviser.

#### **IV. COMMITTEE MEETINGS**

The Committee shall meet as often as necessary to carry out its responsibilities, which, following the Company's initial business combination, shall be at least quarterly.

The Committee shall establish its own schedule of meetings. The Committee may also act by unanimous written consent of its members.

Notice of meetings shall be given to all Committee members or may be waived, in the same manner as required for meetings of the Board. Meetings of the Committee may be held by means of conference telephone or other communications equipment by means of which all persons participating in the meeting can hear and speak with each other. A majority of the members of the Committee shall constitute a quorum for a meeting and the affirmative vote of a majority of members present at a meeting at which a quorum is present shall constitute the action of the Committee. The Committee shall otherwise establish its own rules of procedure.

#### **V. DELEGATION**

The Committee, by resolution approved by a majority of the Committee, may form and delegate any of its responsibilities to a subcommittee so long as such subcommittee is solely comprised of one or more members of the Committee and such delegation is not otherwise inconsistent with law and applicable rules and regulations of the SEC and the NYSE.

In addition, the Committee may, by resolution approved by a majority of the Committee, delegate to management the administration of the Company's incentive compensation and equity-based compensation plans, to the extent permitted by law and as may be permitted by such plans and subject to such rules, policies and guidelines (including limits on the aggregate awards that may be made pursuant to such delegation) as the Committee shall approve, provided that, consistent with Section VI below, the Committee shall determine and approve the awards made under such plan to any executive officer and any other member of senior management as the Committee shall designate and shall at least annually review the awards made to such other members of senior management as the Committee shall designate.

#### **VI. KEY RESPONSIBILITIES**

The following responsibilities are set forth as a guide for fulfilling the Committee's purposes in such manner as the Committee determines is appropriate:

- (a) establish and review the objectives of the Company's management compensation programs and its basic compensation policies;
- (b) review and approve corporate goals and objectives relevant to the compensation of the CEO and other executive officers, including annual and long-term performance goals and objectives;
- (c) review and approve, subject to such further action of the Board as the Board shall determine, any employment, compensation, benefit or severance agreement with any executive officer;
- (d) evaluate at least annually the performance of the CEO and other executive officers against corporate goals and objectives including the annual performance objectives and, based on this evaluation, determine and approve, subject to such further action of the Board as the Board shall determine, the compensation (including any awards under any equity-based compensation or non-equity-based incentive compensation plan of the Company and any material perquisites) for the executive officers based on this evaluation;
- (e) determine and approve the compensation level (including any awards under any equity-based compensation or non-equity-based incentive compensation plan of the Company and any material perquisites) for other members of senior management of the Company as the Committee or the Board may from time to time determine to be appropriate;
- (f) review at least annually the compensation of other employees as the Committee determines to be appropriate (including any awards under any equity-based compensation or non-equity-based incentive compensation plan of the Company and any material perquisites);

- (g) review on a periodic basis the Company's management compensation programs, including any management incentive compensation plans as well as plans and policies pertaining to perquisites, to determine whether they are appropriate, properly coordinated and achieve their intended purpose(s), and recommend to the Board any appropriate modifications or new plans, programs or policies;
- (h) review, approve and recommend to the Board the adoption of any equity-based compensation plan for employees of or consultants to the Company and any modification of any such plan;
- (i) administer the Company's equity-based compensation plans for employees of and consultants to the Company as provided by the terms of such plans, including authorizing all awards made pursuant to such plans;
- (j) review, approve and recommend to the Board the adoption of any non-equity-based incentive compensation plan for employees of or consultants to the Company and any material modification of any such plan and review at least annually the awards made pursuant to such plans;
- (k) review, approve and recommend to the Board the adoption of any employee retirement plan, and other material employee benefit plan, and any material modification of any such plan;
- (l) review at least annually (a) the Company's compensation policies and practices for executives, management employees and employees generally to assess whether such policies and practices could lead to excessive risk taking behavior and (b) the manner in which any risks arising out of the Company's compensation policies and practices are monitored and mitigated and adjustments necessary to address changes in the Company's risk profile;
- (m) with respect to any compensation consultant who has been engaged to make determinations or recommendations on the amount or form of executive or director compensation: (a) annually, or from time to time as the Committee deems appropriate, assess whether the work of any such compensation consultant (whether retained by the compensation committee or management) has raised any conflicts of interest; and (b) review the engagement and the nature of any additional services provided by such compensation consultant to the Committee or to management, as well as all remuneration provided to such consultant;
- (n) annually, or from time to time as the Committee deems appropriate and prior to retention of any advisers to the Committee, assess the independence of compensation consultants, legal and other advisers to the Committee, taking into consideration all relevant factors the Committee deems appropriate to such adviser's independence, including factors specified in the listing standards of the NYSE;
- (o) review and discuss with management the Compensation Discussion and Analysis disclosure required by SEC regulations and determine whether to recommend to the Board, as part of a report of the Committee to the Board, that such disclosure be included in the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K and any proxy statement for the election of directors; as part of this review, the Committee shall consider the results of the most recent stockholder advisory vote on executive compensation ("say-on-pay" vote) required by Section 14A of the Exchange Act;
- (p) at least every six years or more frequently as appropriate, make a recommendation to the Board regarding the frequency with which the Company will conduct a say-on-pay vote;
- (q) review the form and amount of director compensation at least annually, and make recommendations thereon to the Board;
- (r) oversee and monitor other compensation related policies and practices of the Company, including: (i) the Company's stock ownership guidelines for directors and executive officers; (ii) compliance by management with rules regarding equity-based compensation plans for employees and consultants pursuant to the terms of such plans, and the guidelines for issuance of awards as the Board or Committee may establish; and (iii) the Company's recoupment policy and procedures;
- (s) oversee stockholder communications relating to executive compensation and review and make recommendations with respect to stockholder proposals related to compensation matters;
- (t) conduct an annual self-evaluation of the performance of the Committee, including its effectiveness and compliance with this charter, and recommend to the Board such amendments of this charter as the Committee deems appropriate;
- (u) report regularly to the Board on Committee findings and recommendations and any other matters the Committee deems appropriate or the Board requests, and maintain minutes or other records of Committee meetings and activities;
- (v) from and after the completion of the Company's initial business combination, in consultation with the CEO, annually report to the Board on succession planning, which shall include emergency CEO succession, CEO succession in the ordinary course and succession for other members of senior management, working with the entire Board to evaluate potential successors to the CEO; and
- (w) undertake such other responsibilities or tasks as the Board may delegate or assign to the Committee from time to time.

**B. RILEY PRINCIPAL MERGER CORP. II**  
**FORM OF NOMINATING AND CORPORATE GOVERNANCE COMMITTEE CHARTER**

Effective [ ], 2020

**I. INTRODUCTION**

The Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee (the “ *Committee* ”) is appointed by the Board of Directors (the “ *Board* ”) of B. Riley Principal Merger Corp. II (the “ *Company* ”) to: (i) identify and screen individuals qualified to serve as directors and recommend to the Board candidates for nomination for election at the annual meeting of stockholders or to fill Board vacancies; (ii) develop, recommend to the Board and review the Company’s Corporate Governance Guidelines; (iii) coordinate and oversee the annual self-evaluation of the Board, its committees, individual directors and management in the governance of the Company; and (iv) review on a regular basis the overall corporate governance of the Company and recommend improvements for approval by the Board where appropriate.

**II. COMMITTEE MEMBERSHIP**

**A. *Composition***

The Committee shall consist of two or more members of the Board. Except as otherwise directed by the Board, a director selected as a Committee member shall continue to be a member for as long as he or she remains a director or until his or her earlier resignation or removal from the Committee. Any member may be removed from the Committee by the Board, with or without cause, at any time.

**B. *Chair***

The Chair of the Committee shall be appointed from among the Committee members by, and serve at the pleasure of, the Board, shall preside at meetings of the Committee and shall have authority to convene meetings, set agendas for meetings, and determine the Committee’s information needs, except as otherwise provided by the Board or the Committee. In the absence of the Chair at a duly convened meeting, the Committee shall select a temporary substitute from among its members to serve as chair of the meeting. The Chair of the Committee shall serve as “Administrator” of the Company’s Policy Regarding Insider Trading and Dissemination of Inside Information in the circumstances and to the extent described therein.

**C. *Independence***

Each member of the Committee shall be an “independent” director in accordance with the applicable listing standards of the New York Stock Exchange (“ *NYSE* ”) and the Company’s Corporate Governance Guidelines, subject to any exceptions or cure periods that are applicable pursuant to the foregoing requirements and the phase-in periods permitted under the rules of the NYSE under which the Committee is required to have only one independent member at the time of listing, a majority of independent members within 90 days of listing and all independent members within one year of listing. Any action duly taken by the Committee shall be valid and effective, whether or not the members of the Committee at the time of such action are later determined not to have satisfied the requirements for membership provided herein.

### **III. AUTHORITY**

In discharging its role, the Committee is empowered to inquire into any matter it considers appropriate to carry out its responsibilities, with access to all books, records, facilities and personnel of the Company, and, subject to the direction of the Board, the Committee is authorized and delegated the authority to act on behalf of the Board with respect to any matter necessary or appropriate to the accomplishment of its purposes.

The Committee shall have the sole discretion to retain or obtain advice from, oversee and terminate any director search or recruitment consultant, legal counsel or other adviser to the Committee and be directly responsible for the appointment, compensation and oversight of any work of such adviser retained by the Committee, and the Company will provide appropriate funding (as determined by the Committee) for the payment of reasonable compensation to any such adviser.

### **IV. COMMITTEE MEETINGS**

The Committee shall meet as often as necessary to carry out its responsibilities, which, following the Company's initial business combination, shall be at least quarterly.

The Committee shall establish its own schedule of meetings. The Committee may also act by unanimous written consent of its members.

Notice of meetings shall be given to all Committee members or may be waived, in the same manner as required for meetings of the Board. Meetings of the Committee may be held by means of conference telephone or other communications equipment by means of which all persons participating in the meeting can hear and speak with each other. A majority of the members of the Committee shall constitute a quorum for a meeting and the affirmative vote of a majority of members present at a meeting at which a quorum is present shall constitute the action of the Committee. The Committee shall otherwise establish its own rules of procedure.

### **V. DELEGATION**

The Committee, by resolution approved by a majority of the Committee, may form and delegate any of its responsibilities to a subcommittee so long as such subcommittee is solely comprised of one or more members of the Committee and such delegation is not otherwise inconsistent with law and applicable rules and regulations of the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission and the NYSE.

## **VI. KEY RESPONSIBILITIES**

The following responsibilities are set forth as a guide for fulfilling the Committee's purposes in such manner as the Committee determines is appropriate:

- (a) recommend to the Board for approval, review the effectiveness of, recommend modifications as appropriate to, and review Company disclosures concerning: (a) the Company's policies and procedures for identifying and screening Board nominee candidates; (b) the process and criteria (including experience, qualifications, attributes, diversity or skills in light of the Company's business and structure) used to evaluate Board membership and director independence; and (c) any policies with regard to diversity on the Board;
- (b) identify and screen director candidates (including incumbent directors for potential renomination and candidates recommended by stockholders in accordance with the Company's policies as set forth in its proxy statement) consistent with criteria approved by the Board, and recommend to the Board candidates for: (a) nomination for election or re-election by the stockholders; and (b) any Board vacancies that are to be filled by the Board subject to any rights regarding the selection of directors by holders of preferred stock and any other contractual or other commitments of the Company;
- (c) oversee the Company's policies and procedures with respect to the consideration of director candidates recommended by stockholders, including the submission of any proxy access nominees by stockholders;
- (d) review Company disclosures concerning the specific experience, qualifications, attributes or skills that led to the conclusion that each director and nominee should serve as a director in light of the Company's business and structure;
- (e) review annually the relationships between directors, the Company and members of management and recommend to the Board whether each director qualifies as "independent" under the Board's definition of "independence" and the applicable rules of the NYSE and the Company's Corporate Governance Guidelines;
- (f) assess the appropriateness of a director continuing to serve on the Board upon a substantial change in the director's principal occupation or business association from the position such director held when originally invited to join the Board, and recommend to the Board any action to be taken with respect thereto;
- (g) assess annually whether the composition of the Board as a whole reflects the appropriate balance of independence, sound judgment, business specialization, technical skills, diversity and other desired qualities, and recommend any appropriate changes to the Board;
- (h) (i) review the Board's leadership structure in light of the specific characteristics or circumstances of the Company and recommend any changes to the Board for approval; (ii) discuss in coordination with the Audit Committee the effect on the Board's leadership structure of the Board's role in the risk oversight of the Company; and (iii) review and approve Company disclosures relating to Board leadership;

- (i) review periodically the committee structure of the Board and recommend to the Board the appointment of directors to Board committees and assignment of committee chairs;
- (j) review periodically the size of the Board and recommend to the Board any appropriate changes;
- (k) coordinate with management to develop an appropriate director orientation program and identify continuing education opportunities;
- (l) coordinate and oversee the annual self-evaluation of the role and performance of the Board, its committees, individual directors and management in the governance of the Company;
- (m) develop and recommend to the Board, review the effectiveness of, and recommend modifications as appropriate to, the Corporate Governance Guidelines and other governance policies of the Company;
- (n) review and address conflicts of interest of directors and executive officers, and the manner in which any such conflicts are to be monitored;
- (o) review on a periodic basis, and as necessary when specific issues arise, relations with the Company's stockholders and advise the Board on effective and appropriate stockholder communications;
- (p) review emerging corporate governance issues and practices, including proxy advisory firm policies and recommendations;
- (q) conduct an annual self-evaluation of the performance of the Committee, including its effectiveness and compliance with this charter, and recommend to the Board such amendments of this charter as the Committee deems appropriate;
- (r) report regularly to the Board on Committee findings, recommendations and any other matters the Committee deems appropriate or the Board requests, and maintain minutes or other records of Committee meetings and activities;
- (s) review all determinations and interpretations under the Company's Policy Regarding Insider Trading and Dissemination of Inside Information; and
- (t) undertake such other responsibilities as the Board may delegate or assign to the Committee from time to time.